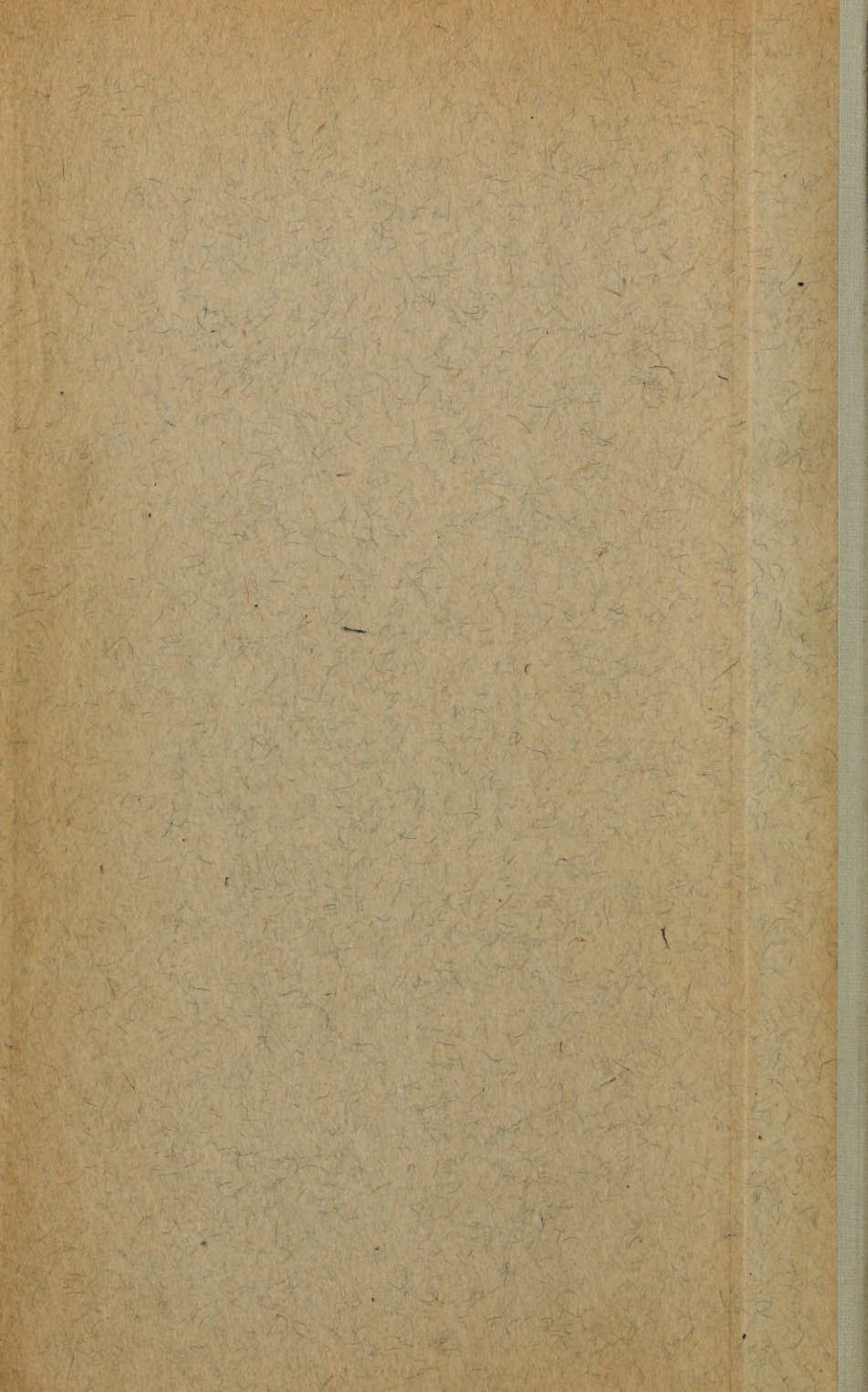


NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES

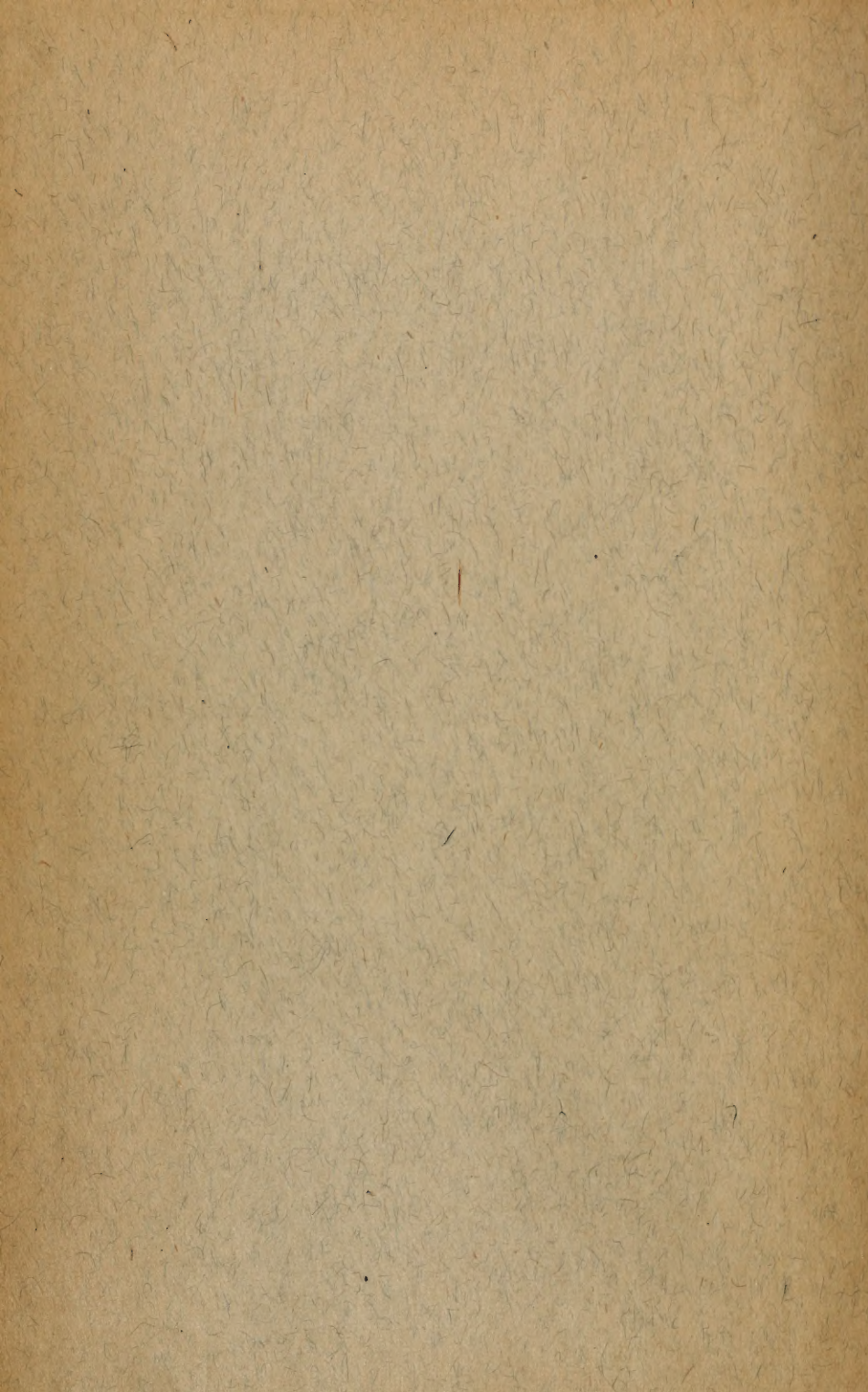



3 3433 07876761 7



Patton

7-1AE





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



INDEPENDENCE HALL

THE HISTORY AND GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES

BY

JACOB HARRIS PATTON, A.M., Ph.D.

Author of "Natural Resources of the United States,"
"History of Political Parties," etc.

AND

JOHN LORD, D.D., LL.D.

Author of "Beacon Lights of History,"

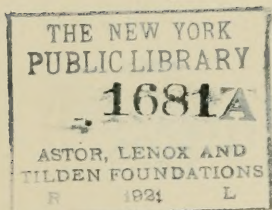
WITH SPECIAL ARTICLES BY

**Theodore Roosevelt, James Cardinal Gibbons,
George F. Hoar, James P. Bryce,
Grover Cleveland and others**

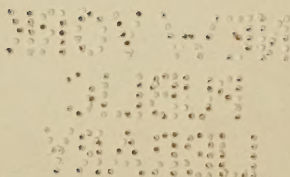
VOL. II.

The University Society

New York



Copyright, 1876, by J. B. Ford & Company.
Copyright, 1882, 1891, 1892, and 1901, by Fords, Howard & Hulbert.
Copyright, 1903, by The University Society.



ILLUSTRATIONS.

	FACING PAGE
INDEPENDENCE HALL	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Photo-engraving in colors from a photograph.	
ISRAEL PUTNAM	376
Woodcut from a contemporaneous print.	
NATHANIEL GREENE	380
Woodcut from an old print.	
GEORGE WASHINGTON	398
Engraving from a painting.	
THOMAS JEFFERSON	408
Woodcut from a contemporaneous print.	
STATUE OF NATHAN HALE	422
Duogravure from a photograph.	
JAMES MONROE	438
Engraving from a drawing	
MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE	462
Engraving from an old print	
PHILIP SCHUYLER	470
Woodcut from an old engraving	
BARON STEUBEN	490
Woodcut from an old print	
ANTHONY WAYNE	504
Woodcut from an old print.	

	FACING PAGE
JOHN PAUL JONES	508
Woodcut from a drawing.	
DANIEL BOONE	512
Woodcut from a contemporaneous print.	
JEAN DE VIMEUR, COMTE DE ROCHAMBEAU	520
Engraving from an old drawing.	
COMTE DE GRASSE	540
Engraving from a drawing.	
ALEXANDER HAMILTON	544
Woodcut from a painting.	
MEETING OF WASHINGTON AND ROCHAMBEAU	550
Duogravure from a painting.	
JOHN ADAMS	554
Woodcut from an old print.	
NOAH WEBSTER	558
Engraving from a drawing.	
WASHINGTON AND HIS MOTHER	572
Photo-engraving in colors from a painting by E Fournier	
JOHN MARSHALL	592
Woodcut from a drawing.	
WILLIAM WIRT	604
Woodcut from a drawing	
HENRY CLAY	622
Woodcut from an old print	
STEPHEN DECATUR	640
Engraving from a drawing.	
OLIVER HAZARD PERRY	646
Woodcut from an old print	
DANIEL WEBSTER	658
Woodcut from a contemporaneous print.	

	FACING PAGE
JOHN RANDOLPH, OF ROANOKE	662
Woodcut from a drawing.	
THE CONSTITUTION FIGHTING THE CYANE AND THE LEVANT	682
Duogravure from a painting.	
ROBERT FULTON	686
Woodcut.	
ELI WHITNEY	700
Engraving from a drawing.	
JAMES FENIMORE COOPER	708
Engraving from a painting.	
JOHN CALDWELL CALHOUN	716
Woodcut from a painting.	
ANDREW JACKSON	724
Engraving from a drawing.	
THOMAS HART BENTON	736
Engraving from a painting.	
SAMUEL HOUSTON	752
Woodcut from an old print.	
HORACE GREELEY	784
Woodcut from a drawing.	
ZACHARY TAYLOR	788
Engraving from a painting.	
ELIAS HOWE	816
Engraving from an old plate.	

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION

Battle of Bunker Hill.—Death of Warren.—Washington on his way to join the Army.—Generals Charles Lee and Schuyler.—State of Affairs in New York.—Sir William Johnson.—The Condition of the Army.—Nathaniel Greene.—Morgan and his Riflemen.—Wants of the Army.—Difficulties on Lake Champlain.—Expedition against Canada.—Richard Montgomery.—Allen's rash Adventure.—Montreal captured.—Arnold's toilsome March to Quebec.—That Place besieged.—Failure to storm the Town.—Death of Montgomery.—Arnold in his Icy-Fortress.

FOR two months the armies in and around Boston had watched each other. General Gage, in the mean time, had received large reinforcements. These were led by three commanders of reputation: Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Henry Clinton. We may judge of the surprise of these generals to find the king's regulars "hemmed in by what they termed a rustic rout, with calico frocks and fowling-pieces." "What!" exclaimed Burgoyne, "ten thousand peasants keep five thousand king's troops shut up! Well, let us get in, and we'll soon find elbow-room." This vain boast was followed by no decided movement. Gage merely sent forth a proclamation, declared the province under martial law, and offered pardon to all the rebels who should return to their allegiance, except Samuel Adams and John Hancock. These "rebels" were placed beyond the pale of the king's mercy.

The patriot soldiers, numbering about fifteen thousand, had come from their various towns, in independent companies, under their own leaders; their friends in their

CHAR.
XXVIII

1775.
May
25.

CHAP. XXVIII.
 1775. respective towns supplied them with provisions. The Massachusetts troops were under General Ward ; John Stark led the New Hampshire volunteers ; Putnam commanded those from Connecticut, and Nathaniel Greene the regiment from Rhode Island. The artillery, consisting of nine pieces, was under the control of the venerable Colonel Gridley. The great majority of the soldiers were clad in their homespun working clothes ; some had rifles and some had fowling-pieces. The British greatly exasperated them by taunts and acts expressive of contempt. Opposed to the motley group of patriot soldiers, was a well-disciplined army of ten thousand men, under experienced commanders.

It was rumored that Gage intended to seize and fortify Bunker's Hill and Dorchester Heights—the one lying north and the other south of the town. In order to prevent this, some of the patriots proposed that they should take possession of the hill themselves. The more cautious were opposed to the enterprise, as extremely hazardous ; it might provoke a general action, and they were deficient in ammunition and guns. But the fearless Putnam felt confident, with proper intrenchments, the patriots could not fail of success. "The Americans," said he, "are never afraid of their heads, they only think of their legs ; shelter *them*, and they will fight forever." It was reported that the enemy intended to seize Bunker Hill on the night of the eighteenth of June, and therefore not a moment was to be lost. On the evening of Friday
 June. 16. the sixteenth, a company of about twelve hundred men, with their arms, and provisions for twenty-four hours, assembled on the common at Cambridge. Very few of them knew where they were going, but all knew that it was into danger. Prayer was offered by President Langdon, of Harvard College. About nine o'clock they commenced their march, under the command of Colonel William Prescott, a veteran of the French war ; one in whom the

soldiers had implicit confidence. Charlestown Neck was strongly guarded, but they passed over it in safety, and were soon on the ground. Bunker Hill was designated in the orders, but Breed's Hill, as it had a better command of the harbor, was fortified instead. The ground was speedily marked out, and about midnight the men commenced their labors. Early daylight revealed to the astonished eyes of the British sailors in the harbor the strong redoubt that had sprung up so suddenly on the hill-top, and the Americans still busy at their work. Without waiting for orders, the sloop-of-war *Lively* opened her guns upon them ; a floating battery and other ships did the same. The firing roused the people of Boston. Gage, through his spy-glass, noticed Prescott, who was on the parapet inspecting the works. "Who is that officer in command," he asked ; "will he fight ?" "He is an old soldier, and will fight to the last drop of his blood," replied one who knew Prescott well. "The works must be carried," remarked Gage. An hour later the plan of attack was decided upon by a council of war.

From the heights the Americans saw and heard the bustle of preparation. Repeated messages were sent to General Ward for the promised reinforcements. Putnam hurried to Cambridge to urge the demand in person. Ward hesitated lest he should weaken the main division. It was eleven o'clock before Stark and Reed, with their regiments, were ordered to the relief of Prescott, and the wearied soldiers, who had been laboring all night at the redoubt.

About noon, twenty-eight barges filled with soldiers, under the command of Generals Howe and Pigott, left Boston. The ships kept up an incessant cannonade to cover their landing. General Howe discovered that the works were stronger than he anticipated, and he sent to General Gage for reinforcements ; his men, while waiting, were regaled with refreshments and "grog." Meantime

CHAP.
XXVIII.

1775.

the Americans strengthened their works, and formed a rustic breastwork ; to do this, they pulled up a post-and-rail fence, placed it behind a stone fence, and filled the space between with new-mown grass. This extended down the side of the hill north of the redoubt to a swamp.

Now they were cheered by the sight of Stark, who appeared with five hundred men. As he marched leisurely along, some one suggested a rapid movement. The veteran replied. "One fresh man in action is worth ten tired ones ;" and he moved quietly on. A part of his force halted with Putnam at Bunker Hill, and a part joined Knowlton behind the fence breastwork. About two o'clock, Dr. Warren, who had recently been appointed major-general, but had not received his commission, arrived. He came, as did Pomeroy, to serve in the ranks. When Putnam pointed him to the redoubt, and said, "There you will be under cover," "Don't think," replied Warren, "that I seek a place of safety—where will the attack be the hottest ?" Still pointing to the same spot Putnam answered : "*That* is the enemy's object ; if that can be maintained the day is ours." When Warren entered the redoubt, the soldiers received him with hearty cheers. Prescott offered him the command, which he gracefully declined, saying : "I shall be happy to learn from a soldier of your experience."

The day was clear and bright : the British, in their brilliant uniforms, presented a fine appearance. Thousands watched every movement from the house-tops in Boston and from the neighboring hills. Fathers, husbands, sons, and brothers were to meet the enemy, for the first time, in a regular battle. The expedition had commenced with prayer on Cambridge green, and now minister McClintock, of New Hampshire, was passing among the men praying and exhorting them to stand firm.

About half-past two o'clock, the British, confident of an easy victory, advanced ; one division, under General

Pigott, marched up the hill to storm the redoubt in front, while the other, under General Howe, advanced against the fence breastwork, in order to gain the rear and cut off the retreat. The redoubt was commanded by Prescott. Stark, Knowlton, and Reed, with some of the New Hampshire and Connecticut men, were at the fence. As he saw the enemy advancing, Prescott, with his usual presence of mind, passed among his men and encouraged them. "The redcoats," said he, "will never reach the redoubt, if you will but withhold your fire till I give the order, and be careful not to shoot over their heads." The impetuous Putnam, who seems to have had no special command, was everywhere. "Wait till you see the whites of their eyes, aim at their waistbands, pick off the handsome coats, steady my lads," were his directions as he rode along the lines. "Wait for orders and fire low," was the policy that controlled the movements on Bunker Hill.

CHAP.
XXVIII
— — —
1775

The British, as they advanced, kept up an incessant discharge of musketry. Not a sound issued from the Americans. When Pigott's division came within forty paces, those in the redoubt levelled their guns for a moment, then Prescott gave the word: "Fire!" Whole ranks were cut down. The enemy fell back, but urged on by their officers, again advanced. The Americans allowed them to come nearer than before, but received them more warmly. The carnage was dreadful; Pigott himself ordered a retreat. At the same moment Howe's division was also retreating. The brave band who guarded the fence, had allowed him to advance within thirty paces, then had poured in their reserved fire with deadly effect. Both divisions retired down the hill to the shore. Gage had threatened that he would burn the town of Charlestown if the Americans should occupy the heights. The threat was now carried into execution, by bombs thrown from the ships and Copp's Hill. The conflagration added new horrors to the scene.

CHAP.
XXVIII

1775

The British resolved upon a second attack. This proved a counterpart of the first. By volleys discharged at the right moment, and with unerring aim, their whole force was driven back. Their officers labored to check them, even urged them on with their swords, but in vain, they retreated to the shore. "If we drive them back once more," exclaimed Prescott, "they cannot rally again." "We are ready for the redcoats again," was the response from the redoubt.

General Clinton watched the movements from Copp's Hill. He witnessed the repulse of the "king's regulars" with astonishment; he hastened over as a volunteer with reinforcements. Some officers were opposed to another attack; they thought it little short of butchery to lead men in the face of such sharp-shooting. Now they learned that the ammunition of the Americans was nearly exhausted. They resolved to carry the redoubt at the point of the bayonet. The attack was to be specially directed against an open space which they had noticed between the breastwork and the fortified fence. The Americans used what little powder they had with great effect; they could pour in but a single volley upon the enemy; but by this a number of British officers were slain. The British, however, advanced with fixed bayonets, and assailed the redoubt on three sides. The first who appeared on the parapet, as he cried out, "The day is ours," was shot down. Now followed a desperate encounter; those Americans who had not bayonets fought with stones and the butts of their muskets. It was impossible to maintain the ground; Prescott gave the word, and they commenced an orderly retreat. The aged Pomeroy clubbed his musket and retreated with his face to the enemy. Stark, Knowlton, and Reed, kept their position at the fence till their companions had left the redoubt and passed down the hill, and thus prevented the enemy from cutting off the retreat; then they slowly retired.



Israel Putnam

About three thousand British were engaged in this battle, and about fifteen hundred Americans. The British lost more than one thousand men, an unusual proportion of whom were officers, among whom was Major Pitcairn, of Lexington memory ; while the Americans lost but four hundred and fifty, but among these was Dr. Warren. He was one of the last to leave the redoubt ; he had scarcely passed beyond it when he fell. On the morning of that day he had expressed himself willing, if necessary, to die for his country.—That country has embalmed his name as one of the bravest and noblest of her sons.

CHAP.
XXVIII

1775

The raw militia had met the British “regulars,” and had proved themselves their equals ; they left the field only when destitute of ammunition.

The British ministry was not satisfied with this victory, nor were the Americans discouraged by this defeat. When the news of the battle reached England, General Gage was at once recalled. When Washington learned of it from the courier who was hastening to Congress with the news, he exclaimed : “The liberties of the country are safe !”

This famous battle took place on the seventeenth of June ; on the twenty-first Washington, accompanied by Generals Lee and Schuyler, left Philadelphia to join the army as Commander-in-chief. General Charles Lee was an Englishman by birth ; a soldier by profession, he had been engaged in campaigns in various parts of Europe, and in the French war. Frank in disposition, but sarcastic in manner, and evidently soured by disappointment, he had resigned the British service, and for some reason indulged in feelings of bitter animosity to the English name. His connection with their cause was counted of great consequence by the Americans.

General Philip Schuyler was a native of New York, of Dutch descent. As a man of wealth, position, education, and well-known integrity, he had great influence in

CHAP.
XXVIII.

1775.

that province. He had some experience, also, in military affairs ; during the French war, when a youth of two and twenty, he campaigned with Sir William Johnson and his Mohawks. Though in his native province the rich and influential were generally loyalists, from the beginning of the troubles Schuyler ardently espoused the cause of the colonists. He was versed in civil affairs, having been a member of the New York General Assembly, and recently a delegate to Congress, where his practical good sense had attracted attention. At this time, danger was apprehended from the Mohawks, who lived in the northern and central parts of New York. It was feared that, influenced by the Johnson family, they would rally against the colonists. Sir William Johnson, of whom we have spoken, the ancestor of this family, was of Scotch-Irish descent, a man of vigorous mind but of coarse associations ; he had acquired great influence over the Indians by adopting their customs, had married an Indian wife, sister of Brandt, the chief, afterward so famous. For nearly thirty years he was agent for the Five Nations ; he became rich by traffic, and lived in his castle on the Mohawk river, in baronial style, with Scotch Highlanders as tenants. Sir William was dead, but his son and heir, John Johnson, and his son-in-law, Guy Johnson, were suspected of tampering with the Mohawks. No one knew the state of affairs in New York better than Schuyler ; he was acquainted with the tory aristocracy ; he understood the Johnsons, and to him Washington intrusted the charge of that province.

As a singular incident it may be noted, that as Washington approached New York by way of New Jersey, the ship on board of which was the royalist governor Tryon, who was just returning from England, came into the harbor. The committee appointed to do the honors was somewhat perplexed. Fortunately their principles were not tested : those two men, the one the representative of

the Continental Congress, the other of the king, did not reach the city at the same time. The escort that received Washington, were at leisure, a few hours later, to render to Governor Tryon the same honor.

CHAP.
XXVIII
1775.

The Commander-in-chief was met at Springfield by the committee of the Massachusetts Provincial Congress, and escorted to the camp. The greatest enthusiasm prevailed ; the soldiers everywhere greeted him with hearty cheers. Such a welcome, while it gratified his feelings, was calculated to increase his sense of responsibility. A great work was before him—a work not yet begun ; he was to bring order out of confusion ; to lead on the cause of freedom to a successful issue. In his letters written about this time, he expresses a calm trust in a Divine Providence, that wisely orders all things.

A personal survey of the army revealed more perfectly the difficulties to be overcome. It numbered about fourteen thousand men ; to be effective, it must be increased to twenty or thirty thousand. The troops were unorganized and undisciplined, without uniforms, poorly clad, and imperfectly armed. To discipline these volunteers would be no easy task ; they could not be subjected to strict military rule. Even among this noble band of patriot officers, were jealousies to be soothed, and prejudices to be regarded. Some felt that they had been overlooked or underrated in the appointments made by Congress.

A council of war resolved to maintain the present line of works, to capture the British, or drive them out of Boston. Washington chose for his head-quarters a central position at Cambridge ; here were stationed Major-general Putnam and Brigadier-general Heath. General Artemas Ward was stationed with the right wing at Roxbury, and General Charles Lee commanded the left on Prospect Hill. Under Lee were the Brigadier-generals Greene and Sullivan, and under Ward the Generals

CHAP.
XXVIII

1775.

Spencer and Thomas. Of this number, Greene merits special notice. His father a farmer, miller, and anchor smith, as well as occasionally a Quaker preacher, endeavored to train his son in his own faith. The son's tastes were decidedly military. Of a genial disposition, he was fond of social amusements, but never at the expense of things more important. He cultivated his mind by reading the best English authors of the time on science and history ; to do this he snatched the moments from daily toil. Industrious and strictly temperate, his perceptions were clear, and his love of order almost a passion. With zest he read books on military tactics, and before he had laid aside the Quaker costume, he took lessons in the science of military drill, by watching the exercises and manœuvres of the British troops on parade on Boston Common. Their order and precision had a charm for the embryo general. None took a deeper interest than he in the questions that agitated the country, and he was more than once chosen by the people to represent them in the Colonial Legislature.

The army was now joined by some companies of riflemen, mostly Scotch and Irish ; backwoodsmen of Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Maryland, enlisted by orders of Congress. They had marched six hundred miles in twenty days. If their peculiar dress, the hunting-shirt, and their motto, " Liberty or Death," worn on their head-band, their robust appearance, their stature, scarcely one of them being less than six feet, excited admiration, much more did their feats of sharp-shooting. " When advancing at a quick step," it was said, " they could hit a mark of seven inches diameter at a distance of two hundred and fifty yards." Their leader, Daniel Morgan, was a native of New Jersey, though brought up on the frontiers of Virginia. When a youth, his education had been neglected ; he could scarcely read or write ; unpolished in his manners, generous in his impulses, honorable in his own feelings, he instinctively scorned meanness or duplicity in



© Nathaniel



others. In his twentieth year, as a wagoner, he took his first lessons in warfare in Braddock's unfortunate campaign. His character adapted itself to emergencies. When left to act in responsible situations, his good sense was never at fault; wherever placed, he performed well his part.

CHAP
XXVIII

1775.

As soon as he obtained the requisite information, Washington laid before Congress the state of the army, with suggestions as to the best means to furnish it with provisions, munitions, and men. He also suggested that diversities of uniform had a tendency to encourage sectional feelings, and recommended Congress to provide, at least ten thousand hunting-shirts, adding, "I know nothing in a speculative view more trivial, yet which, if put in practice, would have a happier tendency to unite the men, and abolish those provincial distinctions that lead to jealousy and dissatisfaction." This was the origin of the peculiar uniform of American soldiers. A few days after this report was sent to Congress, it was discovered that, by mistake, a false return of the powder in the camp had been made—the supply was nearly exhausted. This discovery crippled every movement, and left the Americans at the mercy of the enemy, should they be attacked. Their only safety lay in silence and inaction. Messengers were hurried in every direction to collect and send to the camp all the powder that could be obtained. In about a fortnight they procured a small supply.

We now turn to affairs in New York, where, it will be remembered, Schuyler had command. After their brave exploits on Lake Champlain, Arnold and Allen both claimed authority over the captured forts—the former referred to Massachusetts, the latter to Connecticut, to confirm their respective claims. As these forts belonged to New York, Allen wrote to the Congress of that province for supplies of men and money to defend them. But the whole matter was, at length, referred to the Continental

**CHAP.
XXVIII.****1775.**

Congress, which decided that New York should have the charge of the forts, and authorized it to call upon New England for aid in their defence. The call was made upon Connecticut, in answer to which Colonel Hinman, with a thousand men, was sent to join Arnold. Allen's Green Mountain Boys were by this time disbanded, as their term of enlistment had expired. These war spirits, Arnold and Allen, had urged upon the Continental Congress to furnish them means to invade Canada. Allen, in company with Seth Warner, went in person to that body for authority to raise a new regiment. It was granted, and the New York Congress was recommended to receive this regiment of their ancient enemies into the regular army. They were to choose their own leader. For some reason Warner was chosen, and Allen entirely neglected; but not to be baffled when a fight was on hand, he joined the army as a volunteer. Arnold claimed the entire authority at Ticonderoga, after the departure of Allen, and difficulties arose between him and Hinman. A committee sent from the Congress of Massachusetts to inquire into the matter, decided that the command belonged to Hinman. Arnold swore he would not be second, disbanded his men, threw up his commission, and hurried to Cambridge.

Congress was, at first, opposed to the invasion of Canada, and even thought of dismantling the forts on Lake Champlain. Recent intelligence that the authorities of that province were making preparations to recapture the forts and to regain the command of the lake, induced them to determine upon its invasion in self-defence. Schuyler learned that seven hundred of the king's troops were in Canada; that Guy Johnson, with three hundred tenants and Indians, was at Montreal; that St. John's was fortified, and war-vessels were building there, and almost ready to pass by the Sorel into the lake. Yet he was encouraged by rumors that some of the inhabitants were disaffected, and might be induced to join against the

mother country ; if so, the British would be deprived of a valuable recruiting station. Two expeditions against Canada were determined upon, one by way of Lake Champlain, the other by the rivers Kennebec and Chaudiere. The former under Schuyler ; the latter was intrusted to Arnold, who was in the camp chafed and disappointed, but ready for any daring enterprise that promised distinction.

CHAP.
XXVIII
1775.

Operations were to commence by way of the lake, where were assembled the New York troops, and some from New England. Schuyler was ably seconded by Brigadier-general Richard Montgomery. Montgomery was a native of Ireland ; had, when a youth, been the companion of Wolfe in the French war. He resigned the British service, and remaining in America, settled in New York, where he married. A man of education and refinement, his generous sentiments led him to espouse ardently the cause of popular rights.

General Schuyler passed from Ticonderoga down the lake, and took possession of the Isle aux Noix, in the Sorel river. This position commanded the entrance into Lake Champlain. He then made an attempt on St. John's, but finding it more strongly garrisoned than had been represented, he retired to the Isle aux Noix, with the intention of fortifying that important post, but severe sickness compelled him to return to Albany. The command devolved upon Montgomery. Schuyler was soon able to send him supplies and ammunition, and also reinforcements under General Wooster.

Sept.
5

Ethan Allen, as usual, without orders, went on one of his rash expeditions. With only eighty-three men, he attempted to take Montreal, was overpowered, and taken prisoner with his men. He himself was sent in irons to England, to be tried as a rebel. Here closed the connection of this daring leader of the Green Mountain Boys, with the war of the Revolution. He was not tried, but

Sept.
24.

CHAP. XVIII. liberated ; then returned home, but from some dissatisfaction took no further part in the struggle.

1775.

Nov.
3.

Montgomery sent a detachment which took Fort Chambly, a few miles further down the river, thus placing troops between St. John's and Canada. Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of that province, made exertions, but without success, to raise a force for the relief of St. John's. But when on his way he was repulsed at the passage of the St. Lawrence by Colonel Seth Warner ; another party going up the Sorel on the same errand was also driven back. The garrison at St. John's presently surrendered, and immediately the energetic Montgomery pushed on to Montreal, which submitted at the first summons, while Carleton with a few followers fled down the river to Quebec. This was a very seasonable capture for the Americans, as it supplied them with woollen clothes, of which necessities they were in great need.

Sept.

Montgomery made great exertions in the midst of discouragements, arising from insubordination, desertions, and the lateness of the season, to push on and join Arnold before Quebec. Two months before this time, that leader had left the camp before Boston with eleven hundred men, among whom were three companies of riflemen, under Morgan, to pass up the Kennebec, and thence across the wilderness to Quebec, there to unite with the force from New York. Aaron Burr, then a youth of twenty, accompanied this expedition as a volunteer. It was a perilous undertaking. The journey was one of intense suffering and incessant toil. Six weeks they spent in dragging their boats up the river, and carrying the baggage around rapids ; they cut their way through thickets and briars, forded streams, climbed mountains, breasted storms, and were so much in want of food that they devoured their dogs, and even their moccasins. Their number was reduced to about six hundred effective men ; one entire division had returned home with the sick and disabled. In a

forlorn condition the remainder suddenly appeared at Point Levi, opposite Quebec. The inhabitants were astonished at the apparition, and could Arnold have crossed immediately, he might have taken the town ; but he was unable to do so for want of boats. In a few days came Carleton from Montreal ; he put the town in a state of defense, and increased his force to twelve hundred men, by enlisting traders, sailors, and others.

CHAP
XXVIII
1775.
Nov.
9.

Although two armed vessels were on the watch, Arnold managed to cross the St. Lawrence, clambered up the Heights of Abraham, by the same rugged path that Wolfe had used, and boldly challenged the garrison to battle. The contest was declined. It was useless for him to attempt to besiege the town without cannon, so he moved twenty miles up the river, where he met Montgomery. The toilsome march through the wilderness nearly stripped Arnold's men of their clothes ; the woollens obtained at Montreal were to them also an acceptable protection against the rigors of a Canada winter.

Their united force amounted to only nine hundred men. With these, Montgomery, who assumed the command, advanced to Quebec. The flag he sent to demand a surrender was fired upon. A battery must be built ; the ordinary material was not at hand, but ingenuity supplied its place. Gabions were filled with snow and ice, over which water was poured, and a Canada winter soon rendered them solid, but no ingenuity could render the ice otherwise than brittle—every shot from the town shattered it in pieces. It was now found that their cannon were too small. They could not batter the walls, and it was as fruitless to attempt to scale them. Some other plan must be adopted.

It was determined to make a sudden attack on the lower town. Montgomery, with one division, was to advance upon the south side, while Arnold was to make an attempt upon the north. At the same time, feint move-

CHAP.
XXVIII.

1775.
Dec.
31.

ments were to be made against the upper town, and signal rockets fired from the different points to distract and divert the attention of the enemy. On the thirty-first of December a blinding snow-storm favored their enterprise. At two o'clock on the morning of that day they were on the march. The feint that was to cover the movement of Montgomery was successful. Undiscovered he descended from the Heights of Abraham, passing safely around Cape Diamond to the defile that led to the town. The pass, at all times difficult, was now obstructed by ice and drifting snow. It was defended by barriers guarded by Canadian militia. Taken by surprise, they fled from the picket. Montgomery passed the first barrier unopposed. As he stepped beyond it, sanguine and exultant with hope, he exclaimed : " Push on, my brave boys ; Quebec is ours ! " Just then, a single gun loaded with grape-shot was fired from a battery ; he fell, and by his side his aids and many others, who had answered to his cheering call. The soldiers, disheartened at the fall of their brave leader, were willing to abandon the town, under the lead of Quartermaster Campbell, leaving the bodies of the slain Montgomery, Cheeseman, and MacPherson where they fell.

By some neglect, no feint movement was made to cover the march of Arnold. He was harassed by a flanking fire as he pushed on to the entrance of the town. His leg being shattered by a ball, he was unable to lead his men against the battery. Morgan assumed the command, and with his riflemen stormed it, and captured the men. At daylight he reached the second battery, which was also carried ; but now the forces of the British were concentrated at this point. Morgan's party made a brave resistance, but were overpowered by numbers, and compelled to surrender. He himself was the last to submit. When called upon by the British soldiers to deliver up his sword, he refused, planted himself against a wall, and defied them to take it. They threatened to shoot him ; his men expos-

tulated. At length he saw a man—a priest he knew him to be from his dress ; to him he gave it, saying : “ I will give my sword to you, but not a scoundrel of those cowards shall take it out of my hands.” The bravery of Morgan and his men was appreciated by Carleton ; as prisoners, they were treated with special kindness.

CHAP
XXVIII
1775

Arnold now retired about three miles up the river, and there in a camp whose ramparts were formed of frozen snow and of ice, he blockaded Quebec through the winter. Here we leave him for the present.

Montgomery was at first buried at Quebec. When nearly half a century had passed away, New York remembered her adopted son. She transferred his remains to her metropolis, and with appropriate honors reinterred them in St. Paul's church-yard.

1813

CHAPTER XXIX.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

Meeting of Congress ; alarming Evils require its Attention.—British Cruisers.—Portland burned.—Efforts to defend the Coast.—Congress acts with Energy.—Parliament resolves to crush the Rebels.—Henry Knox.—Difficulties in the Army.—Provincial Prejudices.—Success of the Privateers.—British Theatricals.—The Union Flag.—Affairs in New York.—Rivington's Gazette.—Governor Tryon.—General Lee in the City.—The Johnsons.—Dunmore's Measures in Virginia ; Norfolk burned.—Defeat of North Carolina Tories.—Lee at the South.—Cannon and Powder obtained.—Dorchester Heights fortified.—Boston Evacuated.—Washington in New York.—British and German Troops in Canada.—Numerous Disasters.—The Retreat from Canada.—Horatio Gates.—A British Fleet before Fort Moultrie.—Gloomy Prospects.

CHAP
XXIX.

1775.
Sept.
5.
Oct.

WHEN the Continental Congress reassembled, delegates from Georgia took their seats, for the first time, and the style was assumed of THE THIRTEEN UNITED COLONIES.

During the session, a delegate from beyond the mountains presented himself as the representative of the colony of Transylvania, the germ of the present State of Kentucky, (settled by those bold pioneers, Boone, Harrod, and Henderson), but the delegate of the fourteenth colony was rejected, on the ground that Virginia claimed the territory.

Alarming evils required the prompt attention of Congress. The army was almost destitute of ammunition and military stores ; the coast, to a great extent, unprotected ; British cruisers hovered on the shores of New England ; demanded of the inhabitants supplies ; burned

and pillaged the towns. The notorious Captain Wallace was stationed in Narragansett Bay ; Stonington and Bristol had been bombarded, and Newport was threatened with destruction. The British Admiral, Graves, it was said, had issued orders to burn all the rebel towns from Halifax to Boston. This was no idle rumor. At Falmouth, now Portland, in Maine, the destruction began. This patriotic little town had, some time before, resolutely repulsed Lieutenant Mowatt of the British navy. One evening he appeared with several vessels in the harbor, prepared to mete out the punishment due for such rebellion. He informed the inhabitants of his intention, and allowed them two hours "to remove the human species out of the town." A further respite until nine o'clock next morning was with difficulty obtained. The people removed during the night ; then, by means of bombs and carcasses, this flourishing village of three hundred houses was laid in ashes. The other towns assumed a posture of defence, and avoided a similar ruin.

 CHAP
XXIX.

 1775.
Oct.
7.

18.

The colonies separately took measures to defend their coasts against such attacks. Already Maryland, Virginia, and South Carolina had appointed Naval Boards, and equipped armed vessels. The British ships had been driven from the harbor at Charleston ; a powder-ship had been captured by a South Carolina vessel. Washington had sent cruisers into the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Massachusetts Bay, to intercept supplies intended for the enemy. One of these, the schooner Lee, commanded by Captain Manly, deserves particular mention. She did the country good service. Rhode Island, Massachusetts, and Connecticut, now equipped a few small vessels. Although a few harbors were thus defended, the force that protected the coast was still insufficient.

Congress applied themselves vigorously to remedy these evils. They forwarded some of the powder seized by

CHAP.
XXIX.

1775.

Nov
25.

the South Carolinians to the camp ; appointed a secret committee to import it from the West Indies ; took measures to establish mills for its manufacture, and founderies for the making of cannon. They licensed privateers, and ordered gun-boats to be prepared for the defence of the harbors ; appointed a Naval Committee, which was authorized to build thirteen frigates ; but, alas ! want of funds interfered sadly with the accomplishment of these proposed measures.

Dec.
13.

In this Naval Committee we recognize the germ of the Navy Department. About this time a secret committee was authorized to open a private correspondence with the friends of the cause in England, Ireland, and elsewhere ; this grew into the State Department. Thus was the Continental Congress gradually laying the foundation of the present government of the United States.

Nov.

Parliament, in the mean time, took measures to crush the "rebels ;" enacted laws against them, cruel in the extreme ; gave orders to treat them in warfare not as equals, but as criminals, who should be thankful to escape the gallows. The ministry proclaimed all ships trading to the colonies lawful prizes ; and the crews of all captured colonial trading vessels virtually slaves ; these were doomed to serve in the royal navy as marines. Parliament also voted to increase their army in America to forty thousand men—of this number twenty-five thousand had yet to be raised. They could not be obtained in Great Britain ; men would not enlist. Lord Howe had written to the ministry that Catholic Irish soldiers could not be trusted, and suggested the employment of German troops. Negotiations were accordingly commenced with two of the little German principalities, Brunswick and Hesse Cassel ; and the English monarch hired seventeen thousand Germans, or Hessians, to aid him in subduing the descendants of Englishmen in America. In vain did

the best and most humane in Parliament oppose these measures. There was in England an honorable minority, **who** felt for the cause of the colonists. Burke and Barre stood firm ; Conway and the Duke of Grafton resigned their offices, and joined the opposition ; Lord Effingham and the son of Pitt threw up their commissions in the army, rather than take part in the unnatural struggle. The mercantile interests of the country, and especially the Corporation of London, were opposed to the measures of Parliament. Intelligence of them aroused the Americans to greater exertions, and deepened their hostility to the mother country.

CHAP.
XXIX.
1775.

Since the battle of Bunker Hill, the armies in and around Boston had been inactive—the British from choice, the Americans from want of ammunition. Washington was anxious to be ready, when the bay should be frozen to pass over to the town on the ice. But he must have powder and ordnance.

Henry Knox, a bookseller of Boston, had entered with great zeal into the cause of his country. He had an intuitive skill in the use of artillery, which he first displayed on Bunker Hill, and afterward in planning the defences of the camp. His aptness and energy attracted the attention of Washington. Knox proposed to go to Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and bring from those places the cannon and powder that could be spared. Washington approved the suggestion, wrote to Schuyler at Albany to give his assistance, and to Congress, recommending Knox as colonel of a regiment of artillery. Knox immediately set out.

Other difficulties surrounded the army. The soldiers had enlisted but for one year, their terms would expire before the first of January. In anticipation of this, a committee of the Continental Congress, consisting of Doctor Franklin, Colonel Harrison, of Virginia, and Thomas Lynch, of Carolina, met at Cambridge, with committees

CHAP. from the New England colonies, to reorganize the army,
XXIX. and to devise means to increase it to thirty-two thousand.

1775. The committees were in favor of an attack upon Boston as soon as practicable. Their plans were well laid, but how could they be carried out? The soldiers were unwilling to re-enlist; the zeal of the patriot army had begun to flag; winter was coming on; they were ill-fitted to endure its hardships; their fuel was scanty and their clothing poor; their families needed their presence; the attractions of home presented a delightful contrast to the privations of a winter campaign. Their patriotism was not extinct, but they were weary and discouraged. Says Washington, in a letter: "The desire of retiring into a chimney-corner seized the troops as soon as their terms expired."

Those who were willing to re-enlist, would do so only on certain conditions. They must know under what officers they were to be placed. Provincial prejudices had their effect; the men of one colony hesitated to serve with those of another, or under officers not of their own choosing. It is pleasing to record one instance of high-minded patriotism—doubtless there were many. Colonel Asa Whitcombe, a worthy and experienced officer, was not reappointed on account of his advanced age. His men took offence, and refused to re-enlist. The colonel set them an example by enlisting himself as a private soldier. A younger officer immediately resigned the command of his regiment that Whitcombe might be appointed, which was done.

On the first of December, some days before their terms expired, a portion of the Connecticut troops began to return home; they were unwilling even to remain in camp till their places could be supplied. Their arms were retained at an assessed value.

In the midst of this gloom, the privateers did good service. The camp was thrown into ecstasies by the

arrival of a long train of wagons laden with military stores. The brave Captain Manly had captured off Cape Ann a brigantine laden with guns, mortars, and working tools, designed for the British army. Among the cannon thus obtained was an immense mortar. This was deemed so great a prize, that in the joy of the moment, it was proposed to give it a name. "Old Putnam mounted it, dashed on it a bottle of rum, and gave it the name of Congress."

CHAP
XXIX.
1775.

The blockade of the British was so stringent, that they began to suffer seriously for fuel and fresh provisions: they could obtain none from the land side, while the coast was closely watched. Abundant supplies were sent from England, but these were often wrecked or captured. Some of the poorer houses were taken down to supply fuel, and many of the poorer people sent out of the town, in order to lessen the demand for provisions.

To the grief of the patriot inhabitants, the Old South Church, that time-honored and sacred edifice, was converted into a riding-school for Burgoyne's light-horse, and the pastor's library used to kindle fires. In retaliation, the soldiers converted the Episcopal church at Cambridge into barracks, and melted the leaden pipes of the organ into bullets. The British officers beguiled their time by getting up balls and theatricals. Among the plays performed was one, written by General Burgoyne, caricaturing the American army and its officers.

On the first of January the Union Flag was unfurled, for the first time, over the camp at Cambridge. It was emblematic of the state of the country. The English cross retained in one corner, intimated a still existing relation with the mother country, while the thirteen stripes of red and white that represented the thirteen colonies, now united for self-government and resistance to

1776

CHAP. XXIX. oppression, were broadly significant of the New Republic that was to grow out of this union.

1776. The year opened drearily for the patriots. There were less than ten thousand men in the camp, among whom were many undisciplined recruits, and many without arms. The people were impatient,—why not capture or drive the enemy out of Boston? they asked on all sides. The situation of Washington was painful in the extreme: he could not publish his reasons, lest the enemy should learn his weakness. Under these circumstances, he writes thus to a confidential friend: “We are now left with a good deal less than half-raised regiments, and about five thousand militia. * * * If I shall be able to rise superior to these, and many other difficulties, which might be enumerated, I shall most religiously believe that the finger of Providence is in it, to blind the eyes of our enemies.”

About this time, ships commanded by Sir Henry Clinton left the harbor of Boston on a secret expedition. It was justly surmised that he was bound for New York. We turn once more to the state of affairs in that province.

As has been said, much of the wealth and influence of New York was on the side of the Tories. Richmond and Queen’s counties had refused to send delegates to the Provincial Congress. Governor Tryon, who had retired to a British man-of-war in the harbor, kept up a correspondence with the friends of the royal cause in the city. There was published the most influential Tory journal in the country, “Rivington’s Gazette”—“a thorn in the side of the patriots.” Many who were opposed to this journal were unwilling to adopt violent measures; the committee of safety refused to interfere with it. Colonel Isaac Sears, one of the boldest and most energetic of the New York Sons of Liberty, collected, in Connecticut, about a hundred horsemen, dashed into the city, broke the press and carried away the types to New Haven.

The possession of New York, as it was "the key to the whole continent, a passage to Canada, to the great Lakes, and to all the Indian nations," was all-important to the patriots. It was determined to place troops there. Sears, seconded by the authority of Governor Trumbull, proceeded to form regiments in Connecticut. Washington ordered General Charles Lee to take command of these regiments, and proceed with them to New York, put that city in a state of defence, call in aid from New Jersey to disarm the Tories on Long Island and elsewhere—duties which Lee proceeded forthwith to perform. Governor Tryon threatened to bombard the city if he entered it with the Connecticut troops. The people were greatly alarmed. The Provincial Congress requested Lee not to advance for the present. He was determined to push on with a sufficient number of troops to secure the city, and threatened in his turn, "if they make a pretext of my presence to fire on the town, the first house set on flames by their guns shall be the funeral-pile of some of their best friends." He entered the city on Sunday, February fourth, and encamped on the spot where the City Hall now stands, then a suburb known as "The Fields."

CHAP
XXIX

1776

Feb
4

The threats and counter-threats had wrought up the feelings of the people to a state of intense excitement. During the day this was greatly increased; cannon were heard from the Narrows. Sir Henry Clinton was entering the harbor. Many of the inhabitants hastened from the city; on the afternoon of that Sabbath day, Kingsbridge was thronged with people and wagons, on their way to the country. But these fears were soon relieved. Clinton gave notice that he came merely to pay a visit to his "friend Tryon." He remained but a short time, then sailed away to North Carolina. His mysterious expedition and his "whimsical civility" to his "friend Tryon" gave rise to much speculation; though, as he had but few

CHAP. troops, his movements had, as yet, created but little alarm.
XXIX. Lee now proceeded to put the city in a state of defence.

1776.

Jan. 20. Serious difficulties threatened the interior of the province. Guy Johnson had retired to Canada ; Sir John Johnson had fortified his " Hall," and gathered about him his Highlanders and Mohawks. Schuyler proceeded to disarm and disband this dangerous company. Sir John gave his parole not to take up arms against America. A few months afterward he was suspected of breaking his word ; to avoid arrest, he fled to Canada, where he received a colonel's commission, and organized the regiments called the " Royal Greens," afterward so renowned for deeds of cruelty.

June. During this winter, Governor Dunmore, of Virginia, who, like Tryon, had taken refuge in one of the king's ships, had been engaged in intrigues against the colonists.
Dec. He sent a vessel to Boston with supplies, which, however, was captured. In a letter found on board, he had invited General Howe to transfer the seat of war to the South ; he also landed at Norfolk, carried off a printing press, published a proclamation that promised freedom to the slaves or indentured white servants of the patriots, who would join his cause. With a force thus collected he took possession of the town. Fugitive slaves and others began to flock to his banner. Virginia raised new regiments to dislodge him, and oppose strong movements that were making in his favor. The second regiment, under Woodford, took possession of the narrow neck which connects Norfolk with the mainland, and compelled Dunmore to re-embark. Jan., 1776. Soon after he returned, bombarded the town, and landed a party who burned a portion of it to the ground. The patriots burned the remainder lest it should afford shelter to its enemies. Thus perished the principal shipping port of Virginia, her largest and richest town.

The British were secretly planning an invasion of the South. Governor Martin, of North Carolina, who, like many of the royal governors of that day, carried on operations from on board a ship, was stirring up the Tories of that province, many of whom were Highlanders. He hoped to gather a land force to co-operate with Sir Peter Parker, who was on his way from Ireland with a fleet of ten ships, on board of which were seven regiments. The movements of Sir Henry Clinton could now be accounted for. He had left Boston to take command of the land forces in this intended invasion : he stopped to confer on the subject with Tryon, who had been governor of North Carolina.

CHAP.
XXIX.

1776.

Martin had commissioned two prominent Scotchmen, McDonald and McLeod—both recent emigrants, and officers of the British army. General McDonald enlisted some fifteen hundred men, and marched for the coast, but the North Carolina patriots were on the alert. He was intercepted at Moore's Creek Bridge, sixteen miles from Wilmington. Colonel McLeod was killed ; McDonald and eight hundred and fifty loyalists were taken prisoners. He and his officers were sent away to the north.

Feb

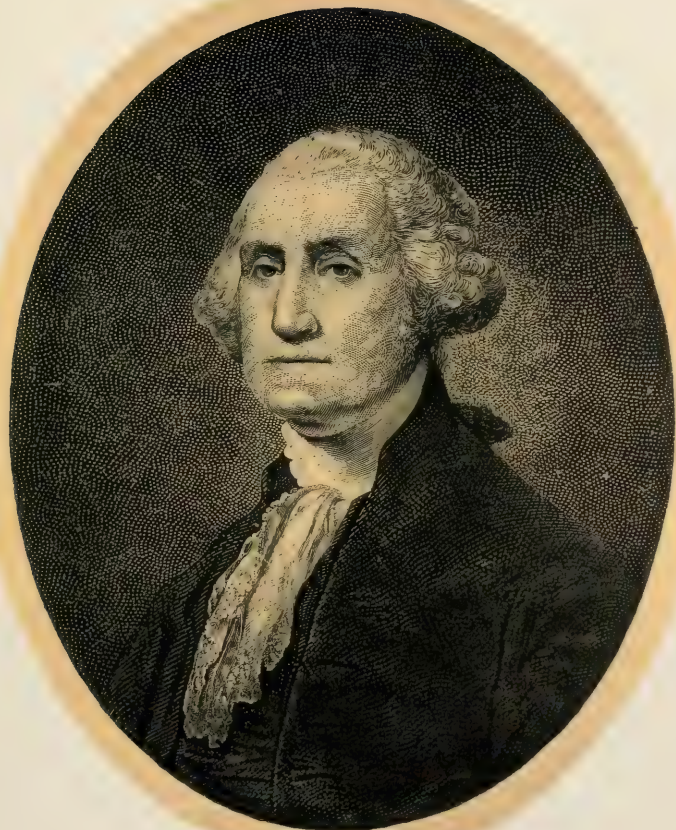
This defeat, which at the first glance may appear of little consequence, was important in its bearing ; it interfered for a time with the plans of Clinton and Martin. This delay was most valuable to the patriots ; they had time to collect forces and mature plans for defence. General Lee was appointed by Congress to take command of the southern army and to watch Clinton, who was hovering on the coast in expectation of the British squadron. After long delays it arrived at the mouth of Cape Fear River. Congress learned from intercepted letters that Charleston was to be attacked. There, at the first alarm, six thousand men, from Virginia and the Carolinas, had assembled. The indefatigable Lee reached the city just as Clinton appeared in the harbor. Had the enemy attacked that place at once, they might have taken it with

May

CHAP. ease. It was, wrote Lee, "perfectly defenceless. The
XXIX. opportunity was not improved, and both parties began to
1776. fortify and prepare for a contest. Here we leave them for
June the present, and return to the camp before Boston.
4.

During the month of January there was little improvement in the state of the army. On the tenth of February Washington writes : "Without men, without arms, without ammunition, little is to be done." The patriots had looked hopefully toward Canada, only to be disappointed. Montgomery had fallen ; Morgan and his brave band were prisoners ; the remnant of the shattered forces that lingered with Arnold in his icy fortress before the walls of Quebec, could accomplish nothing. The whole line of the Atlantic coast was threatened ; and in view of these circumstances Washington was anxious to strike a decisive blow, that should encourage the desponding and revive popular enthusiasm. In truth, the state of public feeling demanded such a course. Congress had authorized him to push the attack upon Boston, to the destruction of the town, should it be necessary. John Hancock, who had large possessions there, said : "Do it, and may God crown your attempt with success." When the bay became frozen, Washington was impatient to cross over on the ice ; again and again he proposed an attack, but a council of war as often decided that the force was still too weak, the ammunition too scant. Meanwhile, Putnam was actively engaged in constructing works on the neighboring heights. Many of the labors conducted by the brave old general had to be attended to in the night-time, to avoid the fire from the enemy's ships. Toward spring, affairs began to wear a brighter aspect. Ten new regiments of militia were enlisted ; the great want that paralyzed every effort—powder—was supplied from various quarters ; some was obtained from New York, some from Bermuda : the Connecticut mills were also in operation

Dec.,
1775.



Gifford

CHAP
XXIX.

1776.

Now, to the great joy of the camp, Knox returned with his long train of sledges laden with ammunition, and cannon of various kinds. With the joy was mingled admiration for the energy displayed. He had travelled more than four hundred miles, over frozen streams and through a wilderness obstructed by the snows of winter. The dull monotony of inaction gave way to bustle and excitement. All was now ready for active operations. The heights that commanded the town must be seized and fortified. Putnam had already fortified Lechmere Point, on the north; there he had mounted his famous "Congress:" that point had only to be supplied with more large cannon and with powder. Now the main object was to secure Dorchester Heights, which commanded the town on the south, and also the harbor. This would compel the enemy to leave the town, or bring on a general engagement: plans were laid accordingly.

To divert the attention of the enemy while preparations were in progress, Boston was to be bombarded, and cannonaded from different points. Should the Americans attain the heights, and the enemy attempt to dislodge them, Putnam, with four thousand picked men, was prepared to cross Charles river and attack the north part of the town.

Washington, deeply impressed with the importance of the coming struggle, issued orders forbidding "all playing at cards or other games of chance," adding, "In this time of public distress, men may find enough to do in the service of God and their country, without abandoning themselves to vice and immorality." He also warned the troops, "If any man in action shall presume to skulk, hide himself, or retreat from the enemy without orders, he will be instantly shot down as an example of cowardice."

The fourth of March was fixed upon for the enterprise. On the evening of that day, the detachment under General Thomas, designed to occupy the heights, moved as

Mar
4.

CHAP.
XXIX.

1776

quietly as possible. In the advance were eight hundred men ; then came the carts with the intrenching tools ; then twelve hundred more men, and in the rear were three hundred wagons laden with bales of hay and bundles of fagots to be used in making the breastwork. They reached the heights about eight o'clock ; amid the roar of artillery—for the enemy were returning the fire directed against them with great spirit—the noise of the wagons and the necessary bustle of the movement had been unheard. Though the earth was frozen eighteen inches deep, they threw up an embankment, and used their hay and other material to great advantage. During that night of labor, the Commander-in-chief was drawn by his interest to the spot. In the morning the fortification appeared very formidable. General Howe, as he examined it through the mist, exclaimed : “ The rebels have done more work in one night than my whole army would have done in a month.” The patriots, at this crisis, watched the movements of the enemy with intense interest. A cannonade was opened upon the heights, but without much effect. Howe did not attempt to storm the works. A night attack was resolved upon, but a furious storm arose, the ships of war could render no service, nor could the boats land in the heavy surf. Before the storm was over, the Americans were too strong to be assaulted. A council of war advised Howe to evacuate the town, as both it and the shipping were exposed to a destructive bombardment. To insure the safety of his army during the embarkation, Howe appealed to the fears of the inhabitants ; he intimated he would burn the town if his troops were fired upon. A deputation of citizens made this known, in an informal manner to Washington, and the British were suffered to depart unmolested.

Eleven days were employed in the embarkation. About fifteen hundred loyalists made ready to leave with the departing army ; thus was the good city of Boston purged

of its Tory population. Authorized by Howe, the British demanded of the inhabitants all the linen and woollen goods ; salt, molasses, and other necessities were destroyed. Crean Brush, a New York Tory, who was commissioned to take charge of the goods that were seized, took advantage of his authority, and broke open and pillaged stores and private houses, as did some of the soldiers. The embarkation was hastened, at the last, by a false alarm that the Americans were about to assault the town.

CHAP.
XXIX.

1776.

On the next Monday, March eighteenth, Washington entered the city. He was received with joy by the remaining inhabitants. After a siege of ten months Boston was again free ; above it waved the Union flag of thirteen stripes. The British fleet, consisting of one hundred and fifty vessels, lay for some days in Nantasket roads, and then bore away. Washington feared its destination was New York. As soon as possible he hastened thither with the main body of the army. Five regiments remained at Boston with General Ward. Soon afterward he resigned, but served the cause in the Massachusetts council and in Congress.

Mar
18.

The land rejoiced greatly at this success. On motion of John Adams, Congress gave Washington a unanimous vote of thanks, and ordered a gold medal to be struck in commemoration of the event.

The expenses of the war were so great, that just before this Congress had been obliged to issue four additional millions of continental paper. A financial committee had been appointed, and now an auditor-general and assistants were to act under this committee ; this assumed the form of a Treasury Department. Two months later Congress established a War Office, and appointed a committee of five members to superintend its operations. To act as chairman of this committee, John Adams resigned the office of chief justice of Massachusetts.

Feb.
17.

April

CHAP.
XXIX.

1776.

Washington reached New York on the thirteenth of April; there he found much to be done. The Heights of Long Island, Kingsbridge, the main avenue from the city by land, were at best but imperfectly guarded, and many prominent points on the river and Sound were entirely undefended.

Governor Tryon and the British ships in the harbor were in constant communication with the Tories in the city. To guard against these dangers, external and internal, Washington had but eight thousand effective men. General Greene was sent with one division to fortify what is now Brooklyn Heights, on Long Island, as they commanded New York. He was also to make himself familiar with the surrounding country. Urged by the commander-in-chief, the committee of safety were induced to prohibit all intercourse with Governor Tryon. Any such intercourse, if discovered, was to be severely punished. But Tryon, aided by spies and agents, continued his efforts in the king's cause. A conspiracy, to which he had instigated the Tories, was fortunately discovered. Some of these may have been true loyalists, but there were others basely won by the promise of reward. In low taverns and drinking-saloons the patriot soldiers were tampered with. The mayor of the city was arrested, as well as some of Washington's body-guard, charged with being concerned in the plot. One of the guard, Thomas Hickey, a deserter from the British army, was hanged, "for mutiny, sedition, and treachery." This example alarmed the Tories, and we hear of no more plots.

June
28.

May
17.

For the first time Washington learned of the measures of the British Parliament. The hired Hessian and German troops were landing in Canada. New apprehensions were awakened for the army in that province. Great efforts were made to reinforce it, regiments were sent under Sullivan and Thompson. Early in the spring Gen-

eral Wooster had joined Arnold, and taken the command at Quebec. But it was not easy for Arnold to act in concert with a superior officer ; as usual, he had difficulty with Wooster, and retired to Montreal. Soon after Wooster was recalled, and Thomas, now a major-general, was appointed to the northern army. General Carleton was strongly reinforced, and Thomas was compelled to make a hasty retreat from before Quebec—so hasty, that the baggage, the artillery, and even the sick were left behind. The noble humanity of Carleton deserves to be recorded. He sought out the sick, many of whom had hid from him in terror, conveyed them to the general hospitals, and promised that on their recovery they should be permitted to return home. Thomas hastened to the Sorel, where, on the second of June, he died of the small-pox, which prevailed greatly in the army. Though the army once more changed its commander, there was no change in its prospects ; they continued to be of the gloomiest character. Carleton came pressing on with a force of thirteen thousand men. General Thompson, with a portion of the American troops, was defeated at Three Rivers ; and he, with his officers and many of his men, were taken prisoners. Those who escaped joined Sullivan on the Sorel.

CHAP.
XXIX

1776.

June

Arnold had been equally unfortunate at Montreal. He stationed a detachment of four hundred men at a point called The Cedars, about forty miles above that place, in order to intercept the stores sent to the enemy. As this post was threatened with an attack, it was shamefully surrendered by Colonel Butterworth, without a blow. A reinforcement sent to their aid was also taken prisoners. Arnold now joined Sullivan. A council of war decided upon a retreat, and the wreck of the army passed out of Canada, followed by a strong British force.

The army was in a deplorable condition when it reached Crown Point. To use the words of John Adams, it was “defeated, discontented, dispirited, diseased, no clothes,

CHAP. beds, blankets, nor medicines ; no victuals but salt pork
XXIX. and flour." Thus ended this invasion, famous for its
1776 daring exploits and numerous disasters.

Congress approved of Sullivan's prudent retreat ; they did not, however, confirm him in the authority that had devolved upon him on the death of General Thomas. They appointed Major-general Gates to the command, and awarded Sullivan a vote of thanks—an honor as unsatisfactory to him as it was empty in itself. Sullivan was deeply wounded, as was General Schuyler, for Gates claimed the command, not only of the forces on Lake Champlain, but of the whole northern army.

Horatio Gates, like Lee, was of foreign birth ; like him, he was a disappointed man. Of his very early life little is known. He served in America under Braddock, in the West Indies under Monckton ; but as he did not receive from his native England the honors which he thought his due, he sold his commission in the British army, and retired to Virginia, where he renewed his acquaintance with Washington, and with his former associate, General Lee. Gates was ambitious, and the revolution opened a path to distinction. As an office-seeker he had, it is said, learned to "flatter and accommodate himself to the humors of others." He could be "the boon companion of gentlemen, and 'hail fellow well met' with the vulgar." He ingratiated himself with the New Englanders, with whom, for some reason, Schuyler was unpopular. Through their influence, it is thought, Gates obtained what he aimed at—promotion. The enemies of Schuyler advanced serious charges against him ; attributed to him the failure of the Canada expedition, and even hinted at treason. There is an instinct common to noble minds by which they discern truth in others. Washington never doubted the integrity of Schuyler, nor did Congress sustain Gates in his claim to supersede him. The appoint-

ment of the latter, they said, referred only to the forces while in Canada ; elsewhere he was subordinate to Schuyler. The difficulty was passed over, as the result of a mistake, and the rival commanders assumed the appearance of satisfaction.

CHAP
XXIX

1776

We now return to Charleston, where we left both parties preparing for a contest. On the fate of Sullivan's Island, the key to the harbor, the result seemed to depend. One party was making ready to attack, the other to defend it. On the south-west point of this island was a fort commanded by Colonel William Moultrie. Fort Moultrie was constructed of logs of palmetto, a wood soft and spongy ; cannon-balls could not splinter it. Lee, not familiar with the palmetto, thought it madness to attempt to defend so fragile a fort ; he contemptuously styled it the "Slaughter-pen." This important post was threatened by sea and land. Before it lay the British fleet under Sir Peter Parker. Sir Henry Clinton, with two thousand men, had taken possession of Long Island, which lay to the east of Sullivan's Island, and was separated from it only by a narrow creek. Here he was erecting batteries to cover his passage across the creek, to assault the fort when the fire of the ships should make a breach. To oppose him the Americans stationed a force under Colonel Thompson on the opposite side of the creek. Lee took his position on a point of the mainland north of the island, where he stood ready, at any moment, to aid either Thompson or Moultrie.

The strength of the fort was now to be tested. On the twenty-eighth of June the formidable fleet of Parker advanced and commenced a "most furious fire," which was returned with great spirit. The firing had but little effect upon the low wooden fort, while the ships of the enemy were almost torn in pieces. In the midst of the terrific roar of artillery the Americans stood bravely to

June
28.

CHAP.
XXIX.

1776.

their guns ; some of them remained at their posts even after they had lost a limb. For ten hours the battle raged without intermission. Then Sir Peter drew off his ships. Among the slain was Lord Campbell, ex-governor of the province, who fought as a volunteer on board the admiral's ship.

Sir Henry Clinton made repeated attempts to reach Sullivan's Island, but was as often foiled by the batteries of Thompson. Several of the ships ran aground ; one, the *Acteon*, was set on fire with her guns loaded and colors flying, and then abandoned. The Americans, determined to secure a trophy, boarded the burning vessel, fired her guns at the retreating enemy, took possession of her colors, loaded three boats with stores, and departed in safety, before she blew up. Among the many heroic incidents connected with this battle, one is related of Sergeant Jasper. The flag-staff was cut by a ball, and the flag fell outside the fort. Jasper immediately leaped down, and, amid the "iron hail," picked up the flag, tied it to a pole, deliberately placed it on the parapet, and then returned to his companions at the guns. Governor Rutledge appreciated the heroic deed ; a few days after he presented his own sword to Jasper, and offered him a lieutenant's commission. He accepted the sword, but modestly declined promotion, on the ground that he could neither read nor write.

Jane
28.

On the very day that this battle took place at the South, a British fleet of forty vessels entered the harbor of New York. On board was General Howe, and with him the late garrison of Boston. Since the evacuation of that place he had been at Halifax awaiting the arrival of his brother, Admiral Howe. He landed his forces on Staten Island, where he was received with demonstrations of joy by the Tories. Clouds of deeper darkness were gathering around New York. The Admiral with more forces might be expected at any moment ; the crisis so long dreaded was at hand. The American soldiers were ordered

to be each day at their alarm posts, and to be in readiness for instant action. Orders to the same effect were sent up the river. Rumors of disaffection in that quarter added the fear of treachery to the general alarm. Such was the state of things ;—the northern army defeated and broken, the fleet of Sir Henry Clinton on its way from the South, Admiral Howe on his way from England, the harbor of New York filled with the enemy's ships,—when an event took place, most important in American history. The colonies declared themselves independent of all foreign authority, and took their place among the nations of the earth.

CHAP
XXIX.

1776.

CHAPTER XXX.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

The Question of Independence; Influences in favor of.—The Tories.—“Common Sense.”—The Declaration; its Reception by the People and Army.—Arrival of Admiral Howe.—His Overtures for Reconciliation.—The American Army; its Composition.—Sectional Jealousies.—The Forts on the Hudson.—The Clintons.—Battle of Long Island.—The Masterly Retreat.—Incidents.—Camp on Harlem Heights.—Howe confers with a Committee of Congress.—Nathan Hale.—The British at Kipp’s Bay.—New York evacuated. Conflict at White Plains.—The Retreat across New Jersey.—Waywardness of Lee.

CHAP. XXX. THE alienation between the colonies and the mother country began at the close of the French war. It was not the
1776. result of any one cause, but of many; the change of feeling was not instantaneous, but gradual. As the struggle took a more decided form, many, who were determined in their resistance to oppression, were unwilling to cast off their allegiance to the land to which their fathers still gave the endearing name of “home.” There were, however, among the true Sons of Liberty a few who had seen the end from the beginning. Such men as Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry foresaw the haughty obstinacy of the British ministry, and foretold the result. “Independent we are and independent we will be,” said Adams; and Henry exclaimed, in the Virginia Assembly: “We must fight! An appeal to arms and the God of Hosts is all that is left us!”

What had long been felt by the few, now flashed upon



Th. Jefferson

the minds of the many, that they could never enjoy their rights but as a self-governing nation. Would the expressions of the home government justify separation, which would involve all the horrors of a protracted and doubtful war? This question became the subject of discussion in the Provincial Assemblies, and among the people themselves.

CHAP.
XXX.
1776

It was not arbitrary and unjust laws alone, nor the refusal of political rights, that had estranged the American people. Religious views had their influence in moulding public sentiment in favor of independence. Long-continued and persistent efforts to establish the Episcopal church in New England, had roused the latent hostility of the Congregationalists—they would not submit to English control in matters of religion. The Presbyterians of the middle and southern colonies, derived, as they were, from the dissenting Scottish church, had a traditionary feeling of opposition to the same influence. Both pastors and people were stanch Whigs, and went hand in hand with the ministers and people of New England. Even in Virginia, where the Episcopal church was established by law, and where the majority of the people were its advocates, the attempt to place over them a bishop was denounced by the House of Burgesses as a “pernicious project.” Though strenuous churchmen, they were jealous of external influences, and repudiated the control of the mother church. On the contrary, the Episcopal clergy, great numbers of whom were Englishmen by birth, from their associations were inclined to favor the royal authority. Nor should we judge them harshly; they acted in accordance with their views of the intimate connection of church and state. These views influenced the members of that church more in the northern than in the southern colonies, and great numbers of them faithfully adhered to the “Lord’s anointed,” as they termed the king.

The peace-loving Quakers, numerous in Pennsylvania,

CHAP. New Jersey, and Delaware, opposed war as wrong in itself.
XXX. The Moravians held similar views. These grieved over
1776. the violation of their rights, yet they hoped by pacific measures to obtain justice.

There were others who, though not opposed to war, believed it to be wrong to rise in opposition to the rule of the mother country. There were also the timid, who deemed it madness to resist a power so colossal. There were the low and grovelling, who sought only an opportunity to plunder ; the time-serving and the avaricious, who, for the gain they might acquire as contractors for the British army, or by furnishing provisions for prisoners, joined the enemies of their country.

The evacuation of Boston strengthened the already strong feeling in favor of independence so prevalent in New England. In the South, the recent risings of the Tories in North Carolina, the ravages of Dunmore in Virginia, and the attack upon Charleston, served still more to alienate the affections of the people ; while their success in repelling the invasion gave them assurance. For many reasons they wished to be independent. Then they could form treaties with other nations, and the brand of rebel, so repugnant to an honorable mind, would be removed. In truth, Congress had already taken the ground of an independent government by offering free trade to other nations, in all merchandise except that of British manufacture, and slaves,—the latter traffic they had prohibited some months before.

About the first of the year, a pamphlet was issued in Philadelphia, under the title of "Common Sense," which had a great influence upon the public mind. Its author, Thomas Paine, an Englishman, had been in the country but a few months. In a style adapted to convince the popular mind, he exposed the folly of delaying any longer a formal separation from the mother country. The pamphlet had a very great circulation, and a proportionate

influence in deciding the timid and wavering in favor of independence.

CHAP
XXX.

1776

On the seventh of June, Richard Henry Lee introduced a resolution into Congress, declaring, "That the United Colonies are and ought to be free and independent States, and that their political connection with Great Britain is and ought to be dissolved." Upon this resolution sprang up an animated discussion. It was opposed, principally, on the ground that it was premature. Some of the best and strongest advocates of colonial rights spoke and voted against the motion, which passed only by a bare majority of seven States to six. Some of the delegates had not received instructions from their constituents on the subject, and others were instructed to vote against it. Its consideration was prudently deferred until there was a prospect of greater unanimity. Accordingly on the eleventh a committee, consisting of Doctor Franklin, John Adams, Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, Roger Sherman, of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston, of New York, was appointed to prepare a Declaration. To give opportunity for union of opinion, the consideration of the subject was postponed to the first of July. At the same time two other committees were appointed; one to draw up a plan for uniting all the colonies, the other to devise measures to form foreign alliances.

On the twenty-eighth the committee reported the declaration to the house. It was drawn by Jefferson, and contained a gracefully written summary of the sentiments of the people and Congress. After a few verbal alterations suggested by Adams and Franklin, it was approved by the committee. The house, however, struck out a few passages. One of these reflected severely upon the British government; another denounced the slave-trade; another censured the king for his attempts to prevent, by the refusal of his signature, the enactment of laws designed to

June

CHAP.
XXX.

1776.

July
4.

prohibit that traffic. They were unwilling to offend the friends of the colonies in Britain, and feared lest these strong expressions might prevent the declaration from receiving a unanimous vote. The vote was taken by States ; the delegates were not unanimous, but there were a sufficient number to give the vote of all the colonies, New York alone excepted, which was given in a few days. The announcement was delayed till the declaration should receive a few amendments, and then, on *July the fourth*, it was formally adopted, and the thirteen colonies became THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

The bell of the State House, in which Congress held its sessions, has upon it the inscription : "Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof"—words taken from the Bible. Congress sat with closed doors, but it was known far and wide, that the subject of independence was under discussion. Crowds assembled outside the Hall, and waited anxiously to learn the result. At mid-day the appointed signal was given. The bell was struck, and to its tones responded the joyous shouts of multitudes. The friends of liberty and independence breathed more freely ; the declaration was made ; the hesitancy of indecision was over, and the spirit of determination arose. It was published ; it was read to the army ; the soldiers received it with shouts of exultation and pledges to defend its principles ; it was announced in the papers ; from the pulpits, and everywhere the Whigs hailed it with joy. Hopes of reconciliation, which had so much paralyzed measures of defence, were at an end ; there was now no neutral ground. The timid though honest friends of their country, who had so long hesitated, generally sided with liberty. The Tories were in a sad condition ; the great majority of them were wealthy, and had hoped that the difficulties would yet be arranged. Laws passed by the new State authorities had rendered them liable to fines and imprisonments, and their

property to confiscation. They endured many outrages, and were subjected to "tarrings and featherings" innumerable, by self-constituted vigilance committees. Congress, to prevent these outrages, gave the supervision of Tories to committees of inspection. The most obnoxious were fain to emigrate, and the committee admonished or restrained the others within certain limits.

CHAF
XXX.

1776

The soldiers in New York manifested their zeal by taking a leaden statue of King George, which stood in the Bowling Green, and running it into bullets, to be used in the cause of independence. To impress upon their minds a sense of the dignity of their position, as well as to reprove this irregularity, Washington, in the orders, the following day, referred to the subject. "The general hopes and trusts," said he, "that every officer and soldier will endeavor so to live and act, as becomes a Christian soldier defending the dearest rights and liberties of his country."

A few days after the public Declaration of Independence, the booming of cannon from the British vessels in the harbor of New York announced the arrival of Admiral Howe. To his brother and himself had been committed the general control of American affairs.

Before he proceeded to hostilities, the admiral addressed a circular to the people; he offered them pardon if they would cease to be rebels, lay down their arms, and trust the king's mercy. As soon as this circular reached Congress, that body caused it to be published in all the newspapers, that the people might see that Britain would grant nothing, and accept no concession short of absolute submission. "They must fight or be slaves."

Howe also attempted to open a correspondence with Washington. As Parliament refused to acknowledge titles conferred by Congress, his letters were addressed, first to Mr. George Washington, then to George Washington, *Esquire, &c., &c.*, hoping that the &c.'s would

CHAP. remove the difficulty ; but the Commander-in-chief, justly
XXX. tenacious of the dignity of his office, and of the honor of
1776. his country, politely but firmly refused to receive them
The messenger expressed his regret that the correspondence could not be opened. His lordship, he said, wished for peace ; he was vested with great powers. Washington replied that he understood Lord Howe had power to grant pardons ; the Americans had defended their rights ; they had committed no crime, and needed no pardon.

The Admiral was disappointed, he really desired peace. The reception he had met with had encouraged his hopes ; he had received loyal addresses from the Tories of New Jersey, Long and Staten Islands ; Governor Tryon had assured him there were many others, secret friends of England, who might be induced to join him. But, to his surprise, his circular, from which he had hoped much, produced little or no effect. He was now convinced that nothing could be accomplished except by force of arms. Meanwhile his army, now on Staten Island, received many accessions ; Sir Henry Clinton had arrived, and more Hessian troops had landed. His whole force was about thirty-five thousand.

As it had become more and more evident that New York was to be the theatre of the war, further preparations had been made to defend the city and neighborhood. Pennsylvania had sent four continental regiments, commanded respectively by Colonels St. Clair, Shee, Anthony Wayne, and Magaw ; three provincial battalions, under Colonels Miles, Cadwallader, and Atlee, and rifle regiments, under Colonels Hand and Allen. These were all commanded by Brigadier-general Mifflin, of that State.

Virginia sent troops under Major Leitch, and from Maryland came the brave company known as Smallwood's regiment, who afterward distinguished themselves in many conflicts, while from Delaware came a regiment under Colonel Hazlet. In addition to these, Pennsylvania,

Maryland, and Delaware, furnished troops to form what was called "a flying camp," a sort of reserve, stationed in New Jersey, in a favorable position, and ready to act in emergencies. This was under Brigadier-general Mercer.

CHAP.
XXX.

1776.

In the troops thus drawn together from different parts of the country, there were marked differences in appearance and discipline. The New England officers were most of them farmers and mechanics—brave, honorable, but plain men. Their soldiers were men of the same stamp ; in many cases their intimates and associates in private life. Their intercourse with each other was less formal than was consistent with strict military discipline. They met not as mere soldiers, but as a band of brethren, united in a cause in which each had a personal interest. With the portion of the army drawn from the other States, the case was different ; with them, there was a marked distinction between the officers and soldiers. The officers were brave and honorable also, but city bred—"gentlemen," as they called themselves—and from wealthy families, while the "common soldiers, for the most part, were a very inferior set." Sectional jealousies arose. The Marylanders, in "scarlet and buff," looked down upon the rustic soldiery in "homespun," while the officers of the other provinces were inclined to despise their associates from New England. These jealousies became so great an evil, that Washington strongly reprobated them in general orders.

As the British were masters of the bay of New York, it was feared they would surround the American army in the city, and take possession of the Hudson, that great highway to the interior. To prevent this, General Mifflin was sent with the Pennsylvania troops to guard the forts at the north end of the island. One of these stood just below, the other just above Kingsbridge, the only avenue to the mainland ; they were known as Forts Washington and Independence. On the west side of the Hudson.

CHAP.
XXX.

1776.

nearly opposite Fort Washington, stood Fort Lee. Near the entrance to the Highlands, and just opposite the well-known promontory of Anthony's Nose, was Fort Montgomery. Six miles higher up the river was Fort Constitution.

The posts last named were under the command of Colonel James Clinton. His brother George commanded the militia of Ulster and Orange counties. These brothers were of Irish descent, natives of New York, and their ancestors were identified with the early settlements on the Hudson. They had been soldiers from their youth—like many of the Revolutionary officers—they had been trained in the French war, in which one of them had served as a captain at twenty, and the other as a lieutenant at seventeen years of age. The elder, James, had also served under Montgomery at the capture of Montreal, while George had been active in the service of his country as a member of the New York Legislature, and as a delegate to the Continental Congress.

July
12.

In spite of obstructions thrown across the channel, two British vessels, the *Phoenix* and the *Rose*, passed up the Hudson. The latter was commanded by the notorious Captain Wallace, who had pillaged the shores of Rhode Island. They passed the forts unharmed, and gallantly returned the fire from Fort Washington. As they boldly pushed their way up the river, their appearance created great alarm. Signal guns were heard from the forts, and false rumors increased the general excitement. The sturdy yeomanry left their harvests uncut in their fields, and hastened to join the forces under Clinton to defend the passes of the Highlands. These fears were in a great measure groundless. The vessels quietly anchored here and there, while their boats took soundings ; but the event proved the inefficiency of the defences at the mouth of the Hudson.

The Americans, from the Jersey shore and the city

continued to watch, with intense interest, the movements of the enemy on Staten Island. A spy reported that they were about to land on Long Island, with twenty thousand men, and take possession of the Heights, which commanded New York ; he had heard the orders read, and the conversation of the officers in the camp. The next day the roar of artillery was heard from Long Island, and soon the news reached the city that the enemy had landed at Gravesend Bay.

CHAP
XXX.

1776.

Aug
22

General Greene had thrown up a line of intrenchments and redoubts across the neck of the peninsula upon which stood the village of Brooklyn. He had made himself acquainted with the ground in the neighborhood, and nearly completed his plans for defence, when he was suddenly taken ill with a raging fever. He was still unable to be at his post, and Sullivan held the temporary command.

Between the American intrenchments and Gravesend Bay lay a range of thickly-wooded hills, that stretched across the island from south-west to north-east. Over and around these hills were three roads : one along the shore passed around their south-western base ; another crossed over their centre toward Flatbush ; while a third, which was near the north-east extremity of the range, passed over them from the village of Bedford to Jamaica.

Nine thousand of the British had already landed at Gravesend, under the command of Sir Henry Clinton and his associates, the Earls of Cornwallis and Percy, and Generals Grant and Erskine. Colonel Hand, who was stationed there, retired on their approach to a position that commanded the central or Flatbush road. The British continued to land more forces secretly in the night time, but for several days nothing occurred, except skirmishing between the enemy and the troops at the outposts, along the wooded hills.

At the first alarm, the Commander-in-chief had hastened to send to the aid of Sullivan a reinforcement of six

CHAP. XXX. battalions,—all he could well spare. He exhorted these soldiers to be cool, and not to fire too soon. They appeared in high spirits, though most of them were going into battle for the first time.

1776. Aug. 24. On the twenty-fourth, Washington, somewhat relieved from his apprehensions with regard to the city, crossed over to Brooklyn to inspect the lines. He was pained to observe a great want of system among the officers, and of discipline among the soldiers. A strong redoubt had been thrown up at the central pass, but the plans for defence were imperfect, and affairs in much confusion.

On his return, he appointed General Putnam to the command, with orders to remedy these evils. The “brave old man” hastened with joy to the post of danger.

From day to day the number of tents on Staten Island became gradually less, and one by one ships dropped silently down to the narrows. Washington became convinced that the British designed to attack the lines at Brooklyn. He sent over further reinforcements, among which was Haslet’s Delaware regiment—troops whose soldierly bearing and discipline had won his special regard.

He proceeded in person to aid Putnam with his counsel. On the evening of the twenty-sixth he returned to New York, perplexed and depressed, for a dark cloud of uncertainty and danger hung over the future.

His fears were soon realized. On that very evening the British proceeded to carry out their plan of attack. By this plan, Sir Henry Clinton was to march along by-paths across to the eastern or Jamaica road, to seize the pass in the Bedford hills, thence proceed onward, and turn the left flank of the Americans; General Grant was to pass along the shore-road, and attack them on the right, while General De Heister, with his Hessians, was to threaten the central pass, where Colonel Hand was stationed with his riflemen.

At nine o’clock, Sir Henry, guided by a Long Island

Tory, commenced his march toward the eastern road ; about midnight, Colonel Grant's division moved in an opposite direction, along the western or shore-road. Colonel Atlee, who was stationed there with a small company of militia, was driven back from point to point. News of Grant's approach soon reached General Putnam. Lord Stirling, with Smallwood's and Haslet's regiments, was sent to the relief of Colonel Atlee. About daylight they came up with him, and soon the front of the approaching enemy appeared in view.

Presently the redoubt at the central pass was cannonaded from Flatbush. This firing attracted the attention of Sullivan, who went to the relief of Colonel Hand.

Thus the object of the British was in part accomplished. The attention of the Americans was diverted, their troops were scattered beyond the lines ; silently and rapidly the forces of Clinton were moving on to cut off their return. He had found the eastern pass unguarded, and continued his march undiscovered, and now signal-guns announced that he was close upon the American lines. The Hessians advanced at once upon the redoubt. Colonel Grant pushed on. Sullivan and Stirling both perceived their danger, and endeavored to retreat, but in vain. The enemy had gained their rear ; they were completely entrapped and hemmed in. It is true, a portion of Stirling's troops escaped by fording a creek ; the remainder, most of whom were of Smallwood's regiment, took a brave but desperate stand. A scene of carnage ensued ; more than two hundred and fifty of them were slain within sight of the lines. Some of these were most cruelly and wantonly bayoneted by the merciless Hessians. At length Stirling sought De Heister and surrendered. Sullivan's forces were driven back and forth by the two divisions of the enemy, and treated in a like barbarous manner ; some were taken prisoners, among whom was Sullivan himself ; others fought their way back to the

CHAP
XXX.
1776.

Aug
27

CHAP. lines. Some portion of this conflict took place amid the
XXX.
_____ hills now embraced in the beautiful cemetery of Green-
1776. wood.

Washington reached the spot just in time to witness the catastrophe. As from the lines he saw his brave troops surrounded and cruelly slaughtered—touched to the heart with deep and humane sorrow, he wrung his hands and exclaimed : “ Good God ! what brave fellows I must lose this day ! ”

The loss of the Americans in this battle was very severe ; of the five thousand engaged, nearly two thousand were slain or taken prisoners, while out of sixteen thousand the British lost but about four hundred. They made no assault on the American lines, but encamped directly in front of them, and prepared to carry them by regular approaches.

Although reinforced the next day, by Mifflin’s and Glover’s regiments, the Americans had still a very inferior force. On the morning of the twenty-ninth, as General Mifflin, with Adjutant-general Reed and Colonel Grayson, was inspecting the outposts at Red Hook, a light breeze, that dispersed the fog for a moment, revealed to them the enemy’s fleet. They were justly alarmed ; the unusual stir among the boats convinced them that some great movement was on foot. It was probable the enemy intended to pass up the bay and surround them. They hastened to Washington, who summoned a council of war, and it was decided that the army should that night be secretly withdrawn from the island. It was a hazardous enterprise, and much was to be done ; boats were to be collected, and preparations for the removal of nine thousand men were to be made, in the face of the enemy, rapidly, and yet so silently and cautiously, as not to awaken the slightest suspicion. It was already noon, but the orders were issued, and all the boats around Manhattan Island were impressed and in readiness at eight o’clock

that evening. And at the silent midnight hour the regiments, one by one, began to march to the ferry, and in boats manned by Glover's regiment, most of whom were Marblehead fishermen, they were borne to the city. By eight o'clock the entire army, with their military stores, cattle, horses, and carts, were safely landed.

CHAP.
XXX.
—
1776

Several incidents occurred, which have a peculiar interest as connected with this famous retreat. General Mifflin, who was stationed nearest to the enemy's lines, was to remain at his post until the others had embarked. Colonel Scammell, who was sent to hasten forward a particular regiment, mistook his orders, and sent on Mifflin with his whole covering party; and great was the consternation of the Commander-in-chief when they joined the others at the ferry. "This is a dreadful mistake, General Mifflin," said he, "and unless the troops can regain the lines before their absence is discovered by the enemy, the most disastrous consequences are to be apprehended." They returned to their post with all expedition. "This was a trying business to young soldiers," says one of their number, "it was, nevertheless, strictly complied with, and we remained not less than an hour in the lines before we received the second order to abandon them."¹

A story is told of a woman, wife of a suspected Tory, who lived near the ferry. She sent her negro servant to the British with news that the Americans were retreating. He reached the Hessian outposts in safety, but they did not understand his language, and detained him a close prisoner till morning. Then an English officer, who examined him, learned the truth, but it was too late. The British did not reach the ferry till the last boat was beyond musket shot. It was an August morning; but for a dense fog, the boats which left after daylight must have been discovered. The safe retreat of the patriot army

Aug
80.

¹ Graydon's Memoirs.

CHAP. XXX. was by many attributed to a peculiar Providence. It was
— a trust in this Providence, a calm assurance of ultimate
1776. success under its guiding care, that strengthened the
hearts of the patriots in their darkest hour of trial.

A few days after this retreat, Admiral Howe, who hoped the Americans would now accept peace on *his terms*, sent General Sullivan on parole with a letter to Congress. He invited them to send, in an informal manner, a committee to confer with him on some measures of reconciliation. He would receive them as private gentlemen, as the ministry would not acknowledge the legal existence of Congress. Accordingly, John Adams, Doctor Franklin, and Edward Rutledge, held a conference with him at a house on Staten Island, opposite Amboy.

Doctor Franklin and Lord Howe had often conversed together in England on the present difficulties. His lordship made known the terms on which peace could be obtained. These terms were unconditional submission. When told that the Congress and people would treat on no other basis than that "of a free and independent nation," he expressed regret, that he should be compelled to distress the Americans. Doctor Franklin reciprocated his good will, but quietly remarked, "The Americans will endeavor to lessen the pain you may feel, by taking good care of themselves." Thus ended the much talked-of interview. The result was good. The people were strengthened in the belief that England had no terms to offer, which would lead them to regret the course they had adopted.

The British, now in possession of Long Island, extended their lines along the East River, and stationed in them a large number of Hessian troops, of whom reinforcements had come within a few days. The defeat at Brooklyn had a very disheartening effect on the minds of the militia, great numbers of whom deserted, and soon Wash-



STATUE OF NATHAN HALE

CHAP.
XXX.

1776.

ington's army was less than twenty thousand men, and on many of these little dependence could be placed. The question soon arose, Should New York be defended to the last, or should it be evacuated? Some proposed to burn it to the ground, as "two-thirds of the property belonged to Tories," rather than it should furnish comfortable winter-quarters for the enemy. Congress decided that the city should not be burned.

The sick and wounded, in the meanwhile, were transferred to Orange, in New Jersey, and most of the military stores were removed to Dobbs' Ferry, that the garrison might be unencumbered should they be obliged to make a hasty retreat. It was decided by a council of war that Putnam, with five thousand troops, should remain to garrison New York, while General Heath, with the main body, was to fortify the heights in the neighborhood of Kingsbridge, where, presently, Washington transferred his headquarters.

Washington was anxious to learn the designs of the enemy on Long Island. At the suggestion of Colonel Knowlton, Nathan Hale volunteered to go on the perilous errand. Hale was a native of Connecticut, a graduate of Yale College, had thoughts of studying for the ministry, and at the commencement of the war was a teacher of youth. After the battle of Lexington, he hastened to Boston to join the army, in which he served as a lieutenant. On one occasion, to induce his men to continue their term of enlistment, he offered them his own pay. Soon after he received from Congress the commission of captain.

He passed to the island, obtained the knowledge desired, notes of which he took in Latin. As he was returning he fell in with a party of the enemy, was recognized by a Tory relative, seized and taken to Howe's headquarters, and, without much ceremony, was ordered to be executed the next morning.

The provost-marshal, named Cunningham, treated

CHAP. him with great brutality, denied him a Bible, tore up the
XXX. letter he had written to his mother, giving as a reason,
1776. "that the rebels should never know they had a man who
could die with such firmness." The last words of Hale
were : "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for
my country."

The entire British fleet was within cannon-shot of the city, and some of their vessels had passed up the Hudson and East rivers. They had landed troops on the islands at the mouth of Harlem river, and there erected a battery. Soon British and Hessians, under Clinton and Colonel Donop, crossed over from the camp on Long Island to Kipp's Bay, three miles above the city. Washington heard the cannonading in that quarter, and, as he was on the way to learn the cause, met the militia, who, on the first approach of the enemy had fled in sad confusion, followed by two brigades of Connecticut troops, who that very morning had been sent to support them. He strove to rally them, but in vain ; neither entreaties nor commands had any effect upon these panic-stricken soldiers. Mortified and indignant at their cowardice, he dashed his hat upon the ground, and exclaimed : "Are these the men with whom I am to defend America ?" The enemy in pursuit were now not more than eighty yards from him, but in his excitement he forgot his own safety, and had not an attendant seized the bridle of his horse and hurried him from the field, he must have fallen into their hands.

Sept.
15.

Washington ordered General Heath to secure Harlem Heights, and sent an express order to Putnam to evacuate the city, and retire to those heights with all speed ; for he feared that the enemy would extend their lines across the island from Kipp's Bay, and cut off his retreat. Fortunately the British did not pursue their advantage. Putnam retreated along the west side of the island by the Bloomingdale road. His line, encumbered with women and children, was exposed to the fire of the ships lying in the

Hudson He ordered, encouraged, and aided, and by his extraordinary exertions, it is said, saved his corps from entire destruction. However, his heavy artillery and three hundred men fell into the hands of the enemy.

CHAP.
XXX.

1776.

Now the British had possession of the city, and the main body of the Americans was encamped on the northern portion of the island, across which they threw a double row of lines, about four and a half miles below Kingsbridge. Two miles above these lines, was Fort Washington, and a few miles below them were the British lines, extending also from river to river.

On the sixteenth the enemy made an attack upon the American advanced posts, but were repulsed and driven off by Virginia and Connecticut troops, but their commanders, Major Leitch, and the brave Colonel Knowlton, one of the heroes of Bunker Hill, both fell in this encounter. The spirits of the soldiers, depressed by repeated defeats and disasters, were somewhat revived by this successful skirmish.

Sept.

The armies watched each other for some weeks. Many were sick in the American camp ; " it was impossible to find proper hospitals ; and they lay about in almost every barn, stable, shed, and even under the fences and bushes."

Sir William Howe now began to collect forces at Throg's Neck, a peninsula in the Sound about nine miles from the American camp. This peninsula was separated from the mainland by a narrow creek and a marsh, which was overflowed at high tide. By means of the bridge and fords, Howe hoped to pass over to the mainland and gain the rear of the Americans, and cut off their communication with New England, whence they received most of their supplies. His plans, though well laid, were defeated. General Heath was on the alert ; he was joined by Colonel William Prescott, who commanded at Bunker Hill, and by Hand with his riflemen, and others ; every pass was guarded, and the planks of the bridge removed. Howe,

- CHAP. with his usual caution, waited six days for reinforcements.
XXX.
By this time General Lee, now more a favorite than ever,
1776. had returned from his successful campaign at the South,
and Sullivan, Stirling, and Morgan had been restored to
the army by exchange. While Howe thus delayed, it was
decided, in a council of war, that every American post on
New York island, excepting Fort Washington, should be
abandoned. This plan was promptly executed. The
army, in four divisions, commanded by Generals Lee,
Heath, Sullivan, and Lincoln, withdrew across Kings-
bridge, and gradually concentrated their forces in a forti-
Oct. fied camp near the village of White Plains.
23.

Still hoping to gain their rear, Howe moved on toward New Rochelle, where he was reinforced by light-horse troops, and Hessians under General Knyphausen, who had recently arrived from Europe. He advanced upon the camp. Scarcely had the Americans intrenched themselves at White Plains, when a rumor of his approach reached them. On the twenty-eighth, as Washington, accompanied by his general officers, was reconnoitring the heights in the neighborhood, the alarm was given that the enemy had driven in the picket-guards, and were within the camp. When he reached headquarters he found the army already posted in order of battle. The enemy did not advance upon them; they turned their attention to a height known as Chatterton's Hill, which lay a little south of the camp, and was separated from it by the river Bronx. This height was occupied by sixteen hundred men under General McDougall, and the attack was made at this point. After a feeble resistance, the militia fled, but Hazlet's and Smallwood's regiments, so famous on Long Island, made a brave stand, and repeatedly repulsed the enemy; but, at length, overpowered by numbers, they retreated across the bridge to the camp. This battle of

White Plains was a spirited encounter, in which each of the parties lost about four hundred men.

The British took possession of the hill, and began to intrench themselves ; and now, for the third time, the "armies lay looking at each other ;" they were within long cannon-shot.

Could the undisciplined, war-worn, and disheartened Americans hope to escape from a force so well equipped and so powerful? That night was to them an anxious one. It was passed in severe labor ; they doubled their intrenchments and threw up redoubts. Some of these were hastily constructed of stalks of corn, pulled up from a neighboring field, with the earth clinging to the roots. These piled with the roots outward, presented an appearance so formidable, that Howe, deceived as to their strength, did not attack them, but ordered up reinforcements.

Howe's cautious conduct of the war has been severely criticised, and various reasons have been assigned, but it has never been satisfactorily explained ; whatever his reasons may have been, his delay at this time cost him another golden opportunity. Washington withdrew his army in the night-time to the heights of North Castle, a strong position, about five miles distant. His enemy had again eluded him, and Howe retired with his forces to Dobb's Ferry, on the Hudson.

This movement awakened new fears ;—did he intend to pass down the river to Fort Washington, or to cross into New Jersey? "He must attempt something," writes Washington, "on account of his reputation, for what has he done yet with his great army?"

To meet the threatened dangers a new disposition was made of the American forces. Lee, with a portion, was to remain at North Castle ; Putnam, with another, was to guard the west side of the Hudson ; Heath, the guardian of the passes of the Highlands, was to encamp at Peekskill ; while General Greene commanded at Fort Lee, and

CHAP
XXX

1776

Nov
4.

CHAP. Colonel Magaw, with the Pennsylvania troops, occupied
XXX. Fort Washington.

1776. With respect to maintaining Fort Washington, there was a diversity of opinion, as neither that fort nor the obstructions across the channel had prevented the passage of vessels up the Hudson. Washington, with Lee, Reed, and others, was in favor of withdrawing the troops at once. He addressed a letter to Greene, in which he advised this course, but left the matter to his discretion. Greene and Magaw, who were both on the spot, and knew the condition of the fort, decided that it could be maintained, and made preparations accordingly. This was, as the result proved, an injudicious decision. The post was comparatively useless ; it was accessible on three sides from the water ; the fort was very small, and would not contain more than a thousand men, the lines were very extensive, and the garrison insufficient to man them.

Washington visited the posts along the river. When he arrived at Fort Lee, he was greatly disappointed to find that the troops had not been withdrawn from Fort Washington ; and, before he could make a personal examination, the fort was invested. It was attacked on all sides. The garrison, after a brave resistance, which cost the enemy four hundred men, was driven from the outer lines, and crowded into the fort, where they were unable to fight to advantage, and were exposed to the shells of the enemy. Further resistance was impossible, and Colonel Magaw surrendered all his troops, two thousand in number. During this action, the troops of Cadwallader especially distinguished themselves. Of the officers, Colonel Baxter, of Pennsylvania, fell while cheering on his men.

Nov.
16.

From the New Jersey shore, the Commander-in-chief witnessed a portion of the battle, and again he saw some of his brave troops bayoneted by the merciless Hessians, and wept, it is said, "with the tenderness of a child."

It was resolved to abandon Fort Lee, but before it

was fully accomplished, Cornwallis, with a force six thousand strong, crossed the Hudson to the foot of the rocky cliffs known as the Palisades. The force sent down from North Castle was encamped at Hackensack, which lay between the river of that name and the Hudson, and Washington saw at once that the object of the enemy was to form a line across the country, and hem them in between the rivers. To avoid this he retreated, with all his forces, including the garrison of Fort Lee, to secure the bridge over the Hackensack, thence across the Passaic to the neighborhood of Newark. This retreat was made in such haste that nearly all the artillery was abandoned, the tents left standing, and the fires burning. That night the enemy found shelter in the tents of the deserted camp.

From Newark, the army moved on across the Raritan to Brunswick, thence to Princeton, where they left twelve hundred men, under Lord Stirling, to check the enemy, while the main body proceeded to Trenton, and thence beyond the Delaware. The enemy pressed so closely upon them, that the advance of Cornwallis entered Newark at one end, as their rear-guard passed out at the other, and often during this march, "the American rear-guard, employed in pulling up bridges, was within sight and shot of the British pioneers, sent forward to rebuild them."

Thus less than four thousand men—a mere shadow of an army—poorly clad, with a scant supply of blankets, without tents, and enfeebled for want of wholesome food, evaded, by an orderly retreat, a well appointed force that far outnumbered them, well fed, well clothed, well disciplined, and flushed with victory. When the enemy reached the Delaware, they were unable to cross over, not a boat was to be found; Washington had taken the precaution to have them all secured for a distance of seventy miles, and transferred to the west side. Thus ended this famous retreat, remarkable for the manner in which it was conducted, and the circumstances under which it took place.

CHAP
XXX

1776

Cornwallis was anxious to procure boats and push on to Philadelphia, but Howe decided to wait till the river should be frozen. Meanwhile, the Hessians were stationed along the eastern bank for some miles above and below Trenton.

During his harassed march, Washington had sent repeated and urgent orders to Lee to hasten to his aid with reinforcements. Notwithstanding the emergency, which he well knew, Lee lingered for two or three weeks on the east side of the Hudson, and when actually on the march, proceeded so slowly, that he did not reach Morristown until the eleventh of December.

Lee had a high opinion of his own military abilities, and evidently desired an independent command. The deference which the Americans had paid to his judgment, and the importance they attached to his presence in the army, had flattered his natural self-conceit ; his success at the South, and the correctness of his views in relation to Fort Washington, had strengthened his influence over them, and now, in this time of depression and discouragement, he hoped by some brilliant exploit to retrieve the fortunes of the army, and gain more glory to himself. In this mood he writes : " I am going into the Jerseys for the salvation of America." And again : " I am in hopes to reconquer, if I may so express myself, the Jerseys ; it was really in the hands of the enemy before my arrival." While he pondered over these vain projects, he disregarded the authority of the Commander-in-chief, and, to say the least, subjected him to cruel inconvenience. We have no reason to believe that Lee was untrue to the cause he had embraced, but his wayward conduct, at this time and afterward, has diminished the grateful respect with which Americans would have cherished his memory.

CHAPTER XXXI.

THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

Discouragements.—Effects of Howe's Proclamation.—Affairs on Lake Champlain.—Heroism of Arnold.—Carleton retires to Canada.—Capture of Lee.—Troops from the Northern Army.—Battle of Trenton.—Battle of Princeton.—Death of Mercer.—Washington retires to Morristown.—Cornwallis in his Lines at Brunswick.—Encouragements.—Putnam at Princeton.—Ill-treatment of American Prisoners; their Exchange under Negotiation.—Appointment of General Officers.—Muhlenburg.—Wayne.—Conway.—Medical Department.—The Navy.—Marauding Expeditions.—Peekskill.—Danbury.—Death of Wooster.—Retaliation at Sag Harbor.—Efforts to recruit the Army.—Schuyler and Gates.—The National Flag.

As the news of this retreat went abroad, the friends of the cause were discouraged. What remained of the army was fast wasting away; their enlistments were about to expire, and the militia, especially that of New Jersey, refused to take the field in behalf of a ruined enterprise. Many thought the States could not maintain their independence; but there were a few who, confident in the justice of their cause, were firm and undaunted. Among these was Washington. In a conversation with General Mercer he remarked: "That even if driven beyond the Alleghanies, he would stand to the last for the liberties of his country."

CHAP
XXXI.

1776.

Howe felt certain the game was his own; he had only to bide his time. He sent forth another proclamation, in

CHAP.
XXXI.

1776.

which he called upon all insurgents to disband, and Congress to lay down their usurped authority ; and offered pardon to all who should accept the terms within sixty days. Many persons, most of whom were wealthy, complied. Among these were two of the delegates from Pennsylvania to the late Continental Congress, and the president of the New Jersey Convention which had sanctioned the Declaration of Independence, and others who had taken an active part in favor of the Revolution. For ten days after the proclamation was issued, from two to three hundred came every day to take the required oath.

Dec.
12.

The movements of the enemy, and the effect produced by the proclamation, caused great excitement in Philadelphia. Putnam, who had been sent to command there, advised that, during this season of peril, Congress should hold its sessions elsewhere, and it adjourned to meet again at Baltimore.

At this time a reinforcement of seven regiments was on its way from Canada. We now return to the forces on Lake Champlain, where we left Schuyler and Gates in a sort of joint command.

The army driven out of Canada, broken, diseased, and dispirited, rested first at Crown Point, and then at Ticonderoga. During his retreat, Sullivan wisely secured or destroyed all the boats on Lake Champlain. Its shores were an unbroken wilderness ; thus the British were unable to follow up their pursuit by land or by water.

Sir Guy Carleton, flushed with victory, and full of ardor, determined to overcome all obstacles and push his victory to the utmost. He would obtain the command of the Lakes Champlain and George, and by that means subdue northern New York, and then proceed to take possession of Albany, where he hoped to take up his winter-quarters. From that point, he hoped, by means of the Hudson, to co-operate with the Howes at New York, to cut off the communication between New England and

the States west and south. This he believed would bring the contest to a speedy close, and secure to himself a share of the honors of the victory. He exerted himself with so much energy and success, that at the end of three months he had a well-equipped fleet. The frames of five large vessels, that had been brought from England, were put together at St. John's on the Sorel. These, with twenty smaller craft, and some armed boats, which had been dragged up the rapids of that river, were now launched upon the lake.

CHAP.
XXXI.
1776.

The Americans were not idle. General Gates authorized Arnold, who was somewhat of a seaman, to fit out and command a flotilla. Arnold threw himself into the enterprise with all the energy of his nature, and soon was master of a force, in vessels and men, nearly half as large as that of Carleton. He moved his little fleet across a narrow strait between Valcour Island and the mainland, in such a position that the whole force of the enemy could not be made to bear upon him at one time; there he awaited the contest. As Carleton, with a favorable wind, swept briskly up the lake, he passed the island behind which Arnold's flotilla lay snugly anchored, before he observed it. The wind was such that the larger ships could not beat up the strait, but the smaller vessels advanced, and a desperate encounter ensued, which was continued until evening came on. Then Carleton arranged his squadron so as to intercept Arnold's escape, and awaited the morning; when, if his larger vessels could be made to bear, he felt certain of the prize. The night proved dark and cloudy; favored by this circumstance, Arnold slipped by the enemy, and at daylight was some miles on his way to Crown Point. But as most of his vessels were in bad condition, they could make but little headway; only six reached that place in safety, two were sunk, and the others were overtaken by Carleton a few miles from the Point,

Oct
6.

CHAP. where one was captured with the crew. Arnold fought
XXXI. desperately, until his galley, the Congress, was cut to
1776. pieces, and one-third of her crew killed. Determined that
his flag should not be struck, he ordered his vessels to be
grounded and set on fire. When this was done, he, with
his men, leaped out and waded to the shore, and by well-
directed rifle-shots kept the enemy at bay till the vessels
were consumed, and with them the still waving flag ; then
giving a triumphant cheer, they moved off through the
woods to Crown Point, where they found the remnant of
the fleet. They stayed only to destroy the houses and the
stores at the fort, and then embarked for Ticonderoga.
Before the enemy arrived, Gates, who commanded at that
post, had so strengthened his position that Carleton decid-
ed not to attack it, but to retire to Canada, and postpone
his wintering in Albany to some future day.

As the forts on the Lakes were safe for the present,
General Schuyler detached the seven regiments, of which
we have spoken, to the relief of Washington. When Lee
learned that three of these regiments were at Peekskill,
he ordered them to join him at Morristown. The remain-
ing four, under General Gates, were passing through
northern New Jersey toward Trenton.

Gates was detained by a severe snow-storm, and un-
certain as to the exact position of the army, he sent for-
ward Major Wilkinson with a letter to Washington,
stating his position, and asking what route he should take
to the camp. Wilkinson learned that Washington had
crossed the Delaware ; and as General Lee, the second in
command, was at Morristown, he made his way thither.
Just at this time, Lee with a small guard was quartered,
for the night, at a tavern at Baskenridge, three miles from
his army, which was left under the command of Sullivan.
Here he was joined by Wilkinson, on the morning of the
thirteenth of December. Lee took his breakfast in a
leisurely manner, discussed the news, and had just finished

Dec.
13.

a letter to General Gates, when, much to his surprise, the house was surrounded by a party of British dragoons. He had not dreamed that an enemy was near, and his guards were off duty. But a Tory of the neighborhood had learned the evening before where he intended to lodge and breakfast, and had, during the night, ridden eighteen miles to Brunswick, to inform the enemy, and to pilot them to the spot. For a few moments all was confusion. The dragoons were calling for the General, and the General was calling for the guards, who were scattered in all directions. "The scene was soon closed. General Lee, without a hat, clad in a blanket-coat and slippers, was mounted on a horse that stood at the door, and borne off in triumph to the British army at Brunswick."

CHAP.
XXXI.

1776

Had Lee, by some fortunate accident, succeeded in retrieving the fortunes of the army, unsuccessful under Washington, it is probable that the wishes of the people might have turned toward him as commander-in-chief. For men are too apt to judge of those who live in the same age with themselves, merely by their success; and too often they yield to what is self-confident and assuming, the honor and respect due to sober judgment and high moral principles.

Under these circumstances, Lee's success would have proved most unfortunate for the country, for he had neither the judgment nor the principle necessary to guide it safely through the approaching crisis.

After the capture of Lee, the troops under Sullivan moved on at once to join the Commander-in-chief. General Gates, who had left his regiments at Morristown, reached the camp on the same day. As Washington had now a force of about six thousand men fit for service, he was anxious to strike a blow, that should revive the courage of the army and the people, before the disbandment of those troops, whose terms of enlistments were about to

CHAP. expire. The prospect of success was doubtful, but he felt
XXXI. that, under the circumstances, inaction would ruin the
1776. cause, and defeat could do no more.

Howe was in New York ; Cornwallis, who was on the eve of embarking for England, was there also. The British forces in New Jersey, though strong, were much scattered. The Hessians, who were in the advance, were carelessly cantoned at different points along the eastern bank of the Delaware. Colonel Donop was stationed at Burlington, and his forces were quartered above and below that point. Colonel Rahl, who had distinguished himself at White Plains and Fort Washington, was at Trenton, with a force of fifteen hundred men. This brave but careless commander took his ease, enjoyed his music and bath, and when it was proposed to throw up works upon which to mount cannon, in readiness against an assault, said, merrily : " Pooh ! pooh ! an assault by the rebels ! Let them come ; we'll at them with the bayonet." The Hessians were a terror to the people ; they plundered indiscriminately Whig and Tory. The American soldiers hated them intensely for their savage bayonetings on the battle-field, and were eager to avenge the outrages inflicted upon their friends and countrymen.

Washington proposed to cross the river and surprise the Hessians at different points. A council of war was held, and Christmas night was fixed upon for the enterprise. By the plan proposed, Washington himself was to cross nine miles above Trenton, and march down upon that place. Colonel Ewing, with the Pennsylvania militia, was to cross a mile below the town, and secure the bridge over Assunpink creek, at the south side of it, and thus cut off the enemy's retreat. Adjutant-general Reed and Colonel Cadwallader, who were stationed at Bristol, nearly opposite Burlington, were to cross below that place

and advance against Count Donop's division. The attacks were to be simultaneous, and five o'clock on the morning of the twenty-sixth was the hour agreed upon.

CHAP
XXXI.

1776.

Just after sunset, on Christmas night, the division under Washington, twenty-four hundred in number, began to pass over. With this division was a train of twenty field-pieces, under the command of Colonel Knox. The river was filled with floating ice, and the weather was intensely cold. The boats were guided by Colonel Glover, and his regiment of Marblehead fishermen, the same who had guided the boats on the memorable retreat from Long Island. The night was extremely dark and tempestuous, and the floating ice and strong wind drove them out of their course again and again.

Washington had hoped to be on the march by midnight, but hour after hour passed, and it was four o'clock before the artillery was landed, and the troops ready to move on. They marched in two divisions, one led by Washington, (with whom were Generals Greene, Stirling, Mercer, and Stephen,) by a circuitous route to the north of the town, while the other, under Sullivan, with whom was Colonel John Stark, with his New Hampshire band, was to advance by a direct road along the river, to the west and south side. Sullivan was to halt at a certain point to allow time for the main division to make the circuit.

It was eight o'clock before this division reached the immediate neighborhood of Trenton; they had struggled through a terrible storm of hail and snow; it had impeded their march, but it had also aided to conceal their movements from the enemy. Washington, who had pushed on with the advance, asked of a man who was chopping wood by the road-side the way to the Hessian picket. He answered gruffly, "I don't know," and went on with his work. "You may tell," said Captain Forrest, of the artillery, "for that is General Washington." "God bless

Dec
26.

CHAP. and prosper you ! ” exclaimed the man, raising his hands
XXXI. to heaven, “ the picket is in that house, and the sentry
1776. stands near that tree.”

In a few minutes the picket-guards were driven in. Late as it was, the Hessians were completely surprised. According to their custom, they had indulged freely in the festivities of Christmas, and were resting thoughtless of danger, when the drums suddenly beat to arms. All was confusion. At the first alarm, Colonel Rahl, who learned from the lieutenant of the picket-guard that a large force was advancing to surround him, endeavored to rally his panic-stricken troops. He seems to have meditated a retreat to Princeton ; he had, in fact, passed out of the town, but the ambition of the soldier triumphed in his breast ; how could he fly before the rebels he had despised ? He rashly returned to the charge. By this time Washington had gained the main street, and opened a battery of six field-pieces, which swept it from end to end. As Rahl advanced, at the head of his grenadiers, he fell mortally wounded. At the fall of their leader his soldiers attempted to retreat, but they were intercepted by Colonel Hand, with his Pennsylvania riflemen ; and, hemmed in on all sides, they grounded their arms and surrendered at discretion.

Stark, with his detachment, had assaulted the south side of the town, and the firing in that quarter had added to the general confusion. A party of British light-horse, and five hundred Hessians stationed there “ took headlong flight, by the bridge across the Assunpink,” and thus escaped and joined Donop at Bordentown. Had Colonel Ewing been able to cross, according to the arrangement, their escape would have been prevented.

The Americans took one thousand prisoners, of whom thirty-two were officers ; of their own number, only two were killed, and two were frozen to death on the march. Several were wounded, among whom was James Monroe



James Monroe

afterward President of the United States, who was at this time a lieutenant in the army.

CHAP.
XXXI.

The attack designed by Reed and Cadwallader, like that of Colonel Ewing, was prevented by the ice, which made it impossible for them to embark their cannon. Thus the success was incomplete, and Washington at Trenton, encumbered by his prisoners, with a strong force of the enemy below him, under Count Donop, and another in his rear at Princeton, prudently resolved to recross the Delaware.

1776.

Before he left the town, he, with General Greene, visited Colonel Rahl, who survived until the evening of the day after the battle. The dying Colonel remembered his grenadiers, and during this visit he commended them to the consideration of Washington. Rahl lies buried in the grave-yard of the Presbyterian church in Trenton.

When Washington had disposed of his prisoners, and allowed his troops a little time to recruit, he resolved to return and follow up his success, before the enthusiasm it had awakened had time to cool. Meantime, he had received from Reed and Cadwallader, who had crossed on the twenty-seventh, the encouraging news that all the Hessian posts on the river were deserted; that Count Donop had retreated with all haste to Brunswick, with a portion of his forces, while the remainder had made their way to Princeton.

Dec.
27.

"A fair opportunity is now offered," writes Washington at this time, "to drive the enemy out of New Jersey," and he formed his plans accordingly. The American forces, now no longer needed to guard the Delaware, were gradually concentrating at Trenton. Parties were sent to harass the retreating enemy, and General Heath was ordered to make a demonstration from the Highlands, as if he intended to attack New York. The New England regiments, whose terms were about to expire, were induced by a bounty of ten dollars and the persuasions of their

CHAP. officers to remain six weeks longer. Men of standing and
XXXI. influence were sent abroad to rouse the militia of New
1776. Jersey to avenge the outrages inflicted upon the people
by the Hessians. Matters began to wear a brighter aspect,
and hope and enthusiasm were revived.

At this crisis, Washington received the highest mark of confidence in the gift of the people—Congress invested him with unlimited military authority for six months. The letter of the committee which conveyed to him this resolution closed with these words: "Happy is it for this country that the general of their forces can safely be intrusted with the most unlimited power, and neither personal security, liberty, nor property be in the least endangered thereby."¹

Nothing could exceed the astonishment of Howe when he learned that his Hessians, veterans in war, had fled before the militia. Cornwallis was hurried back to resume his command in the Jerseys.

Washington, anxious to ascertain the movements and designs of the enemy, sent forward Colonel Reed, who was well acquainted with the country, to reconnoitre. With Reed were six young horsemen, members of the "Philadelphia City Troop," full of fire and zeal, but who had never seen active service. No reward could induce the terror-stricken people to approach Princeton and bring them information. Nothing daunted, the party dashed on till they were in view of the top of the college building, when they observed a British dragoon passing from a barn to a farm-house. Supposing him to be a marauder, they determined to capture him, and obtain the desired information. Presently they saw another, and another. They charged at once and surrounded the house, "and twelve dragoons, well armed, with their pieces loaded, and hav-

ing the advantage of the house, surrendered to seven
 horsemen, six of whom had never seen an enemy before,
 and, almost in sight of the British army, were brought
 into the American camp at Trenton, on the same even-
 ing.”¹ The sergeant of the dragoons alone escaped. The
 information obtained from these prisoners was most im-
 portant. Cornwallis, with a body of picked troops, had
 joined Colonel Grant the day before at Princeton, and they
 were ready to march the next day upon Trenton, with a
 strong force of seven or eight thousand men.

CHAP.
 XXXI.
 1776.

In anticipation of an attack, Washington arranged
 his men, in number about six thousand, in a favorable
 position on the east bank of Assunpink creek. As the
 enemy approached, on the second of January, their ad-
 vance was harassed, and so effectually held in check, by
 forces sent forward under General Greene and Colonel
 Hand, that they did not reach Trenton till near sunset.
 The fords and bridge over the creek were carefully guarded
 and defended by the American batteries. Cornwallis made
 repeated attempts to cross, but was as often repulsed ; at
 each repulse a shout ran along the American lines. Think-
 ing that the struggle might be a desperate one, the British
 commander concluded to defer it till the next day, and
 retired with the boast that he would “bag the fox in the
 morning.” Both armies kindled their camp-fires, and
 once more they rested in sight of each other.

Jan
 2.

Never had the prospect of the Americans been so
 gloomy. The officers gathered at the quarters of General
 Mercer to hold a council of war ; to retreat was impossi-
 ble ; behind them was the Delaware, filled with floating
 ice. Who could propose an expedient that would relieve
 them from the present dilemma ? Such an expedient,
 one of the boldest and best conceived of the whole war,

CHAP. had crossed the mind of the Commander-in-chief. He
XXXI. judged that the main division of the British forces was
1777. with Cornwallis ; that Princeton and Brunswick, where
their stores were deposited, could be but imperfectly
guarded. He proposed to march by a circuitous and
obscure road, around the left flank of the enemy, to
Princeton, capture the forces there, and then push on and
seize the stores at Brunswick. The plan was accepted at
once, and the officers entered into it with alacrity. The
stores were sent down the river to Burlington, and various
stratagems were resorted to to deceive the enemy. Small
parties were left behind, some to be noisily employed in
digging trenches within hearing of their sentinels ; others
to relieve the guards and replenish the camp-fires, and
preserve all the appearance of a regular encampment ; at
daylight these were to hasten after the army.

About midnight the Americans began their silent
march. The road over which they moved was new and
rough, and at sunrise they were still three miles from
Princeton. Here they halted, and formed into two divi-
sions, one of which, under Washington, was to proceed
by a cross-cut to the town, while the other, under General
Mercer, was to gain the main road, and destroy the bridge,
when they had passed over, to prevent the approach of
Cornwallis.

Jan. Three British regiments had passed the night at
3. Princeton, and two of them were already on their march
to join the forces at Trenton. Colonel Mawhood, com-
mander of the foremost, when about two miles from the
town, caught sight of Mercer's division. Believing it a
party of Americans who had been driven from Trenton, he
sent back a messenger to Princeton to hurry on the other
regiments, that they might surround them, and cut off
their retreat. Presently Mercer espied the British, and
now both parties rushed to gain a favorable position on a
rising ground. The Americans were successful, and with

their rifles opened a severe fire upon the enemy, who returned it vigorously. Almost at the first fire Mercer's horse was shot under him, and the second officer in command fell mortally wounded. The enemy took advantage of the confusion that followed the fall of the leaders, and rushed on with the bayonet. The Americans, who were without bayonets, unable to withstand the charge, gave way. As Mercer, now on foot, endeavored to rally them, he was struck down, bayoneted, and left on the field apparently dead.

CHAP.
XXXI.
1777.

As his men retreated in confusion, a body of Pennsylvania militia, which Washington had sent to their aid, appeared in sight. Mawhood instantly checked his pursuit of the fugitives, and opened upon these fresh troops a heavy fire of artillery, which brought them to a stand.

Convinced by the continued firing that the conflict was serious, Washington spurred on in advance of his division, and just at this crisis had reached a rising ground near by, from which he witnessed the scene. He saw the scattered forces of Mercer, the hesitation of the militia; every thing was at stake. He dashed forward in the face of Mawhood's artillery, exposed both to the fire of the enemy and the random shots of his own soldiers, and waving his hat called upon the faltering and broken forces to follow him. Inspired by his voice and example, they rallied at once and returned to the charge. At this moment a Virginia regiment emerged from a neighboring wood, and with loud cheers engaged in the conflict; while the American artillery, now within range, began to shower grape-shot upon the enemy. The fight was desperate, but the field was won. Mawhood, who, a few minutes before, had felt certain of victory, now with great difficulty forced his way back to the main road, and retreated with all haste toward Trenton.

The second regiment was attacked by the brigade under St. Clair; broken and scattered, it fled across the

CHAP. fields towards New Brunswick. Alarmed at the general
XXXI. rout, a part of the third regiment fled in the same direc-
1777. tion, while another portion took refuge in the college
building. The American artillery was immediately brought
to bear upon it, and they soon surrendered.

The British loss in this battle was about one hundred slain, and three hundred prisoners, while the Americans lost but few ; among these was the brave Colonel Haslet. Mercer, who was left on the field for dead, was after the battle discovered by Colonel Armstrong, still alive, but suffering greatly from his wounds, and exposure to the cold. He was borne to a neighboring farm-house, where, after a few days, he expired. As a soldier, he was brave ; as a man of sterling merit, he was worthy the respect of his adopted countrymen, for, like Montgomery, he was of foreign birth, and like him, he has won an honorable name among the heroes of the Revolution.

Washington, eager to secure the stores so necessary for his army, pushed on some distance toward Brunswick. A little reflection convinced him that his troops, in their exhausted condition, could not reach there before they would be overtaken. They had been a night and a day without rest ; they were thinly clad, and some of them were barefoot. He stopped and held a consultation with his officers on horseback. They decided that it was injudicious to proceed. Grieved and disappointed, that they were unable to reap the advantage of their recent success, they turned their steps toward Morristown.

When morning revealed to the enemy on the banks of the Assunpink the deserted camp of the Americans, Cornwallis was greatly at a loss to divine to what covert the "fox" had fled. Soon the booming of cannon at Princeton gave him the desired information. His thoughts turned at once to the stores at Brunswick : he must save

them from the hands of his enemy. His march back to Princeton was much impeded. The Americans had not forgotten to throw obstacles in his way. He found the bridge over Stony Creek, a few miles from the town, broken down, and the party of Americans left for that purpose still in sight. Impatient of delay he urged on his soldiers, who, although the waters were breast high, dashed across the stream. Believing that Washington was in full march for Brunswick, he halted not at Princeton, but hurried on in pursuit with so much eagerness, that he did not observe that the Americans had diverged from the road.

The American army retreated to a strong position at Morristown. There the soldiers provided themselves huts, and remained until the last of May.

For six months after the battle of Princeton no enterprise of importance was undertaken by either party.

The yeomanry of New Jersey were now thoroughly roused to preserve their State from further depredations. They warmly seconded the efforts of Washington, and greatly aided the detachments from the army, who were on the alert to cut off the foraging parties of the enemy ; and so effectually did they harass them, that they scarcely ventured out of sight of their camp. Thus unable to obtain provisions for his army, Cornwallis gradually withdrew within his lines, at Brunswick and Amboy, that he might be in communication with New York by water, whence alone he could draw his supplies. Thus those who, a few weeks before, were in possession of nearly all New Jersey, were now able to retain scarcely more of her soil than was sufficient for a camp.

The success that had crowned the American arms at Trenton and Princeton cheered the hearts and revived the hopes of the patriots ; but they knew well that the enemy was checked, not conquered ; that the struggle must be renewed, and the result was still doubtful.

CHAP.
XXXI.

1777.

Washington had established his head-quarters at Morristown, while the right wing of his army, under Putnam, was stationed at Princeton, and the left was in the Highlands, under General Heath. Along this extended line, at convenient distances, were established cantonments. Though weak in numbers, the army was so judiciously posted that the enemy, deceived by its apparent strength, hesitated to attack it.

Putnam, who had with him but a few hundred men, resorted to stratagem to hide his weakness. A British officer, who lay mortally wounded at Princeton, desired the presence of a military comrade in his last moments. The kind-hearted general could not deny the request; he sent a flag to Brunswick in quest of the friend, who entered Princeton after dark. Every unoccupied house was carefully lighted, lights gleamed in all the college windows, and the Old General marched and countermarched his scanty forces to such effect, that the British soldier, on his return to the camp, reported them as at least five thousand strong.

The winter at Morristown was a season of comparative quiet, during which the Commander-in-chief was engaged in earnest efforts to improve the state of his army. The evil effects of the system of short enlistments adopted by Congress, and repeatedly protested against by Washington, were severely felt at this juncture. The terms of great numbers were about to expire, and new recruits came in but slowly. To guard against the ravages of small-pox, which at times had been fatally prevalent in the army, these were inoculated as fast as they came in.

The exchange of prisoners had become a subject of negotiation. At first the British refused to exchange on equal terms, on the plea that the Americans were rebels, but Howe, who had at this time about five thousand on his hands, opened a correspondence with Washington on the subject. Now the Americans in their turn object:

to an exchange. Their captured countrymen had been left to the tender mercies of the New York Tories, crowded into warehouses, which had been converted into prisons, or into loathsome hulks anchored in the bay ; fed with impure food, and left to languish in filth and nakedness. Thrilling tales are told of the sufferings of those confined in the sugar-house, and on board the *Jersey*, a prison-ship. More than ten thousand wretched American prisoners died during the war, and were buried without ceremony in shallow graves at Brooklyn, on Long Island. Of those who survived, scarcely one ever fully recovered from the effects of these hardships.

CHAP
XXXI.

1777.

Washington refused to recruit the British army by an exchange of well-fed and hale Hessian and British prisoners, for emaciated and diseased Americans, whose terms of enlistment had expired, and who were scarcely able, from very weakness, to return to their homes. His policy was sanctioned by Congress—a severe policy, but authorized by the necessities of the times.

To supply the want of field-officers, Congress commissioned five major-generals : Stirling, St. Clair, Mifflin, Stephen, and Lincoln. The latter we have seen as the secretary of the first Provincial Congress of Massachusetts. He was afterward the efficient commander of the militia of that State, and now he was promoted over the heads of all the brigadiers. In these appointments, Arnold, whose meritorious conduct on the battle-field, as well as his seniority as a brigadier, entitled him to promotion, was entirely overlooked. He complained bitterly of this injustice ; the wound rankled in his proud breast ; from this hour, till he found consolation in revenge, he seems to have brooded over the disrespect shown him by his countrymen.

Feb.
19.

Eighteen brigadier-generals were also commissioned, among whom were Glover, the leader of the Marblehead fishermen ; George Clinton, of New York, the sturdy

- CHAP. guardian of the Highlands, and afterward Vice-President
XXXI. Woodford and Muhlenburg, of Virginia—the latter a
1777. Lutheran clergyman, who at the commencement of hostilities had “laid aside the surplice to put on a uniform,” raised a company of soldiers, and who continued in the army till the close of the war—and Hand and Anthony Wayne, of Pennsylvania. Wayne was by nature a soldier; even in his school-days he turned the heads of his companions by telling them stories of battles and sieges, and drilled them in making and capturing mud forts. In later years he was so distinguished for his daring, that he became known in the army by the appellation of “Mad Anthony.”

An Irish adventurer named Conway, who professed to have served for thirty years in the French army, and to be thoroughly skilled in the science of war, was also commissioned. He proved, however, more famous for intrigues than for military genius or courage.

Congress also authorized the enlistment of four regiments of cavalry. The quartermaster's department was more perfectly arranged, and General Mifflin was placed at its head.

The hospital department was also reorganized, and placed under the charge of Doctor Shippen, of the Medical College at Philadelphia. His principal assistant was Doctor Craik, the friend and companion of Washington in his expeditions against Fort Du Quesne.

Doctor Rush, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and afterward celebrated in his profession, was appointed surgeon-general. The office of adjutant-general, resigned by Colonel Reed, was given to Timothy Pickering, of Massachusetts.

Nor was the navy neglected. Of the vessels authorized to be built, several frigates had been finished and equipped, but the want of funds prevented the completion of the remainder, for the Continental money began to depreciate,

and loans could not be obtained. The entire American fleet, under Admiral Hopkins, was at this time blockaded at Providence. But privateers, especially from New England, were eager in pursuit of British vessels trading to the West Indies, of which they captured nearly three hundred and fifty, whose cargoes were worth five millions of dollars. A profitable trade, principally by way of the West Indies, was also opened with France, Spain, and Holland, but it was attended by great risks, and a large number of American vessels thus engaged fell into the hands of British cruisers.

CHAP.
XXXI.
1777.

In the spring, while Washington still remained at Morristown, the British commenced a series of marauding expeditions. A strong party was sent up the Hudson to seize the military stores at Peekskill. General McDougall, finding it impossible to defend them against a force so superior, burned them, and retired with his men to the hills in the vicinity. As General Heath had been transferred to the command in Massachusetts, Washington sent Putnam to command in the Highlands.

A month later Cornwallis made an attack on a corps under General Lincoln, stationed at Boundbrook, a few miles from Brunswick. The militia, to whom the duty was intrusted, imperfectly guarded the camp. Lincoln with difficulty extricated himself, after losing a few men and some cannon.

April
18.

Presently a fleet of twenty-six sail was seen proceeding up the Sound ; anxious eyes watched it from the shore. It was the intriguing Tryon, now a major-general, in command of a body of Tories, two thousand strong, who was on his way to destroy the military stores collected at Danbury, Connecticut. He landed on the beach between Fairfield and Norwalk, on the afternoon of the twenty-fifth, and immediately commenced his march.

April

**CHAP.
XXXI.****1777.**

The alarm spread ; General Silliman, of the Connecticut militia, called out his men, and sent expresses in every direction. Arnold, who had been sent by Washington, some months before, to prepare defences at Providence, and obtain recruits, happened to be in New Haven when the express arrived with the intelligence of the inroad. He hastened with some volunteers to join General Wooster and Silliman, whose forces amounted to about six hundred militia ; and the whole company moved after the marauders.

Tryon, who had marched all night, reached Danbury on the afternoon of the twenty-sixth. He commenced at once to destroy the magazines of stores. Although the inhabitants had abandoned their homes at his approach, he permitted his soldiers to burn almost every house in the village. By morning the work of destruction was complete. The militia were approaching, and the marauders were compelled to run the gauntlet to their ships, twenty miles distant.

The Americans were separated into two divisions, one under Wooster, the other under Arnold ; while the former was to harass the enemy in the rear, the latter was to make a stand at a convenient point in advance and obstruct their progress.

The brave Wooster, though sixty-eight years of age, led forward his men with great spirit. When they, unused to war, faltered in the face of the enemy's musketry and artillery, he rode to the front and cheered them. "Come on, my boys," cried he, "never mind such random shots." At that moment a musket-ball pierced his side, and he fell from his horse mortally wounded. His soldiers now retreated in confusion.

Arnold had made a stand at Ridgefield, two miles beyond the spot where Wooster fell, and while the enemy was delayed by this skirmishing, he had thrown up a barricade or breastwork. He acted with his usual daring

out, after a spirited resistance, his little force was over-
 powered by numbers and driven back. As he was bring-
 ing off the rear-guard his horse was shot under him ;
 before he could disengage himself from the struggling ani-
 mal, a Tory rushed up with a fixed bayonet, and cried
 out, " You are my prisoner." " Not yet," replied Arnold,
 as he coolly levelled his pistol and shot him dead. He then
 escaped, rallied his men, and renewed the attack.

CHAP
XXXI.

1777.

The determined resistance of the militia retarded the
 British so much, that they were forced to encamp for the
 night. The next day they were greeted with the same
 galling fire from behind trees, fences, and houses, which
 continued until they came within range of the guns of
 their ships. They speedily embarked, fain to escape the
 rifles of the exasperated yeomanry.

April
27

General Wooster was conveyed to Danbury, where he
 died surrounded by his family. His loss was greatly de-
 plored by the patriots. A neat monument in the ceme-
 tery of that place now marks his grave.

When Congress learned of the gallant conduct of Ar-
 nold, they commissioned him a major-general, and pre-
 sented him with a horse richly caparisoned. Yet even
 this tardy acknowledgment of his military merit was
 marred,—the date of his commission still left him below
 his proper rank. He seemed to feel this second slight
 more keenly than the first.

The Americans resolved to retaliate in kind, and Colo-
 nel Return Jonathan Meigs, of Connecticut, with one
 hundred and seventy men, passed over the Sound to the
 east end of Long Island. They carried their boats, during
 the night, fifteen miles across the neck, launched them
 on the bay, passed over to Sag Harbor, and destroyed a
 great amount of provisions and forage, collected there for
 the British. In addition, they burned twelve vessels,

May
24

CHAP. took ninety prisoners, and returned without losing a man,
XXII. having passed over ninety miles in twenty-five hours.

1777. Though strenuous efforts were made to obtain recruits, the smallness of the American army still continued ; want of funds crippled every measure. At the instance of Washington, Congress declared that those redemptioners or indentured servants who enlisted in the army should, by that act, become freemen ; and bounties in land were offered the Hessians to induce them to desert.

Meanwhile General Schuyler labored with great zeal in the northern department. But his feelings were severely tried by the aspersions which his enemies cast upon his character, and conduct of affairs. In the autumn of 1776 he wrote : “ I am so sincerely tired of abuse, that I will let my enemies arrive at the completion of their wishes as soon as I shall have been tried ; and attempt to serve my injured country in some other way, where envy and detraction will have no temptation to follow me.” But Congress would not accept his resignation. During the winter he made repeated appeals to the Commander-in-chief for reinforcements and supplies, which, for want of means, could not be sent. There were but six or seven hundred men at Ticonderoga ; Carleton, he thought, might cross Lake Champlain on the ice and attack them ; if successful, he might follow out his original plan and push on to Albany. As the abuse of which Schuyler complained was continued, early in April he proceeded to Philadelphia, and demanded of Congress a committee to inquire into his conduct. Meantime General Gates had been ordered to take command at Ticonderoga.

Schuyler's patriotism was not an impulse, not a matter of mere words, nor did injustice rouse in his breast, as in that of Arnold, the dark spirit of revenge. However, the committee reported in his favor ; and, with his character and conduct fully vindicated, he returned to the charge of the Northern Department. The ambitious Gates was

deeply chagrined and disappointed ; he had flattered himself that Schuyler would never resume his command, and regarded himself as virtually his successor. Professing to be aggrieved, he hastened to Philadelphia to seek redress at the hands of Congress.

CHAP.
XXXI.

1777.

The want of a national flag was greatly felt, especially in the marine service. Congress adopted the "Union Flag," with its thirteen stripes, but displaced the "Cross of St. George," and substituted for it thirteen stars ; to which one star has since been added for each additional State.

June.

CHAPTER XXXII.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

The Struggle excites an Interest in England and France.—Baron De Kalb.—Privateers fitted out in France.—Negotiations for Munitions of War.—Howe's Manœuvres.—Burgoyne on his Way from Canada.—Ticonderoga Captured.—St. Clair's Retreat to Fort Edward.—Efforts to arrest the Progress of Burgoyne.—Capture of General Prescott.—The secret Expedition.—The British Fleet puts to sea.—The American Army at Germantown.—La Fayette.—Pulaski and Kosciuszko.—Aid sent to Schuyler.—Howe lands at Elkton.—Battle of Brandywine.—Possession taken of Philadelphia.—Battle of Germantown.—Hessians repulsed at Fort Mercer.—Winter Quarters at Valley Forge.

CHAP.
XXXII.

1777.

THE unfortunate result of the battle of Long Island ; the loss of New York and Fort Washington ; and the retreat across New Jersey, were all significant of the weakness of the patriot army. Intelligence of these disasters disheartened the friends of the cause in Europe. Edmund Burke, their firm friend, remarked that, although the Americans had accomplished wonders, yet the overpowering forces to be brought against them in the following campaign, must completely crush their hopes of Independence. Said he : " An army that is obliged, at all times, and in all situations, to decline an engagement, may delay their ruin, but can never defend their country."

The intelligent portion of the people of France were not indifferent spectators of this struggle ; it was watched with intense interest by her merchants, her manufacturers

her statesmen. From the day on which Canada was wrested from her, France had ardently hoped that her proud rival might in turn lose her own American colonies. Ten years before the commencement of hostilities, Choiseul, the enlightened statesman and prime minister of Louis XV., sent an agent through the colonies, to ascertain the feelings of the people. That agent was Baron De Kalb, the same who afterward so nobly served the cause in the American army. He was indefatigable in "collecting pamphlets, newspapers, and sermons," which he sent to his employer. Choiseul gathered from them the proofs that the British king and ministry, by their blindness and injustice, were fast alienating the good will of their colonists; and he hoped by offering them, without restriction, the commerce of France, to alienate them more and more. Thus the minds of the French people and government were prepared to afford aid, but not under the present aspect of affairs.

CHAP.
XXXII

1777.

Early in the spring, intelligence reached Europe, that the American army; which was supposed to be broken beyond recovery, had suddenly rallied, boldly attacked, and driven the invaders out of New Jersey. It was scarcely thought possible. How could a handful of ill-disciplined, ill-armed yeomanry, so destitute of clothes that some of them froze to death while on duty, and others stained the snow with the blood that flowed from their naked feet, meet and defeat a regular army? Surely, men who would thus cheerfully suffer, deserved independence! A thrill of enthusiasm was excited in their favor. They were regarded as a nation of heroes, and Washington, because of his prudence and skill, was extolled as the American Fabius.

With the connivance of the government, American privateers were secretly fitted out, and even permitted to sell their prizes in French ports, in spite of the protests

CHAP. of the British ambassador. The government itself secretly
XXXII. sent arms and military stores for the American army.

1777. This was done by means of a fictitious trading-house, known as "Hortales and Company." These supplies were to be paid for in tobacco, sent by the way of the West Indies. Soon after the battle of Lexington, secret negotiations on the subject had been entered upon in London by Beaumarchais, an agent of the French court, and Arthur Lee, who for some years had resided in that city as a barrister. The latter was a brother of Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, for which colony he had acted as agent in England. The Secret Committee of Congress, in the mean time, sent Silas Deane to Paris, as an agent to obtain supplies. Though Deane appeared in that city simply as a merchant, he became an object of suspicion, and was closely watched by British spies. Beaumarchais now made arrangements with him to send three ships laden with military stores to the United States. Unfortunately two of these ships were captured by British cruisers; the third, however, arrived opportunely to furnish some of the regiments recently enlisted at Morristown.

April.

Three months after the Declaration of Independence, Doctor Franklin was sent to join Deane in France, and thither, Lee was also directed to repair. To these commissioners Congress delegated authority to make a treaty of alliance with the French court. They were admitted to private interviews by Vergennes, Minister of Foreign Affairs, and encouraged, but the government was not yet prepared to make an open declaration of its true sentiments.

The British ministry, by means of spies, obtained information of some of these proceedings. They immediately issued letters of marque and reprisal against the Americans, while Parliament cheerfully voted supplies and men to prosecute the war.

Feb.

As the spring advanced, the enemy's movements were watched with anxious interest. That he might observe them to better advantage, Washington, on the twenty-eighth of May, removed his camp to the heights of Middlebrook, a strong and central position. Early in June, Sir William Howe, who had received large reinforcements, and supplies of tents and camp equipage, established his head-quarters at Brunswick, about ten miles distant. He commenced a series of manœuvres, and made a feint movement toward Philadelphia, in the hope of drawing Washington from the heights into the open plain, where British discipline might prevail; the latter was too cautious to be thus entrapped, and Howe, foiled in his attempt, retraced his steps to Brunswick. Presently he evacuated that place, and hastened with all speed toward Amboy. Washington sent an advance party in pursuit, but suspecting this move was also a feint, he followed slowly with the main body. The suspicion was just; Howe suddenly wheeled, and by a rapid movement endeavored to turn the Americans' left, in order to gain the passes and heights in their rear, but Washington saw his object in time to gain his stronghold. Unable to bring on an engagement, Howe in a few days withdrew his forces to Staten Island.

CHAP.
XXXII

1777.

May.

June
20.

Just before this time, important news had been received from the North. Burgoyne, who had succeeded Sir Guy Carleton, was about to advance by way of Lake Champlain, while a detachment under General St. Leger and Sir John Johnson, was to make its way by Oswego to the Mohawk river. On the very day that the British left New Jersey, further intelligence came from St. Clair that the enemy's fleet was actually approaching Ticonderoga, where he was in command.

The force under Burgoyne was not precisely known; it was, however, thought to be small, but in truth he had a finely equipped army of nearly ten thousand men, four-

CHAP. fifths of whom were regulars, British and Hessian ; the
XXXII. remainder Canadians and Indians. It was furnished with
1777. one of the finest parks of field-artillery, under the command of General Phillips, who had acquired his great reputation as an artillery officer in the wars of Germany. He was also ably supported by the second in command, General Fraser, an officer of great merit, and who was characterized as the soul of the army. The Hessians were under Baron Reidesel.

June. Near Crown Point, Burgoyne met the chiefs of the Six Nations in council, and induced four hundred of their warriors to join him. A few days later he issued a bombastic proclamation, in which he threatened to punish the patriots who would not immediately submit, and to let loose upon them the Indians.

St. Clair, who had but three thousand men, wrote to General Schuyler at Albany, that he could not defend Ticonderoga unless he had reinforcements, ending his letter by saying : " Every thing will be done that is practicable to frustrate the enemy's designs ; but what can be expected from troops ill-armed, naked, and unaccoutred ? " Still unaware of the force of the enemy, he trusted in his position, and that he could hold out for some time.

There was an abrupt hill on the edge of the narrow channel which connects Lakes Champlain and George. This hill commanded Fort Ticonderoga, and also Fort Independence, on the east side of Champlain. It was thought by St. Clair, and others, to be absolutely inaccessible for artillery. But the " wily Phillips," acting on the principle that " where a goat can go, a man may go ; and where a man can go, artillery may be drawn up," suddenly appeared on this hill-top. For three days he had been at work taking his cannon up the height, and in twenty-four hours he would be ready to " rain iron hail " on both the forts, from his Fort Defiance.

The Americans must now evacuate the forts, or be

made prisoners. St. Clair chose the former. He could only escape in the night, and his preparations must be made in the face of the enemy. The two hundred bateaux were to be laden with stores, the women, the sick and wounded, and sent up South River. St. Clair, with the main body, was to pass to Fort Independence, and with its garrison march through the woods to Skeenesborough, now Whitehall. With the greatest secrecy and speed, the arrangements were made ; the boats, concealed by the deep shadows of the mountains, were under way ; the main body had passed over the drawbridge to Independence, and was on its march, and the rear division was just leaving Ticonderoga, when suddenly, about four o'clock in the morning, the whole heavens were lighted up ; a house on mount Independence was on fire, and its light revealed the Americans in full retreat. Alarm guns and beating of drums aroused the British. General Fraser was soon in motion with his division, the abandoned forts were taken possession of, and by daylight measures concerted to pursue the fugitives both by land and water. Fraser was to pursue St. Clair with his division, and General Reidesel to follow with his Hessians, while Burgoyne himself sailed in his ships to overtake the American flotilla. On the afternoon of the next day, the flotilla reached Whitehall ; but scarcely were they landed, when the roaring of artillery told that the British gunboats had overtaken the rear-guard of galleys. Presently, fugitives from these brought intelligence that the British frigates had landed Indians, who were coming to cut off their retreat. Every thing was abandoned, and set on fire ; all took to flight toward Fort Anne, at which place, after a most harassing night-march, they arrived. The enemy appeared the same day, but were held in check by sharp skirmishing. The Americans thought this the vanguard of Burgoyne's army, and they set Fort Anne on fire, and retreated

CHAP.
XXXII

1777.

July
6.

CHAP.
XXXII.

sixteen miles further to Fort Edward, where General Schuyler had just arrived with reinforcements.

1777.

General St. Clair continued his retreat, and at night arrived at Castleton ; his rear-guard, contrary to his express orders, stopped six miles short of that place. The next morning, the guard was startled by an attack from Fraser's division, which had marched nearly all night. At the first onset a regiment of militia fled, but the regiments of Warner and Francis made a spirited resistance ; yet they were compelled to yield to superior numbers, and make the best retreat they could. St. Clair, in the mean time, pushed on through the woods ; after seven days, he appeared at Fort Edward, with his soldiers wearied and haggard from toil and exposure.

Schuyler sent at once a strong force to put obstructions in Wood Creek ; to fell trees and break down the bridges on the road from Fort Anne to Fort Edward. This being the only road across that rough and thickly wooded country, it took Burgoyne three weeks to remove these obstructions and arrive at Fort Edward. The British hailed with shouts of exultation the Hudson ; the object of their toil. It would be easy, they thought, to force their way to Albany, in which place Burgoyne boasted he would eat his Christmas dinner.

July
80.

Schuyler now retreated to Saratoga. In these reverses the loss of military stores, artillery, and ammunition was immense, and the intelligence spread consternation through the country. The American army under Schuyler consisted of only about five thousand men, the majority of whom were militia ; many were without arms, while there was a deficiency of ammunition and provisions.

Just at this time, a daring and successful adventure mortified the enemy, and afforded no little triumph to American enterprise. The commanding officer at Newport, General Prescott, famous for the arbitrary and con

temptuous manner in which he treated the "rebels," offered a reward for the capture of Arnold, who replied to the insult by offering half the sum for the capture of Prescott. It was ascertained, by means of spies, that the latter was lodging at a certain house in the outskirts of the town. On a dark night a company of select men, with Colonel Barton at their head, crossed Narraganset Bay, in whale-boats, threading their way through the British fleet. They secured the sentinel at the door, burst into the house, and seized Prescott, who was in bed. The astonished General only asked if he might put on his clothes. "Very few and very quick," replied Barton. He returned with his prisoner across the bay without being discovered. This was a counterpart to the capture of Lee, for whom Prescott was afterward exchanged.

CHAP.
XXXII

1777

July
13.

The uncertainty as to the designs of the enemy was perplexing. Washington learned from spies in New York that Howe was preparing for an expedition by water, but its destination was a profound secret. Burgoyne was evidently pressing on toward the South, to obtain possession of the Hudson. Did Howe intend to move up that river to co-operate with him, and thus cut off the communication between New England and the other States; to make an attack on Boston, and thus employ the militia of those States at home, and prevent their joining Schuyler, or to endeavor to reach Philadelphia by water? were questions difficult to answer. In the midst of these speculations as to its destination, the British fleet, on board of which were about eighteen thousand men, under the command of Howe, passed out through the Narrows, and bore away. Intelligence came in the course of ten days that it was seen off Cape May, and Washington moved the army across the Delaware to Germantown, a few miles from Philadelphia.

July
30.

Presently it was ascertained that the fleet had sailed to the eastward. Was it to return to New York, or had

CHAP. it sailed for Boston ? Till the designs of the enemy were
XXXII. more definitely known, the army was held in readiness to
1777. march at a moment's notice.

While waiting for time to unravel these mysterious movements of Sir William, Washington visited Philadelphia to consult with Congress, and to give directions for the further construction of fortifications on the Delaware, to prevent the enemy from ascending to the city. Some months before, Arnold, after refusing the command in the Highlands, offered him by Washington to soothe his wounded feelings, had accepted that in Philadelphia, and with the aid of General Mifflin, had already partially constructed defences.

The Duke of Gloucester, the brother of the king of England, at a dinner given him by French officers in the town of Mentz, had told the story, and the cause of the rebellion then going on in America. A youth of nineteen belonging to one of the noble families of France was a listener. For the first time, he heard of the Declaration of Independence, and the full particulars of the struggle for liberty then in progress in the colonies beyond the Atlantic. His generous sympathies were enlisted ; he could appreciate the nobleness of their cause, and his soul was fired with the desire to fly to their aid. Though happily married, and blest with wealth, high social position, and domestic joys, he was willing to leave them all, and risk his life in the cause of freedom. This young man was the Marquis De Lafayette.

Though the French government was not prepared to take a decided stand, while the issue seemed doubtful, yet this consideration, instead of checking, inflamed his ardor. " Now I see a chance for usefulness, which I had not anticipated. I have money ; I will purchase a ship, which will convey to America myself, my companions, and the freight for Congress." Such were his words ; and he se-



Lafayette

cretly purchased a vessel, which Deane loaded with military stores, and accompanied by eleven officers, among whom was the Baron De Kalb, he sailed directly for the United States. He landed on the coast of South Carolina, and proceeded at once to Philadelphia, to have an interview with Congress. The number of foreign officers who were applicants for employment in the army was so great, that Congress found difficulty in disposing of them. Deane had been authorized to engage a few competent officers, but he seems to have accepted all who applied ; and many came as adventurers, and “ even some who brought high recommendations, were remarkable for nothing but extravagant self-conceit, and boundless demands for rank, command, and pay.”¹

CHAP
XXXII

1777.

But the earnest disinterestedness of Lafayette captivated all hearts. Though he offered to serve as a volunteer without pay, Congress commissioned him a major-general, but without any special command. A few days after this Washington and Lafayette met—names to be ever linked in the annals of freedom. Congress also accepted the services of Count Pulaski, already famous for his patriotic defence of his native Poland. His fellow-countryman, Thaddeus Kosciuszko—a youth of twenty-one—afterward equally celebrated in fighting, though unsuccessfully, for the liberties of the same Poland, was already with General Schuyler, acting in the capacity of engineer.

Aug
8.

It was now ascertained that Sir Henry Clinton, whom Howe had left in command in New York, had a force sufficient, not merely to penetrate up the Hudson and co-operate with Burgoyne, but to send detachments and create a diversion in favor of Howe in the vicinity of Philadelphia.

Just at this time came urgent appeals from Schuyler,

¹ Hildreth, vol. iii. p. 194.

CHAP. and Washington detached to his aid two brigades from
XXXII. the Highlands, and soon after Colonel Morgan with his
1777. riflemen, to counteract the Indians, of whom the militia
had a great dread. He had already sent Arnold, who
would be of special service in that region—the scene of
some of his brilliant exploits. Now he directed General
Lincoln, who was in Massachusetts, to repair thither with a
portion of the militia of that State, and sent an express to
Putnam to hold himself in readiness to repel any attack
from Clinton, and prevent his forming a junction with Bur-
goyne. We will now leave the affairs in the North till we
have disposed of those connected with Howe's expedition.

In the midst of uncertainty, Washington was about to
issue orders for the army at Germantown to move toward
New York, when an express brought him the intelligence
that the British fleet had passed into the Chesapeake.
The mystery was easily explained. Howe had learned of
the obstructions in the Delaware, and he now designed to
land his troops at the head of the Chesapeake, and march
thence to Philadelphia, while the fleet should return, and
in concert with the land forces, reduce the forts on the
Delaware. After being delayed some weeks by adverse
winds, his army was now landed at Elkton, about sixty
miles from Philadelphia. His first demonstration was to
issue another of his famous proclamations ; again he offered
pardon to those rebels who would submit, and promised
protection to those persons who would remain peaceably
at home.

Aug.
25.

The main body of the American army was still at
Germantown, where the militia, that had been called out,
had assembled. Washington was sadly deficient in men
and means to meet the British in open conflict ; and there
were no hills in the region, which he could occupy. He
had only eleven thousand effective men ; there was none
of that enthusiasm which was then bringing the militia in

thousands to repel Burgoyne. The Quakers of Delaware and Pennsylvania were at best but lukewarm in the cause, while the Germans wished to be neutral, and to avoid the expense. CHAP.
XXXII
1777.

Washington concentrated his army in the vicinity of Wilmington, but after examining the country resolved to fall back beyond the Brandywine creek, which was everywhere fordable. The main road to Philadelphia crossed the creek at Chadd's Ford. This, it was thought, would be the main point of attack. A hill overlooking the ford had been intrenched, and there Wayne was stationed with the artillery. The right wing was commanded by Sullivan, who had just arrived with three thousand men from Jersey ; his division extended two miles up the creek. The left wing, under General Armstrong—the same who destroyed the Indian town of Kittaning—extended a mile below ; while General Greene, with the reserve, was stationed in the rear of the centre on the hills.

In the morning, the enemy, in heavy column, was descried moving toward Chadd's Ford. This division could be only partially seen, because of intervening woods, but it appeared to be the main body of the enemy. Skirmishing soon commenced between the riflemen and the enemy, who made several attempts to cross the ford, but were as often repulsed. Sept
11.

Near mid-day a note from Sullivan stated he had heard that Howe, with a large body of troops, was passing up another road, with the intention of reaching the upper fords of the creek, and then turning the right flank of the Americans. Washington sent a company to reconnoitre. In the mean time, he determined to throw his entire force on the enemy immediately in his front, and rout them before they could obtain assistance from the division marching the other road ; his orders were given for both wings to co-operate. This would have been a skilful move, and,

CHAP. in all probability, have secured the defeat of Knyphausen
XXXII. who, with his Hessians, was in front.

1777. At the moment Sullivan was complying with the order, unfortunately Major Spicer came from the upper fords, and reported that there was no enemy in that quarter. This information was transmitted to the Commander-in-chief, who, in consequence, countermanded the former order, till he could receive further information. After waiting some time, a patriot of the neighborhood, with his horse in a foam, dashed into the presence of Washington, and declared that Howe was really passing the fords, and rapidly gaining the rear of the American army. Washington replied, that he had just heard there was no enemy in that quarter. "You are mistaken, general," exclaimed the excited countryman; "my life for it, you are mistaken." And tracing the course of the roads in the sand, he showed him the position. All doubts were removed in a few minutes, by the return of the party sent to reconnoitre with intelligence that a large body of the enemy was fast gaining their rear.

Lord Cornwallis, led by Tory guides, had marched a circuit of seventeen miles, and Knyphausen was merely waiting at Chadd's Ford for that circuit to be accomplished.

Sullivan was ordered to oppose Cornwallis, and Greene, with the reserve, to give aid where it might be needed. Sullivan made a vigorous resistance, but was forced to fall back to a piece of woods, in which the British became entangled. The Americans rallied on a hill, and there made a still firmer resistance, but were at length compelled to fall back. Greene was now ordered to move to their support, which he did with such rapidity, that his men marched, or rather ran, five miles in less than an hour. Such was the skilful disposition of his soldiers, that they not only checked the enemy, but opened their ranks and let the retreating Americans pass through. This

brave conduct of the reserve saved Wayne's division from a complete rout. He had stubbornly withstood the Hessians at the Ford, but when he saw the forces under Sullivan retreating, unable to cope with half the British army, he gradually, and in order, fell back. The Hessians were not disposed to press upon their determined foe. Thus ended the battle of Brandywine. The Americans were driven from the field, but the soldiers were not aware that they had suffered a defeat ; they thought they had received only a check. Though some of the militia gave way at once, the great majority fought bravely, met the enemy in deadly conflict with the bayonet, and forced them back ; but, at last, numbers prevailed.

Lafayette behaved with great bravery and prudence ; he had leaped from his horse to rally the troops, when he was severely wounded in the leg. Count Pulaski also distinguished himself greatly—riding up within pistol-shot of the enemy to reconnoitre. Congress promoted him to the rank of brigadier-general, and gave him the command of the horse.

Sir William Howe loved repose, and he did not press his advantage, but remained two days encamped near the field of battle.

During this time, the Americans retreated, first to Chester, and on the twelfth safely crossed the Schuylkill, and thence proceeded to Germantown ; there Washington let them repose a day or two. They were in good spirits, he prepared to meet the enemy again, and with this intention crossed the river. About twenty-five miles from Philadelphia the two armies met, but a furious storm prevented a conflict. The rain so much injured the arms and ammunition that Washington deemed it prudent once more to recross the river, and retire to Pott's Grove, about thirty miles from Philadelphia. General Wayne was detached, in the meanwhile, with fifteen hundred men, to secretly gain the rear of the British army, and cut off their

CHAP.
XXXII.

1777.

Sept.
20.

baggage ; but a Tory carried information of the enterprise, and Wayne himself was surprised, and after the loss of three hundred men forced to retreat.

When it seemed certain that the city must fall into the hands of the British, the military stores were removed, and a contribution levied upon the inhabitants for blankets, clothes, shoes, and other necessaries for the army during the approaching winter.

It was a time of great danger, and Congress again clothed Washington with absolute power, first for sixty days, and soon after for double that period. This done, that body adjourned, first to Lancaster, and then in a few days to York, beyond the Susquehanna.

Sept.
22.

Howe, by a night march, was enabled to pass the Schuylkill ; he then pushed on a detachment which took possession of Philadelphia, while the main body of his army halted at Germantown.

Though the city was in the hands of the enemy, the Americans still held possession of the forts on the lower Delaware.

With much exertion, Admiral Howe had brought the fleet round from the Chesapeake, and anchored it below the forts. Fort Mifflin was situated on a low mud island, at the confluence of the Schuylkill and the Delaware. Directly opposite, at Red Bank, on the Jersey shore, was Fort Mercer. These were furnished with heavy cannon. Heavy timbers framed together, with beams projecting, and armed with iron spikes, were sunk in the river by means of weights ; in addition to these obstructions, were floating batteries above.

Washington having learned, from intercepted letters, that a detachment had left Germantown to aid the fleet in an attack on these forts, resolved to surprise the remainder. After a night's march of fourteen miles, he entered Germantown at sunrise. A dense fog concealed

the outskirts of the town, and he was unable to learn the precise position of the enemy, or that of his own troops. The British, taken by surprise and thrown into confusion, gave way on all sides. The Americans, instead of pursuing their advantage, lingered to attack a strong stone house, in which a few of the enemy had taken refuge, when an unaccountable panic seized them: the complete victory within their grasp was lost. The enemy now rallied and attacked in their turn; but the Americans retreated without loss, and carried off all their cannon and their wounded.

CHAP.
XXXII

1777.

Oct
4.

Washington, in writing to Congress, says: "Every account confirms the opinion I at first entertained, that our troops retreated at the instant when victory was declaring herself in our favor." And such is the testimony of many officers in their letters to their friends.

The effect of the bold attack upon Germantown was soon perceptible, in the spirit of the Americans. One writes: "Though we gave away a complete victory, we have learnt this valuable truth, that we are able to beat them by vigorous exertions, and that we are far superior in point of swiftness; we are in high spirits." Again we find expressions of confidence of a different character. An officer writes: "For my own part, I am so fully convinced of the justice of the cause in which we are contending, and that Providence, in its own good time, will succeed and bless it, that were I to see twelve of the United States overrun by our cruel invaders, I should still believe the thirteenth would not only save itself, but also work out the deliverance of the others."

Howe immediately withdrew his troops from Germantown. He must either obtain possession of the forts, that his fleet might come up, or evacuate the city for want of provisions. The Americans, on the other hand, resolved to defend the forts to the last extremity. Howe sent Count Donop, with twelve hundred picked men, grena-

CHAP.
XXXII.1777.
Oct.
22.

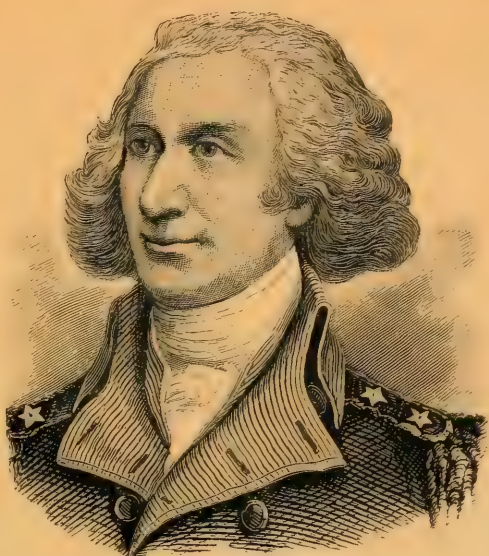
diers, to make an assault on Fort Mercer, while the men-of-war should open on Fort Mifflin and the floating batteries. The outworks of Fort Mercer were not fully completed, when Count Donop suddenly appeared. Colonel Christopher Greene ordered the men—four hundred Rhode Island Continentals—to keep out of sight as much as possible. To deceive the enemy, he made a short stand at the outer works, and then retreated rapidly to the inner redoubt. The enemy advanced in two columns; the Americans received them with a brisk fire, and then retreated in haste. The Hessians thought the day their own, and with shouts of triumph rushed to storm the inner redoubt. They were met by an overwhelming discharge of grape-shot and musketry, and completely repulsed, with the loss of four hundred men; the Americans lost but eight slain and twenty-nine wounded. After the battle, as an American officer was passing among the slain, a voice called out: "Whoever you are, draw me hence." It was Count Donop. A few days afterward, when he felt his end approaching, he lamented his condition. "I die," said he, "the victim of my ambition, and of the avarice of my sovereign."

Fort Mifflin was commanded by Colonel Samuel Smith, of Maryland. In their attack upon it, the British lost two men-of-war—one of which was blown up, the other burned.

Meantime the enemy received reinforcements from New York, and were able to take possession of another island, on which they erected batteries, and opened an incessant fire upon Fort Mifflin. After a most undaunted defence, both forts were abandoned, and the enemy left to remove the obstructions in the river at their leisure.

Nov
16.

On the twenty-ninth, Washington retired to White Marsh, fourteen miles from Philadelphia. Before going into winter-quarters, Howe thought to surprise his camp. A Quaker lady, Mrs. Darrah, overheard some British



Ph. Schuyler

officers speaking of the intended expedition ; she immediately gave Washington information of what was going on. Preparations were made to give the British a warm reception. A company was sent to harass them on their night-march. Finding themselves discovered, they hesitated to press on. The next day, Howe labored to draw Washington into the plain, where British discipline might be successful. When he saw the effort was useless, he retired to Philadelphia.

CHAP.
XXXII
1777.

Dec.
5.

Congress now summoned the militia to repair to the main army. A few days after Howe's withdrawal from Germantown, Washington also retired to winter-quarters at Valley Forge, a rugged hollow on the Schuylkill, about twenty miles from Philadelphia. He could thus protect the Congress at York, as well as his stores at Reading.

We now turn to relate events—most important in their influence—which, during the last few months, had transpired in the North.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

The Invasion from Canada.—Appointment of General Gates.—Burgoyne's Advance.—Jenny McCrea.—St. Leger besieges Fort Stanwix.—The Attempt to relieve it.—St. Leger retreats.—Battle of Bennington.—Change of Prospects.—Battle of Behm's Heights.—Ticonderoga besieged.—Burgoyne surrenders his Army at Saratoga.—The Prisoners.—Capture of Forts on the Hudson.—Schuyler.

**CHAP.
XXXIII.**

1777.

THE unlooked for loss of Ticonderoga, with the disasters that so rapidly followed, startled the people of the northern States more than any event of the war. So little did Congress appreciate the difficulties under which Schuyler and his officers labored, that they attributed these misfortunes to their incapacity. John Adams, then President of the Board of War, gave expression to this feeling when he wrote : " We shall never be able to defend a post till we shoot a general." In the excitement of the moment, Congress ordered all the northern generals to be recalled, and an inquiry instituted into their conduct. The northern army would thus be without officers ; but, on a representation to this effect, Washington obtained a suspension of the injudicious order. Clamors against Schuyler were renewed with greater violence than ever. In truth, many members of Congress were influenced by an unreasonable prejudice, which had been excited in New England against him. When Washington, whose confidence in Schuyler was unshaken, declined to make any

change in the Northern Department, "Congress made the nomination ; the Eastern influence prevailed, and Gates received the appointment, so long the object of his aspirations, if not intrigues." ¹

CHAP.
XXXIII
1777.

The correspondence between Washington and Schuyler makes known the plan upon which they agreed to repel the invaders. This was to keep bodies of men on their flank and rear, intercept their supplies, and cut off the detachments sent from the main army. We shall see how completely this plan succeeded.

Confident of subduing the "rebels," Burgoyne, on his arrival at Fort Edward, issued a second proclamation, in which he called upon the people to appoint deputies to meet in convention at Castleton, and take measures to re-establish the royal authority. To counteract this, Schuyler issued a proclamation, threatening to punish those as traitors who in this manner should aid the enemy. Burgoyne's proclamation had no effect ; the hardy yeomanry were too patriotic. The whole northern portion of the country was deeply moved, and the militia rallied to arms.

The Indians of Burgoyne's army prowled about the country, murdering and scalping. A beautiful girl, Jenny McCreia, the daughter of a Scotch Presbyterian clergyman, of New Jersey, who died before the war, was visiting a friend in the vicinity of Fort Edward. Her family were Whigs ; she was, however, betrothed to a young man, David Jones, a Tory, who had gone to Canada some time before, and was now a lieutenant in Burgoyne's army. When Fort Edward was about to be abandoned, her brother urged her to leave with the families of the neighborhood, who were going out of danger to Albany. She lingered ; she hoped, perhaps, to see her lover, but as

¹ Washington Irving.

CHAP. danger drew nearer she prepared to comply with her
XXXIII. brother's request.

1777. At the moment of leaving, a band of Indians, sent by Burgoyne to harass the Americans, burst into the house, and carried her off a captive. Anxious for her safety, she promised her captors a reward, if they would take her to the British camp. On the way, the Indians quarrelled as to who should have the promised reward, and one of them in a rage killed the poor girl, and carried off her scalp. This murder sent a thrill of horror throughout the land. The people remembered the murders of former days, when the Indians were urged on by French influence ; and now they asked, Must those scenes be re-enacted by the savage hirelings of England, our mother country? And they flocked in thousands to repel such an enemy. Thus "the blood of this unfortunate girl was not shed in vain. Armies sprang up from it. Her name passed as a note of alarm along the banks of the Hudson ; it was a rallying-word among the green mountains of Vermont, and brought down all her hardy yeomanry." ¹

Ang. St. Leger had passed up the Oswego, and was besieging Fort Stanwix, or Schuyler. This fort was on the
8. Mohawk, at the carrying-place to Lake Oneida. With St. Leger was Sir John Johnson, with his Royal Greens, and his savage retainers, the Mohawks, under the celebrated chief, Brant. This Brant had been a pupil in Wheelock's school—since Dartmouth College—established for the education of Indians and others. The fort was held by two New York regiments, under Colonels Gansevoort and Willet. General Herkimer raised the militia of the neighborhood, and went to relieve the fort. But owing to the impatience of his men, he fell into an ambuscade of Tories and Indians. Johnson's Greens were Tories from this vicinity, and neighbor met neighbor in deadly

conflict. It was one of the most desperate encounters of the war ; quarter was neither given nor asked. There were instances, when all was over, where the death-grasp still held the knife plunged into a neighbor's heart. It seems as if the fight had been presided over by demons. The brave old Herkimer was mortally wounded, but leaning against a tree, he continued to encourage his men, till a successful sortie from the fort compelled the enemy to defend their own camp. The Americans retreated, taking with them their worthy commander, who died a few days after.

CHAP.
XXXIII
1777.

The fort was still in a precarious condition, and must be relieved. When intelligence of this came to the army, Arnold volunteered to march to its aid. To frighten the Indians he employed stratagem. He sent in advance the most exaggerated stories of the number of his men, and proclaimed that Burgoyne had been totally defeated. As anticipated, the Indians deserted in great numbers. The panic became so great, that two days before Arnold arrived at the fort, St. Leger had retreated, leaving his tents standing.

Aug
22.

General Schuyler now moved from Saratoga down to the mouth of the Mohawk, and there intrenched himself. The British had the full command of Lake George ; but, with all their exertions, they were nearly out of provisions. The distance from the upper end of that lake to the Hudson was only eighteen miles, but so effectively had the draft-cattle and horses been removed, that it seemed almost impossible to transport their baggage.

To obtain horses for a company of dismounted German dragoons, and seize stores collected at Bennington, Vermont, Burgoyne sent a detachment of Indians and Tories, and five hundred Germans, under Lieutenant-colonel Baum. He had been told that the grain and provisions deposited in that place were but poorly guarded. He was

CHAP. also made to believe that five to one of the people were
XXXIII. royalists.

1777. It was soon noised abroad that the enemy were on the way, and the Green Mountain Boys began to assemble. Colonel Stark having been slighted, as he thought, at the recent appointment of officers by Congress, had withdrawn from the Continental army. He was invited to take command of the assembling yeomanry ; he accepted the invitation with joy. Expresses were sent in every direction to warn the people to drive off their cattle and horses, and conceal their grain and wagons, and also to Manchester, for Seth Warner to hasten to Bennington with his regiment.

Aug. When Baum—who moved very slowly, his men stop-
14. ping in the woods every few minutes to dress their lines—was within six miles of Bennington, he heard of Stark's approach ; he halted, began to intrench, and sent to Burgoyne for reinforcements. Colonel Breyman was sent to his aid, with five hundred Hessians and two field-pieces. A severe storm prevented Stark from making an attack, and also retarded the march of Breyman and Warner. During the night the Berkshire militia joined Stark. An incident may show the spirit of the times : “ Among these militia was a belligerent parson, full of fight, Allen by name, possibly of the bellicose family of the hero of Ticonderoga.”¹ “ General,” cried he, “ the people of Berkshire have been often called out to no purpose ; if you don't give them a chance to fight now they will never turn out again.” “ You would not turn out now, while it is dark and raining, would you ? ” demanded Stark. “ Not just now,” was the reply. “ Well, if the Lord should once more give us sunshine, and I don't give you fighting enough,” rejoined the veteran, “ I'll never ask you to turn out again.”

¹ Irving.

The next morning the sun did shine, and Stark drew out his forces. When he came in sight of the enemy, turning to his men he exclaimed : "There are the red-coats ! We must beat to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow." The attack was made in both rear and front at the same time. The Indians and Tories generally fled to the woods. Baum defended his lines with great determination, and his field-pieces were well manned, but after two hours' fighting, the works were stormed. The Americans had no artillery, but they rushed up within a few yards of the enemy's cannon, the better to take aim at the gunners. At length Baum fell mortally wounded, and his men surrendered.

Scarcely was the battle ended, when Breyman appeared on the one side, and Warner, who had marched all night in the rain, on the other. The fighting was renewed, and continued till night. Favored by the darkness, Breyman left his artillery and made the best of his way back to Burgoyne. About two hundred of the enemy were slain, and six hundred taken prisoners. A thousand stand of arms and four pieces of artillery fell into the hands of the Americans, who had but fourteen killed and forty wounded.

What a change a few weeks had produced in the prospects of the two main armies ! To the American, the militia were flocking, the brigades from the Highlands had arrived, and Morgan with that terror of the Indians, his riflemen, five hundred strong. Disasters, in the mean while, crowded upon Burgoyne. The side enterprises of St. Leger and Baum had failed ; the New Hampshire and Massachusetts troops were pressing on toward Ticonderoga to cut off his supplies and intercourse with Canada. The Indians, in great numbers, were deserting. They had taken umbrage because their atrocities were to be hereafter restrained. Burgoyne was a gentleman, humane and cultivated ; he abhorred these outrages, and, to his honor be it said, preferred that the savages should leave his army,

CHAP.
XXXIII1777.
Aug.
16.

CHAP. rather than they should remain and be unrestrained. The
XXXIII. disgrace of employing them belongs to his government at
1777. home, not to him.

Sept. It was at this juncture that Gates arrived to take command. He found the army in high spirits, nearly six thousand in number, and increasing every day. Schuyler met him with his usual highminded courtesy, explained fully the condition of the two armies, and offered him all the assistance he could give, by his counsel or otherwise. So little could Gates appreciate such generous impulses, that, a few days after, when he called his first council of war, he omitted to invite Schuyler.

Leaving the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk, Gates moved up the river and took position on Behmus's Heights—a ridge of hills extending close to the river-bank and lying nearly east of Saratoga. There he intrenched his army by strong batteries on the right and left.

Burgoyne had thrown a bridge of boats over the Hudson, and led over the English portion of his army to Saratoga, while the Hessians remained on the eastern side. Both divisions moved slowly down the river. There were deep ravines and woods between the two armies, and knolls covered with dense forests; also, in one place, a cleared field. On the nineteenth it was announced that the enemy were in motion toward the American left. Here Arnold commanded, while Gates took charge of the right. It was the intention of the British to draw the Americans in that direction, and then to make an assault on their centre, when thus weakened, and cut their way through to Albany. Gates designed to wait the attack in his camp, but Arnold wished to hold the enemy in check, and not permit them to turn the American left. After much solicitation, he obtained permission from Gates to send Morgan with his riflemen to check the enemy. The riflemen soon met, and put to flight the advance-guard, but pursuing them with too much ardor they came upon a

strong column, and were themselves forced to fall back in confusion. Arnold now came to their aid with other regiments, and soon he was contending almost hand to hand with the entire British right wing. He sent repeatedly to Gates for reinforcements, which the latter refused to send, and excused himself on the ground that he would thus weaken his own wing ; and Arnold, with only three thousand men, was left for four hours to sustain the attack. The severest conflict was around, and in the open field. The Americans were posted on the one side in a dense wood, where cannon could not be used ; the British on the opposite side in a thin pine grove, where they could use their artillery. When the British would move into the field, the American riflemen would drive them back, and when the Americans became the pursuers, the British would sweep their ranks with their cannon. A dozen times this field was lost and won. The riflemen repeatedly took possession of the British artillery, but the roughness of the ground would not permit them to secure the guns ; and before they could turn them, they themselves were driven off at the point of the bayonet. Night ended the contest ; the Americans withdrew to their camp, and the British remained on the field of battle. The latter lost more than five hundred, while the Americans lost less than three hundred. They looked upon the result as a triumph ; they had accomplished all they intended, and the enemy had failed in their designs.

Two days before the battle of Behmus's Heights, a detachment of Lincoln's militia, under Colonel Brown, had seized the posts at the outlet of Lake George ; also a fleet of bateaux laden with provisions for Burgoyne's army, and three hundred prisoners. The same party united with another, and laid siege to Ticonderoga.

Burgoyne's intercourse with Canada was thus cut off ; his provisions were fast diminishing, and his horses were dying for want of forage. At this moment of darkness

**CHAP
XXXIII**

1777.

came a gleam of light—a note from Sir Henry Clinton—informing him that in a few days he would make an effort to ascend the Hudson. In hopes of maintaining his position until Clinton could relieve him, Burgoyne began to fortify his camp. For nearly three weeks the two armies watched each other. Almost every day advanced parties skirmished, but as Gates was deficient in ammunition, he hesitated to attack.

Meantime there was trouble in the American camp. The soldiers attributed the success of the late battle to generalship of Arnold. But for some reason, jealousy perhaps, Gates removed him from his command.

Oct
7.

Hearing nothing further from Clinton, Burgoyne resolved to risk a battle, and cut his way through the opposing force. He therefore sent a detachment of fifteen hundred picked men to take position within a mile of the American lines. A New Hampshire brigade attacked this division furiously, and Morgan, with his riflemen, managed to cut them off from their camp.

Arnold was in his tent, brooding over the treatment he had received, and had almost resolved to leave the army. Suddenly he heard the noise of battle; his ruling passion was instantly on fire. Mounting his horse, he rode with all speed to the scene of conflict. Gates, who saw him as he dashed away, exclaimed: "He will do some rash thing," and sent after him orders, by Major Wilkinson, to return; but in vain,—Arnold heard only the roar of battle. He rushed into the thickest of the fight, cheered on the men, who answered him with shouts of recognition. To those looking on, he seemed insane. By his exertions the British lines were broken again and again, but as often General Frazer would rally his men and renew the conflict. Presently Frazer fell mortally wounded by one of Morgan's riflemen. The whole line gave way, abandoned their cannon, and with the greatest effort regained their camp. In

spite of a shower of grape and musketry, the Americans rushed headlong to the assault. Arnold rode directly into a sally-port, where his horse was shot under him, and he himself was severely wounded—a ball had shattered his leg. His men now fell back. A regiment of Massachusetts men, more fortunate, forced their way through the German intrenchments, and maintained their position for the night, and secured a large amount of ammunition.

CHAP.
XXXIII
1777.

The Americans slept on their arms, intending to renew the contest in the morning. But when morning came, Burgoyne's army, drawn up in order of battle, appeared on the heights in the rear. During the night, he had abandoned his sick and wounded, and skilfully led off his men. The next day he retreated to Saratoga, six miles distant. It was to cover this retreat that he ordered General Schuyler's mansion and extensive saw mills to be burned. That he might continue his retreat, he sent a party to repair the bridges toward Fort Edward, but they found the way occupied by the Americans, who had taken nearly all the boats laden with provisions for his army. All the passes by which he could extricate himself were in the hands of his enemy; cannon-balls and bullets fell almost every moment in his camp. He had only three days' provisions; his effective force was reduced to four thousand men, and they were dispirited, worn out with hunger and fatigue. Not a word had he heard from Clinton, while the American army, already twelve thousand strong, was increasing daily.

Burgoyne now called a council of war, which resolved to open negotiations with General Gates. Having heard that Clinton, a few days previous, had succeeded in taking two of the forts on the Hudson, and that he might possibly reach Albany, Gates was disposed to make liberal terms. The conditions of the surrender were: That the British army should march out with the honors of war; that the soldiers should be taken to Boston, and thence

Oct
13.

CHAP.
XXXIII.

1777.

to England ; and they were not to serve against the United States until exchanged. The number of prisoners was about six thousand ; the arms, artillery, and military stores were immense. The German regiments saved their colors ; they took them off their staves, and concealed them among the baggage of the Baroness de Riedesel.¹ The British garrison of Ticonderoga evacuated that place and retired to Canada.

Congress refused to ratify the terms under which Burgoyne surrendered. His soldiers, if taken to England, would doubtless be placed in garrison, while those thus relieved would be sent to reinforce Clinton at New York. Only Burgoyne himself, with two attendants, was permitted to proceed to England, while the soldiers were retained as prisoners. The following year they were marched to Charlottesville, in Virginia, where they were quartered in log huts, and where the greater number of them remained till the close of the war.

As has been already stated, the garrisons in the Highlands were much weakened, by sending detachments both to the North and to the South. Sir Henry Clinton had received the long expected reinforcements from England, and he now proposed to force his way up the Hudson, in order to unite with Burgoyne. On the day before that general's last battle, Clinton attacked and captured the Forts Montgomery and Clinton. Though the New York militia turned out well, the forts could not be maintained. Governor George Clinton commanded. He sent to Putnam for aid, which he would have received had not the messenger turned traitor, and deserted to the enemy. Under the directions of Governor Tryon, Kingston, or Esopus, was burned. When these marauders heard that

Oct.
6.

¹ This lady accompanied her husband, Baron de Riedesel, during this campaign. She has left a thrilling narrative of the trying scenes at Saratoga.

Burgoyne had surrendered, they retreated, setting fire to every house within reach. This was about the very time that Burgoyne and his army were receiving liberal terms of capitulation. CHAP.
XXXIII
1777.

General Gates, in transmitting his report of the surrender, did not send it to the Commander-in-chief, as was his duty, and as courtesy required, but sent it directly to Congress. The soldiers in the army attributed the success of the battles at Saratoga to the skilful management of Arnold and Morgan. Gates did not even mention their names in his full dispatches to Congress.

Soon after, General Schuyler insisted that his management of the Northern Department, previous to the appointment of Gates, should be investigated.

A Court of Inquiry was instituted, and he was not only acquitted of the charge of mismanagement of any kind, but with the highest honor. Though strongly urged by Congress to remain in the army, he declined. He had too much self-respect to continue in a position where he could be made a victim of unfriendly prejudice, yet too patriotic to relinquish his country's cause. Soon after he took his seat as a member of Congress.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

Sufferings at Valley Forge.—England disappointed; conciliatory measures of Parliament.—The War presses hard upon the American People.—Difficulties and Jealousies in Congress.—The “Conway Cabal.”—Baron Steuben.—Attempt to increase the Army.—Congress in Want of Funds.—Exchange of Lee; his Treason.—Treaty with France.—Encouragements.—British Commissioners.—Philadelphia evacuated.—Battle of Monmouth.—Misconduct of Lee.—The French Fleet.—Combined attack upon Newport fails.—Marauding Expeditions.—A British Fleet.—Massacre at Wyoming and Cherry Valley.—Invasion of Georgia.

CHAP. XXXIV. **THE** surrender of Burgoyne revived the hopes of the Whigs, and sent dismay into the ranks of the Tories.
1778. The American soldiers suffered intensely in their rude huts at Valley Forge. For days at a time without meat, and again without bread; no medicines for the sick, nor comfortable lodgings. Many of the soldiers were so deficient in clothes that they could not lie down, lest they should freeze to death, but were forced to sit round their camp-fires.

These were the men, few of whose names have ever reached us, but who clung to their country's cause in this hour of suffering, and who, in the day of battle, poured out their life's blood. They were, for the most part, the intelligent yeomanry of the land; from the farm, from the workshop, from the merchant's store; supporters of their own families, or sustainers of orphan brothers and sisters. What a contrast with the common soldiers of the invading

army ! They were, in part, the enlisted rabble of the British Isles. In their bosoms there was not a throb of generous feeling, nor with them was it a question in what cause, or on what field they fought ; and yet in the same army were others, even more degraded, drawn from " the shambles of petty German despots."

CHAP.
XXXIV

1778

The king and ministry were sanguine their plans, so wisely laid, would be successfully carried out ; that at the end of the campaign the American army would be broken and scattered ; that they would have a line of posts extending from Lake Champlain to the Bay of New York. Instead of the realization of these hopes, intelligence came that Burgoyne had surrendered his entire army. The sensation produced in England was great indeed. Rumors stole into the country, that France, their ancient enemy, was about to aid the Americans ; that Holland was about to loan them money. England's pride was touched. Should she, who had made all Europe tremble, be baffled in her efforts to subdue her revolted colonists ? A new spirit was awakened ; many of the large commercial towns offered to raise regiments to supply the places of those surrendered at Saratoga, and present them to the king. Yet there were others, moved by compassion, and it may be by sympathy for the cause, who liberally subscribed money to relieve the wants of the American prisoners in England, whom the government had left to suffer for the necessities of life.

These sentiments had their effect on Parliament, and when it assembled, the friends of America renewed their assaults upon the policy of the king. They, from the first, had opposed the war as unjust, and had opposed the enlisting of Hessians ; but more especially did they denounce the inhuman policy of employing savages to murder and scalp their brethren beyond the Atlantic. There were other causes of complaint. The merchants clamored for

CHAP.
XXXIV.

1778. redress ; the American trade was broken up ; debts could not be collected ; especially were they aggrieved that the slave-trade had been reduced four-fifths. American cruisers had already seized nearly six hundred of their vessels. These cruisers swarmed to such an extent, even in the British seas, that it became necessary to convoy by armed ships merchant vessels from one port of the kingdom to another. More than twenty thousand men had perished in the war ; more than a hundred millions of dollars had been expended ; their expectations had been greatly raised, but as yet nothing was gained.

Lord North was constrained to bring in two bills, by which the king hoped to reconcile his American subjects. On this occasion, the former declared in the House that he himself had always been opposed to taxing the colonies. The king, in truth, was the prime mover and sustainer of the measure. One of these bills exempted the Americans from taxation, the other appointed commissioners to negotiate with them, for the purpose of restoring the royal authority. Thus was yielded, but ungraciously, the whole ground of the contest.

The moment the French government heard of the passage of these bills, it proposed to acknowledge the Independence of the United States, and to make with them a treaty offensive and defensive. That the belligerents should fight and weaken each other, France was willing, but rather than they should become reconciled, she declared for the Americans.

Though the war had cost England much, it had cost the Americans more. In many portions of the country, their ruthless invaders had laid waste their cultivated fields ; in other portions they were unsown, because the husbandmen were in the army ; property was wasting away ; debts were accumulating, with no prospect of payment. The Bills of Credit issued by Congress were almost

worthless. As with individuals, so with the State ; both were bankrupt. On the sea-board, foreign commerce, the coasting trade, and the fisheries, were carried on at such risks, as to be almost annihilated. Nine hundred vessels had fallen into the hands of the enemy. The loss of life had been great ; not so many had perished on the field of battle, but disease, the deficiency of necessary comforts in hospitals, the want of clothes and of wholesome food, had as effectively done the work of death. Multitudes died miserably, either in the jails and loathsome prison-ships of the enemy, or contracted diseases which clung to them through life. These calamities, instead of depressing the patriots, roused their indignant spirits to more determination. They would listen to no terms of reconciliation with England, short of absolute independence.

CHAP.
XXXIV

1778.

Congress was embarrassed more and more. That noble spirit of conciliation and mutual forbearance, which distinguished the members of the Old Congress, was not so prominent. Many of the ablest members had retired to take part in the recently organized governments of their own States, or to attend to their private affairs, lest their families should come to want ; and some had been sent on foreign missions, and some were in the army.

There were other difficulties ; jealousies between northern and southern men still existed in the army, and jealousies between American officers and some of those of foreign birth. Congress, now numbering not more than twenty or thirty members, manifested an undue prejudice against the army, because the officers and soldiers earnestly urged that their wants should be supplied. Washington protested against this spirit, and showed the unreasonableness of such a prejudice. After remarking that in other countries the army was looked upon with suspicion in time of *peace*, he adds : " It is our policy to be prejudiced against them (the troops) in time of *war* ; though they

- CHAP. XXXIV.** are citizens, having all the ties and interests of citizens."
1778. In violation of military usage, and contrary to his advice, Congress made several promotions in the army, which not only slighted but wronged some of its best and bravest officers.

While Washington labored at Valley Forge to keep the army together, and to prevent its disbanding from sheer necessity, a few were intriguing to remove him from the command. Some members of Congress, a few officers, and perhaps some others, joined in what was known as the "Conway Cabal," a name derived from the Irish adventurer, already mentioned, who, if not the prime mover in the plot, was a pliant tool of others. The whole truth on the subject can never be fully known, as each actor ever after desired to conceal the part he had taken in the affair. By means of anonymous letters, underhand appeals, designed to seduce the officers of the army, and other dishonorable measures, the attempt was made to defame Washington; to draw invidious comparisons between his military successes and those of Gates; and to destroy that confidence which the people and soldiers reposed in his integrity. They dared not attack him openly, but by these means they hoped to disgust him with his office, and induce him to resign; and General Gates, their hero, would receive the appointment of Commander-in-chief. Thus the intrigue was carried on for months. General Mifflin and Gates himself were prominent in the scheme, but their efforts to win over Lafayette signally failed. Anonymous letters were sent to Henry Laurens, President of Congress, and to Patrick Henry, then Governor of Virginia; but these high-minded men forwarded them at once to the Commander-in-chief. Washington himself, though he knew, to some extent, of the existence of these plots, never publicly noticed them, nor turned aside a moment from his great work. He was only anxious lest the

enemy should learn of these dissensions. But when it was proposed in Congress to appoint Conway inspector of the army, he remonstrated, and in writing to Richard Henry Lee, then a member, he says: "General Conway's merit as an officer, and his importance in this army, exist more in his own imagination than in reality." Yet Congress, under the influence of the Cabal, appointed Conway "Inspector of the Armies of the United States!" —with the rank of major-general.

CHAP
XXXIV
1778.

Ere long intelligence of these intrigues stole abroad. So great was the indignation which burst forth from the officers and soldiers, from the Legislatures of the States, and from the people themselves, that the Cabal cowered before it.

The effect of this abortive attempt to remove Washington from the chief command was only to strengthen his hold on the confidence of the nation. The invidious comparisons made between his successes and those of Gates, were unjust, but that some persons should be influenced by them is not strange. "The Washington of that day was not Washington as we know him, tried and proved by twenty years of the most disinterested and most successful public services." The capture of Burgoyne at Saratoga was due to his plan of defence, as concerted with Schuyler, and not to General Gates. In his effort to save Philadelphia, he was surrounded with almost insurmountable difficulties. His army, ill-equipped and imperfectly disciplined, was smaller than that of Howe's; the scene of operation was in a region filled with Tories, who gave every facility to the British. He says himself: "Had the same spirit pervaded the people of this and the neighboring States, as the States of New York and New England, we might have had General Howe nearly in the same situation of General Burgoyne."

We may here anticipate. Conway found his position

CHAP.
XXXIV.

1778.

unenviable, and he sent to Congress a note complaining that he had been ill-treated, and intimated that he would resign because he was ordered to the Northern Department. His self-complacency never doubted but he would be urged to remain as "Inspector." But Congress, ashamed of having ever appointed him, interpreted it as a resignation, and gladly accepted it. No explanation of Conway, though urged in person, could induce them to change their decision. Some time afterward he was wounded in a duel with General Cadwallader, who had charged him with cowardice at the battle of Germantown, and also of derogatory remarks in relation to the Commander-in-chief. When he thought himself near death, Conway wrote to Washington: "You are in my eyes the great and good man. May you long enjoy the love, veneration, and esteem of these States, whose liberties you have asserted by your virtues." He recovered from his wound, and soon after he left the country.

During the winter at Valley Forge, every effort was made to increase the army, and make it more efficient. To accomplish this end, Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer of great merit as a disciplinarian, was appointed Inspector, with the rank of major-general. Congress called upon all the States, except Georgia and South Carolina, for their quotas of men to the continental army. These States were excused, except for local defence, in consideration of their large slave population. Several independent bodies of horse were raised by Count Pulaski and Henry Lee, who, because of his success and genius as a commander of light-horse, was known in the army as Light-Horse Harry.

Baron Steuben soon infused his own spirit into the officers and men. He was prompt, and they obeyed him with alacrity. The tactics were taught by system, and the result was very gratifying. Congress designed to raise



Stewart M.
Mar: Guy H. H. H.

the army to sixty thousand, but it really never reached more than half that number. Many of the more experienced officers were compelled by necessity to resign ; their families were dependent upon them, and they received scarcely any pay. These resignations were unfortunate. Washington appealed to Congress in behalf of the officers, and also of the soldiers. That body promised half pay for seven years to those officers who should serve to the end of the war, and to the soldiers thus serving a gratuity of eighty dollars. But the treasury was empty ; new bills of credit were issued, and the several States were called upon to levy taxes for the public expenses ; but the States were poor, and some of them were negligent. Their bills of credit continued to lose their value ; and to increase the evil, the British and Tories flooded the country with counterfeits. The depreciation became so great, that a pair of boots cost more than seven hundred dollars in some of these bills of credit. Yet it shows the patriotism of the great mass of the people, that at this time of despondency and distress, the British, with their promises of gold and protection, could induce only three thousand five hundred Tories to enlist in their army.

The office of quartermaster had been held during the last campaign by Mifflin ; but he was seldom at his post, and the department was in great confusion. Many difficulties had grown out of this neglect ; the army was irregularly supplied with provisions and forage, while the country people suffered much on account of the demands made upon them for provisions by unauthorized foraging parties. At the urgent request of Washington, Congress appointed General Greene quartermaster. He assumed the duties of the office, so irksome to him, for one year, but without compensation. The system with which Greene performed all his duties was soon apparent ; the army was regularly furnished with provisions and ammu-

CHAP.
XXXIV
1778.

CHAP. XXXIV. **nition, so that it could be ready to march at a few minutes' notice.**

1778.

April

General Lee was returned to the army in exchange for General Prescott. Lee was as selfish as he was destitute of the true nobleness of a man of honor. In a document in his own handwriting, written when a prisoner in New York, dated "March 29, 1777," and endorsed by Lord and Sir William Howe as "Mr. Lee's plan," may be found the evidence of his willingness to ruin the cause of American Independence. In this elaborate plan, he urged with great earnestness upon the British ministry to send a large force ; part of which to take position at Alexandria, on the Potomac, and part at Annapolis, on the Chesapeake. Thus to separate the Northern and Southern colonies, and prevent them from aiding each other, while to oppose Burgoyne's advance would require all the force that New England could raise. He was willing to forfeit his life, if the measure did not speedily terminate the war and dissolve the "Congress Government."

For some reason the ministry did not adopt Lee's suggestion, and the document was filed away among British state papers, to bear testimony to the dishonesty of the author three-quarters of a century after his death.¹

In the Spring, Sir William Howe, after complaining that his government did not furnish him a sufficiency of men and supplies, resigned his command, and Sir Henry Clinton was appointed his successor. With the exception of foraging parties, the British, as yet, made no military movements. About this time came intelligence of the passage of Lord North's conciliatory bills, and that the commissioners would soon be on their way to open negotiations. The substance of these bills was circulated very extensively by zealous Tories. Congress ordered them to

May

¹ "Treason of General Charles Lee," by George H. Moore. Esq.,

be printed in the newspapers, accompanied by a severe criticism, furnished by a committee of the House.

CHAP.
XXIV

Presently came the news that France had acknowledged the independence of the States, and had entered into a treaty with them of commerce and defence. The light had dawned upon the American cause ! A thrill of joy went throughout the land.

1778.
Jan.
30.

The treaty between the United States and France produced a great sensation in England. It is madness to protract the war ! said the friends of America. Let us acknowledge the independence of the States, and obtain their good will by liberal terms of commerce, lest our great rival win them to herself. But no ! the idea was scouted ; the war must be prosecuted, blood must still flow.

May
5.

In June came the commissioners to treat under Lord North's conciliatory bills. They were the Earl of Carlisle, William Eden, brother of the late governor of Maryland, and George Johnstone, formerly governor of Florida, and who had been a friend of the Americans in Parliament.

The commissioners sent their proposals to Congress, but that body refused to treat, until the independence of the States was acknowledged, and the British troops withdrawn. As the commissioners could not grant these demands, negotiations were not commenced. Some of the commissioners indirectly resorted to bribery, and by means of a loyalist lady of Philadelphia, made propositions to General Joseph Reed, of ten thousand pounds, and any office in the colonies he might choose, if he would aid the object of the mission. To which offer he made this memorable reply : " I am not worth purchasing, but such as I am, the king of England is not rich enough to buy me."

When it was known that a French fleet was expected on the coast, the British hastened to evacuate Philadelphia, and retreat to New York. Most of the stores, together with the sick and wounded, were sent round by

June
18.

CHAP.
XXXIV.

1778.

water, while the army, twelve thousand strong, took up its line of march across New Jersey. Washington was soon in pursuit. The weather was excessively warm, and the heavily armed British moved very slowly. The Americans soon came up. A council of war was held, and the question discussed, whether to attack the enemy and bring on a general engagement, or merely harass them on their march. Washington, with Greene and Lafayette, was in favor of the former manner of attack, and Lee, for some reason, strenuously advocated the latter. When it was decided to bring on a general engagement, Lee, as his advice had not been taken, declined to take any command in the affair.

Washington therefore sent Lafayette forward with two thousand men, to take position on the hills, and thus crowd Sir Henry Clinton off into the plain. The next morning Lee had changed his mind, and asked to be given a command. Washington sent him forward with two brigades, and when he came up with Lafayette, being of superior rank, he assumed the command of the entire advance division.

The British encamped near Monmouth Court-house. There were morasses and groves of woods in the vicinity, a difficult place in which to manœuvre troops.

June
28.

When Lee advanced, he found a force of apparently about two thousand on the march, but a portion of the woods obstructed a full view. He made his arrangements to cut off this force, and sent word of his movements to Washington. But when he came upon the division, he found it much stronger than he anticipated—in truth, Clinton had thrown this strong force of German and British there, for the express purpose of giving the Americans a severe check.

The battle had scarcely begun, before occurred a misapprehension of orders. The Americans began to retreat, and Lee, in the hurry of the moment, forgot to send word of

the movement to Washington, who was advancing with the main body to his support. The retreat had passed into almost a flight. When Washington met the troops he inquired why they were retreating. The reply was, they did not know, but they had received the order. Suspecting that this movement was designed to mar the plan of attack, he spurred on, and presently met Lee, of whom he demanded, in a stern manner : " What is the meaning of all this, sir ? " Lee, disconcerted, hesitated for a moment to reply, and was asked again. He then began to explain, that the confusion had arisen from disobedience of orders ; and, moreover, he did not wish to meet the whole British army. Washington rejoined, " that he understood it was a mere covering party," adding : " I am very sorry that you undertook the command unless you meant to fight the enemy." Lee replied, that he did not think it prudent to bring on a general engagement. " Whatever your opinion may have been," replied Washington, disdainfully, " I expect my orders to be obeyed." This conversation took but a moment.

Washington hastily formed the men on a rising ground. The enemy came up in force, and other divisions of the Americans also mingled in the conflict. Night ended the battle. The Americans slept upon their arms, expecting to renew the contest in the morning. But Clinton skillfully drew off his army during the night, and at daylight was far on his way. Washington did not attempt to pursue, as the weather was intolerably warm, and the march through a sandy region, destitute of water. The Americans lost altogether about two hundred, many of them on account of the extreme heat : the British about three hundred in the battle, and on the march two thousand Hessians deserted.

After refreshing his men, Washington marched across New Jersey, passed the Hudson, and took position at White Plains, to be ready to co-operate with the French fleet

CHAP. in an attack upon New York. Lord Howe had scarce-
XXXIV. left the Delaware when Count D'Estaing appeared with a
1778. squadron. While at sea, D'Estaing communicated with
Washington by letter. Finding that the British had
evacuated Philadelphia, he put to sea, and soon anchored
off Sandy Hook.

The day after the battle, Lee wrote a note, disrespectful in its tone, to Washington, who replied ; and this produced another note from Lee, still more offensive, demanding a court of inquiry, and in the mean time intimating that he should retire from the army. The court found him guilty of disobedience of orders and disrespect to the Commander-in-chief, and sentenced him to be suspended for one year from the army. He retired to his estate in Virginia, and there beguiled his leisure in writing scurrilous letters concerning the army and its commander. When his sentence of suspension was about to expire, he, for some fancied neglect, wrote an insolent letter to Congress. That body immediately dismissed him from the army. Thus ended the military career of General Charles Lee. A few years afterward he died in Philadelphia. His life had been that of the soldier ; and in the delirium of death he murmured, " Stand by me, my brave grenadiers ! "

The French fleet brought Monsieur Gerard as ambassador to the United States, and also Silas Deane, Doctor Franklin, and Arthur Lee, with whom, on the part of the United States, the treaty had been made.

Howe ran his ships within the bay of New York, and as the large vessels of the French could not pass the bar at Sandy Hook, the combined attack upon the city was abandoned. Instead, it was resolved to make an attack upon Newport, on the island of Rhode Island. This was a British stronghold and depot, and garrisoned by six thousand men, under General Pigot. The brutality of these British troops had excited against them the bitterest

hatred, and when called upon by General Sullivan, who was in command, thousands of the militia of the surrounding country flocked to avenge their wrongs. John Hancock, on this occasion, led the Massachusetts militia, as general. D'Estaing sailed to Newport, where he arrived a week before the force sent by Washington under Greene and Lafayette. This unavoidable delay ruined the enterprise. When the Americans appeared, the British guard left the works on the north end of the island, and retired to their inner lines. The Americans immediately passed over and occupied the abandoned works. The very day of this occupancy, Lord Howe appeared with a fleet, and D'Estaing went out to give him battle. They both manœuvred their fleets to obtain the advantage of position, when a terrible storm arose and separated them.

CHAP
XXXIV

1778.

Aug
9.

12.

In the mean time, the Americans moved near the enemy's works, and commenced to cannonade them, expecting that the French fleet would soon return to their aid. D'Estaing did return, but instead of landing the four thousand troops on board, he set sail for Boston to refit his vessels, which the late storm had shattered.

20

The Americans now abandoned their lines, and by night retreated, repulsing the division of the enemy sent in pursuit. It was time, for the British were strongly reinforced from New York by four thousand troops, under Clinton himself.

To deceive the enemy, and escape safely from the island, Sullivan sent a party to occupy a hill in sight of the British lines. The party began to throw up intrenchments, and in the evening pitched their tents; but as soon as it was night, they silently decamped, and in the morning were all safely on the main land.

A great clamor arose because D'Estaing failed to co-operate with the Americans at Newport. Subsequent investigation seemed to justify him; at least, Congress passed a resolution approving his conduct. This may

CHAP. however, have been mere policy, as Congress was unwilling to offend the French by passing a vote of censure.
XXXIV.

1778. The war degenerated into marauding expeditions against defenceless villages. The first object of this barbarity was the island of Martha's Vineyard, whose inhabitants were stripped of every thing the robbers could carry off. The towns of New Bedford and Fair Haven were
Sept. wantonly burned, and also seventy vessels in their ports. Scenes of cruelty were enacted in New Jersey, where an
Oct. American regiment of horse was cut to pieces, and a company of infantry, when crying for quarter, was butchered with the bayonet without mercy.

When it was certainly known that a French fleet had sailed to the United States, the English ministry sent Admiral Byron in pursuit. He appeared off Boston harbor while the French were refitting, but did not dare attack them, and the French were unwilling to come out of their place of security. Lord Howe resigned his command into the hands of Admiral Byron. At length a storm arose which scattered the English fleet ; then the French
Nov. slipped out of the harbor, and sailed to the West Indies.
1. On the same day, five thousand British troops sailed from New York for the same destination. Three weeks after, another expedition of three thousand sailed for Georgia ; yet the British army remaining was far more numerous than the forces under Washington.

During the summer, one of the most atrocious outrages which disgraced the war, was committed upon the settlement of Wyoming, situated in a beautiful valley on the Susquehanna. There had been previously much contention among the inhabitants, some of whom were Tories. These had been seized, and sent out of the settlement ;
July. they took their revenge with more than savage ferocity.

After the defeat of St. Leger at Fort Schuyler, Fort Niagara became the head-quarters of Tories and Indians ;

at that place was planned the murderous expedition. The party was guided by Tories who had lived in the valley. The chief leader in this expedition was John Butler, a Tory notorious for his cruelty. His force, about eleven hundred, was composed of his Rangers, Johnson's Greens, and Mohawks. There were block-houses in the settlement; to these the people fled in times of danger. Nearly all the able-bodied men were absent in the army under Washington. There were left only the women and children, the aged and infirm. Suddenly the savage enemy appeared at various points in the valley, and commenced murdering the husbandmen in the fields, and burning the houses. It had been rumored that such an attack was meditated, and a small force had already been dispatched by Washington to defend the settlement. They had themselves, under Zebulon Butler, (no relation of John Butler), about three hundred and fifty men. Unfortunately, Butler did not wait the arrival of the reinforcement, but sallied forth to restrain the ravaging of the country. Intelligence of this intended attack was conveyed to the enemy, and they were fully prepared. The fight began, and the Tories were forced to give way, but the Indians passed round a swamp toward the rear. Butler, seeing this movement, ordered his men to fall back, lest they should be surrounded. This order was mistaken for one to retreat; all was thrown into confusion, and a portion, panic-stricken, fled. They were pursued by the Tories and Indians with unrelenting fury. The whole valley was desolated. Those of the people who escaped, fled to the mountains, and there women and children perished by hundreds, while some, after incredible sufferings, reached the settlements.

A month later, similar scenes were witnessed at Cherry Valley, in New York. The Tories and Indians were equally as cruel as at the Wyoming massacre. The people were either murdered or carried into captivity. All

CHAP
XXXIV

1778.

Aug

**CHAP.
XXXIV.**

the region of the upper Susquehanna, the Delaware, and the Mohawk, was at the mercy of the savages.

1778. In the latter part of November, Clinton sent Colonel Campbell, with two thousand men, to invade Georgia. He landed three miles below Savannah, the capital, on the twenty-ninth of December.

General Robert Howe, who was in command, could make but little resistance. He and his men behaved nobly, but a negro guiding the British by a path through a swamp, they gained the rear of the Americans, who were now thrown into confusion and defeated. The town of Savannah fell into the hands of the victors.

General Prevost, who commanded in East Florida, was ordered by Clinton to pass across to Savannah, and there join Campbell and assume the command. On his march, Prevost took Sunbury, a fort of some importance. Arriving at Savannah, he sent Campbell to take possession of Augusta. Thus was Georgia subdued, in the space of a few weeks. The British now transferred their active operations to the South, which became the principal theatre of the war till its close.

General Benjamin Lincoln, who had been appointed to take command of the Southern Department, arrived about this time. The delegates from South Carolina and Georgia had solicited his appointment.

CHAPTER XXXV.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

Dissensions in Congress.—Expedition against the Indians.—The War in the South.—Augusta reoccupied.—Charleston threatened.—Marauding Expeditions sent to Virginia, and up the Hudson.—Tryon ravages Connecticut.—Capture of Stony Point by Wayne.—Lee surprises the Garrison at Jersey City.—Combined assault upon Savannah.—Daniel Boone; Kentucky.—George Rogers Clarke; Kaskaskia.—Pioneers of Tennessee; Nashville.—John Paul Jones.

THE American army was distributed, at the end of the year, in a series of cantonments, which extended from the east end of Long Island Sound to the Delaware; thus effectually enclosing the British forces. The head-quarters were in a central position at Middlebrook, New Jersey. The British were so strong at New York and Newport, that to attack them with success was hopeless. The French fleet had been of no practical use to the Americans, and now Count D'Estaing took with him his land troops to the West Indies.

Four years had passed since the war commenced; the finances of the country were still in a wretched condition. The enemy held important places, and were watching for opportunities to pillage. In the South, the Tories were specially active. Yet there were other elements at work, more injurious to the cause than even these.

Congress was filled with dissensions. The prospect

CHAP.
XXXV
1779.

CHAP.
XXXV.

1779.

of assistance from France caused many to relax their efforts, as though the war was virtually ended. Washington wrote, at the beginning of the year: "Our affairs are in a more distressed, ruinous, and deplorable condition than they have been since the commencement of the war." A large majority of Congress was carried away with the scheme of joining with the French in an expedition against Canada. But when the matter was laid before the Commander-in-chief, at a glance he saw the difficulties of the undertaking, and, with the comprehensive views of the true statesman, pointed out the disadvantages of having, on this continent, a power different in nation, in religion, and in customs from the Americans. Moreover, he desired the people of the United States to be as little under obligations as possible to other nations.

For the ensuing campaign, it was evident the British intended to confine themselves to pillaging expeditions, and to cripple the Union in the South. Washington now recommended an expedition against the Indians, to punish them for their outrages at Wyoming and other places. It was to be conducted on their own plan—to invade and lay waste their territory.

In April a body of troops suddenly invaded and desolated the territory of the Onondagas. The principal expedition, under Sullivan, went against the Senecas, to revenge their attack on Wyoming. With five thousand men he penetrated their country, met them under Brant, with their worthy allies, the Tories, Johnson and Butler, at Newtown, now Elmira, and completely routed them. Without giving them time to recover from their panic, Sullivan pursued them into the valley of the Genesee, and in a few weeks destroyed more than forty of their villages, all their cornfields, gardens, and orchards. It was a terrible vengeance; but the only means to prevent their depredations on the settlements.

Aug.
29.

Want of food compelled the Indians and Tories to emigrate to Canada, yet they soon after renewed their depredations, and continued them, with their usual ferocity, till the end of the war. In the mean while, another successful expedition was conducted against the Indian towns on the Alleghany, above Pittsburg.

CHAP
XXXV
1779

As in the North, so in the South, the British entered into alliances with the Indians—there they induced the Creeks to join them. The Tories desolated the upper part of Georgia; but as they drew near Augusta, Colonel Pickens suddenly attacked and routed them. Seventy-five were made prisoners and condemned to death, as traitors; however, only five were executed.

Feb.

The next month, General Lincoln sent General Ashe, with two thousand men, to drive Campbell from Augusta. Campbell, hearing of his approach, retreated in haste, and Ashe pursued, but was himself surprised, some days after, and his entire force dispersed. The British now reoccupied Augusta, and opened a communication with the Cherokees and the South Carolina Tories.

While Lincoln recruited his army, Prevost marched slowly in the direction of Charleston; and Lincoln hastened to the aid of that city. The inhabitants were indefatigable in their exertions to give the foe a warm reception. They threw up intrenchments across the neck of the peninsula, on which their city stood. Presently, Prevost arrived and summoned them to surrender, but they boldly refused.

May

He prepared to enter upon a regular siege, but hearing of the approach of Lincoln, he first ravaged the plantations in the vicinity, carried off an immense amount of plunder, and three or four thousand slaves, and then retreated toward Savannah, by way of the islands along the coast. As the hot season approached, hostilities ceased.

June

While these events were in progress in the South, Clinton was fulfilling his instructions from the ministry to

CHAP.
XXXV.

1779.
May
8.

send out plundering expeditions. One of these, under General Mathews, he sent from New York, with twenty-five hundred men, into Virginia. The fleet entered the Chesapeake, the troops landed, and plundered the towns of Portsmouth and Norfolk. A little higher up, at Gosport, was established a navy-yard by the State; there they burned one hundred and thirty merchant ships, and several war-vessels on the stocks. The facilities afforded the enemy by the rivers to pass from point to point, and the danger of the slaves rising, prevented much resistance.

When these soldiers returned, Clinton went up the Hudson, against the posts Verplanck's and Stony Points. These forts protected King's Ferry, a very important crossing-place, on the main road from the eastern to the middle States. The works at Stony Point—not yet finished—were abandoned; and the garrison at Verplanck's Point were forced to surrender.

July
4.

The next expedition, of twenty-five hundred men, was under Tryon, whose barbarities, on such occasions, have justly rendered his name infamous. Tryon plundered New Haven, and burned Fairfield and Norwalk. In the course of a few days, he burned two hundred and twenty-five private dwellings, half as many barns and stores, and five places of worship. Many of the inhabitants were murdered, or subjected to the brutal passions of the soldiers. This "journeyman of desolation," so insensible to the promptings of humanity, contemplated these outrages with pleasure, and afterward even claimed for himself the honor of having exercised mercy, because he did not burn every dwelling on the coast of New England.

Clinton had been grossly deceived by the Tories, who assured him that the principal inhabitants of Connecticut were so much dissatisfied because their homes were not protected by the American army, that they were about to withdraw from the cause, and put themselves under Brit-



Anty. Wayne

ish protection. And it was thought a few more such expeditions would accomplish this result.

CHAP
XXXV

1779

Washington now devised a plan to recapture Stony Point. The fort was so situated, that to surprise it seemed an impossibility. He proposed to General Wayne—"Mad Anthony"—to undertake the desperate enterprise. The proposal was accepted with delight. Washington himself, accompanied by Wayne, carefully reconnoitred the Point. The attempt was to be made at the hour of midnight. Every precaution to secure success was taken, even the dogs of the neighborhood were privately destroyed. A negro, who was in the habit of visiting the fort to sell fruit, and also as a spy for the Americans, was to act as guide.

July
16.

The men, with fixed bayonets, and, to remove the possibility of discovery, with unloaded muskets, approached in two divisions, at the appointed hour. The negro, accompanied by two soldiers, disguised as farmers, approached the outer sentinel, and gave the countersign. The sentinel was seized and gagged, and the second treated in the same manner; at the third, the alarm was given, but the impetuosity of the Americans was so great, that in a few minutes the two divisions from the opposite sides of the fort met in the centre. They took more than five hundred prisoners. This was one of the most brilliant exploits of the war. How great was the contrast between the humanity of Wayne and the savage cruelty of the British in their midnight attacks with the bayonet! Stedman, the British historian, records that "the conduct of the Americans upon this occasion was highly meritorious, for they would have been fully justified in putting the garrison to the sword; not one man of which was put to death but in fair combat." When Clinton heard of the taking of Stony Point, he hastily recalled Tryon, who was about to move against New London.

The exploit of Wayne was speedily followed by another

CHAP.
XXXV.

1779.

Aug.
18.

daring adventure by Light Horse Harry. He had learned by reconnoitring, and by means of spies, the exact condition of the garrison at Paulus Hook, now Jersey City, opposite New York. Thinking themselves secure from attack, because of their nearness to the main army, the officers, as well as men, were careless. Lee asked permission to strike a blow within "cannon-shot of New York." Washington directed him "to surprise the fort, bring off the garrison immediately, and effect a retreat," and not to linger, lest he should himself be overpowered. About two o'clock in the morning they made themselves masters of the fort, and secured one hundred and fifty prisoners, with a loss to themselves of only two men. Soon alarm guns roused the garrison in New York, and Lee commenced his retreat. The exploit redounded much to his credit, and that of his company of horse. In compliment, Congress voted Wayne, as well as Lee, a gold medal.

Oct.
9.

An effort was again made to take Savannah. Count D'Estaing appeared with his fleet from the West Indies, and General Lincoln marched to aid in the siege. Several North Carolina regiments had been sent by the Commander-in-chief, and the militia turned out well. Prevost made every exertion to defend himself. But D'Estaing soon grew impatient; he must return to the West Indies lest the British fleet might accomplish some enterprise of importance. The siege must be either abandoned, or the town taken by assault. The latter was resolved upon; and it was undertaken with great disadvantages staring the assailants in the face. After they had carried some of the outworks, the Americans were forced to retire. Count Pulaski, when gallantly leading his men, was mortally wounded. The French, who were at the post of the greatest danger, were also repulsed, and D'Estaing himself was wounded. Lincoln now retreated to Charleston, disbanded the militia, and the Count sailed to the West Indies. Thus, for the second time, the French, under the

same officer, failed to co-operate efficiently with the Americans. Very great dissatisfaction was excited at this throughout the country.

CHAP.
XXXV

1779.

Clinton obeyed his instructions from home, evacuated Newport, and concentrated his main force at New York, which place he thought in danger of a combined attack from the Americans and French. In truth, Washington, in expectation of such aid, had called out the militia for that purpose, but when he heard that the French had sailed for the West Indies, he dismissed them, and went into winter-quarters near Morristown, New Jersey.

Oct
25.

When the coast was clear, Clinton sent seven thousand men by sea to Savannah, and soon after sailed himself with two thousand more, leaving a powerful garrison in New York, under the command of Knyphausen.

Dec.
29.

Some years before the commencement of the war, Daniel Boone, the bold hunter and pioneer, had visited the region of Kentucky. Attracted by the fertility of the soil, the beauty of the forests, and the mildness of the climate, in connection with others, he formed a settlement on the Kentucky river. Thither Boone took his wife and daughters, the first white women in that region. There, during the war, these bold pioneers were in perils, fighting the Indians and levelling the forests. Harrod, another bold backwoodsman, founded Harrodsburg. The territory on the lower Kentucky, had been purchased of the Cherokees. Though Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, denounced the purchase as illegal, yet in spite of his proclamation, and the hostility of the Indians, the people, in numbers, emigrated to that delightful region.

1779

The Indians at the West were becoming hostile under the influence of British emissaries. The principal actor in this was Hamilton, the commandant at Detroit, against which place Congress resolved to send an expedition.

CHAP
XXXV

1779. While this was under consideration, George Rogers Clarke, an adventurous Virginian, set out from Pittsburg on an expedition against Kaskaskia, an old French town on the Mississippi. Clarke, though a backwoodsman of Kentucky, acted under the authority of Virginia. With two hundred men he floated in boats down the Ohio to the Falls, and there, on an island, thirteen families, his followers, made a settlement. Joined by some Kentuckians, he proceeded down the river, to near its mouth. Then hiding his canoes, the company struck through the woods to Kaskaskia. This town was claimed by the English since the surrender of Canada. The inhabitants were at once conciliated, when they heard of the alliance between the United States and France, and when they saw their religion respected and their property protected. Clarke also entered into friendly relations with the Spaniards west of the Mississippi, at St. Louis. When he returned to the Falls, he built a stockade fort on the south side of the Ohio ; this was the germ of the present city of LOUISVILLE. Virginia claimed the region north of the Ohio, as conquered territory, erected it into the county of Illinois, and made arrangements to keep possession of it.
1778. July

Other bold pioneers were, about the same time, penetrating the wilderness further south. James Robertson, from North Carolina, who, eleven years before, led emigrants to settle on the head-waters of the Tennessee, now, with a company, crossed over into the valley of the Cumberland. They passed down that river till they found a desirable location, a bluff on its south shore. The company altogether amounted to nearly fifty persons. There, in the midst of the primeval forest, more than a hundred miles from the nearest settlement, they cleared some land and planted corn. Three of their number remained to guard the growing crop, and the others returned to bring their families. Emigration now began : one party set out through the wilderness, driving their cattle before them ;

May.



Sturges

another, with the women and children, went on board of boats, on the head-waters of the Tennessee. They were to pass down that river to its mouth, thence find their way up the Cumberland to the chosen spot. A laborious journey of more than six months brought them to their anxious friends. The settlement increased with great rapidity, notwithstanding the hostility of the Indians. Such were the beginnings of the now prosperous and beautiful city of NASHVILLE.

CHAP
XXXV

1779.

Congress, from time to time, made efforts to increase the continental navy, but many of the vessels had been lost. The privateers had aroused the ire and the vigilance of the entire British navy. Yet some American cruisers, fitted out in France, fearlessly sailed in quest of the enemy. The most distinguished of these commanders was John Paul Jones, a native of Scotland, but who had been brought to Virginia in childhood. He was one of the first officers commissioned by Congress for the navy. Jones, in command of the *Ranger*, of eighteen guns, spread terror around England, and even made a descent on the coast of Scotland.

A small squadron of five French and American ships was fitted out at L'Orient, and placed under his command, to cruise in the British seas. Off the coast of Scotland, he met with a fleet of merchantmen, convoyed by a frigate and another armed vessel. It was night, and the battle, the most desperate in the annals of naval warfare, lasted three hours. Jones lashed his flag-ship, the *Richard*, to the British frigate *Serapis*, and thus, muzzle to muzzle, they poured into each other their broadsides. At length, both the English ships surrendered. Jones' flag-ship was so damaged, that in a few hours it went to the bottom.

Sept
23

CHAPTER XXXVI.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

Hardships of the Soldiers.—British Success at the South.—Colonel Tarleton.—Charleston capitulates.—Defeat at Waxhaws.—Rev. James Caldwell.—Maraud into Jersey.—Fleet at Newport.—The South unsubdued; her partisan Leaders.—Gates sent to take Command.—Disastrous Battle of Camden.—Death of De Kalb.—Sumter's Success and Defeat.—Treason of Arnold.—Major André.—Movements of Cornwallis.—Colonel Ferguson.—Battle of King's Mountain.—Tarleton repulsed.—General Greene in Command.—Rancorous Spirit between the Whigs and Tories.—British triumphant.—Affairs in Europe.—Henry Laurens.—Dangers of England; her Energy.

CHAP.
XXXVI.

1780.

THIS winter, like the preceding, witnessed the hardships of the soldiers, who were often in great straits for provisions, and other necessities. The depreciation of the currency continued; Congress was in debt, without money and without credit. To preserve the soldiers from starvation, Washington was under, to him, the painful necessity of levying contributions upon the people of the surrounding country. Jersey was drained almost to exhaustion; but her patriotism rose in proportion to her sacrifices; at one time, when deep snows cut off supplies from a distance, the subsistence of the whole army devolved upon her. "The women met together to knit and sew for the soldiery," and the farmers hastened to the camp with provisions, "stockings, shoes, coats, and blankets."

May. A committee sent by Congress to inquire into the condition of affairs at Morristown, reported: "That the army was five months unpaid; that it seldom had more than

six days' provisions in advance, and was, on several occasions, for sundry successive days, without meat ; was destitute of forage ; that the medical department had neither sugar, tea, chocolate, wine, nor spirits." No other principle than true patriotism could have held men together in the midst of privations and sufferings such as these. In preparation for the ensuing campaign, Congress made great exertions to increase the army ; large bounties were offered, yet recruits came in slowly.

CHAP.
XXXVI

1780.

The winter was exceedingly severe. The waters around New York were frozen, communication with the sea was cut off, so that the garrison and the citizens suffered for provisions. Knyphausen was alarmed lest the Americans should pass on the ice and attack the city ; his ships of war were frozen fast, and no longer useful to defend it. He transferred the seamen to the shore, and formed them into companies, and placed the entire male population under arms. But his apprehensions were groundless, as Washington was too deficient in men and means to make a successful attack upon the garrison.

In the South, the British were very successful. When Clinton arrived at Savannah, he immediately went North for the purpose of blockading Charleston. General Lincoln made every exertion to fortify the city. Four thousand of its militia enrolled themselves ; but the assistance received from the surrounding country numbered only two hundred men. South Carolina had represented to Congress her utter inability to defend herself, "by reason of the great number of citizens necessary to remain at home to prevent insurrection among the negroes, and their desertion to the enemy." The only hope of Charleston lay in the regiments then on their march from Virginia and North Carolina. These regiments increased Lincoln's

Jan

**CHAP.
XXXVI.**

force to seven thousand, only two thousand of whom were continentals.

1780.
Feb.

The British occupied so much time in their approach, that an opportunity was given to fortify the harbor and city. It was of no avail ; the superior English fleet passed by Fort Moultrie without receiving much damage, though four years before the same fort had repulsed a similar attempt. The channel, at this time, was deeper, and the vessels could pass.

Sir Henry Clinton had lost nearly all his horses on the voyage ; but he had with him Lieutenant-colonel Banastre Tarleton, a native of Liverpool. Let us take a glance at the colonel, who figures so largely in these southern campaigns. He was at this time only twenty-six years of age. He is described as short of stature, broad shouldered and muscular, of swarthy complexion, with a countenance lighted up by small, keen black eyes, the embodiment of ardent, prompt energy, and indomitable perseverance, that never pursued without overtaking ; always in front of his men ; as insensible to weariness as he was to fear. To be scrupulous was not one of his virtues. He soon, from friends or enemies, by money or by force, obtained horses for his dragoons.

April
14.

Thirty miles from Charleston, at Monk's Corner, General Huger and Colonel William Washington had two regiments of continental cavalry to guard the passes to the north country. On a dark night, Tarleton, guided by a negro, pounced upon them with his dragoons, and scattered them. Huger and Washington escaped, with some of their officers and men, but Tarleton took a hundred prisoners, and four hundred wagons laden with stores. Fort Moultrie surrendered, and soon after another division of American cavalry was almost annihilated by Tarleton, and Charleston was now completely invested.

As the defences of the town continued to fail in succession, Lincoln thought to abandon the place, and force



Daniel Boone

his way through the enemy ; but the superiority of the besiegers in number and position rendered that impossible. The British fleet was ready to pour ruin upon the devoted town. Clinton had thrown up intrenchments across the neck, and at this crisis Cornwallis arrived from New York with three thousand fresh troops.

CHAP.
XXXVI

1780.

April
18.

On the ninth of May commenced a terrible cannonade from two hundred cannons. All night long bombshells poured upon the town, which at one time was on fire in five different places. The morning dawned, but no hope dawned for the besieged. Their guns were nearly all dismounted, their works in ruins, the soldiers exhausted by fatigue. The fleet moved to a position much nearer. The following night an offer to capitulate was sent to Clinton. Negotiations commenced, which resulted in the surrender of the garrison as prisoners of war ; the militia were to be dismissed on their parole, not to engage again in the war ; with the promise, that so long as they kept their parole, their persons and property should be secure. The whole number of prisoners was about six thousand.

May
12.

This was an irreparable loss to the patriots. Immediately after Clinton sent off three expeditions ; one to intercept Colonel Beaufort, who was approaching with a Virginia regiment to the aid of Charleston ; a second toward Augusta, and the third toward Camden. He also issued a proclamation, threatening terrible punishments on those who would not submit. This was soon after followed by another, which offered pardon to all those who would return to their allegiance, and assist in restoring the royal authority.

When Beaufort heard of the loss of Charleston he commenced to retreat ; but there was no escaping Tarleton, who made a forced march of one hundred and five miles in fifty-four hours. He surprised Beaufort at Waxhaw's, on the boundary of North Carolina, and scattered his men, giving them no quarter, but treating them in the

CHAP. most cruel and barbarous manner. This act has left a
XXXVI. stain upon his reputation.

1780. The other detachments passed through the country, meeting with no resistance, as the people felt it would be useless to attack them. In a short time another proclamation was issued, calling upon all, except those actually taken in arms, to renounce their parole, and take the oath of allegiance. During this time, the negroes in great numbers deserted their masters and fled to the British.

June. South Carolina thus conquered, Clinton returned to New York, leaving Cornwallis to hold the country in subjection.

Incidents show the spirit of the times. The Rev. James Caldwell, a Presbyterian clergyman, was pastor of a church at Elizabethtown. He had excited the ire of the Tories and British by his ardent appeals in the cause of his country. When he preached he would lay his pistols beside him : his eloquence stirred the people, with whom his popularity was unbounded. His church, a sort of rallying point, had been used by the American soldiers as a shelter, while its bell gave the alarm when the enemy approached. The Tories called him a "frantic priest," and "rebel firebrand ;" but the people spoke of him as "a rousing gospel preacher." During the winter a marauding company of the British and Tories from New York burned the church, and Caldwell removed his family to Connecticut Farms.

June 5. After Knyphausen heard of the capture of Charleston, thinking that event would have an influence upon the people of Jersey, he set out on an expedition, landing at Elizabethtown, and penetrated as far as Connecticut Farms. He met, at every step, with the most determined opposition ; but, nevertheless, the village was sacked and burned. Mrs. Caldwell, in the midst of the terror and confusion, retired to a room in the rear of the parsonage, and knelt in prayer, having by the hand one of her chil-

dren. Presently some one fired through the window, and she fell dead, pierced by two balls. The church and parsonage were both burned. Knyphausen, harassed by the militia, made an inglorious retreat.

CHAP.
XXXVI
1780

Meantime, the atrocious murder of Mrs. Caldwell roused a spirit of revenge, unprecedented in its influence. She was highly connected and universally beloved; the murder was thought to have been designed. Caldwell preached more "rousing" sermons than ever. Three weeks later, Washington moved some of his forces toward the Highlands, and Knyphausen once more landed in Jersey, and pushed on toward Springfield, hoping to gain the passes beyond Morristown; but alarm-guns spread the news of his approach, and General Greene, who had been left in command, was on the alert. Knyphausen found as much opposition as on the other occasion. The Jersey regiment, commanded by Dayton, and of which Caldwell was chaplain, was engaged in the battle. The soldiers were in want of wadding, and the chaplain galloped to the Presbyterian church, and brought a quantity of Watts' psalm and hymn books and distributed them for the purpose among the soldiers. "Now," cried he, "put Watts into them, boys!"¹ The Americans increasing, Knyphausen, after burning the village of Springfield, effected another inglorious retreat.

The Baron De Kalb was sent, soon after the surrender of Lincoln, to take command of the army South, and all the continental troops south of Pennsylvania were detached for that service. In the midst of these discouragements, Lafayette returned from his visit to France. He brought intelligence that a French fleet, with an army on board, had sailed to America, and also there might be

March

¹ Washington Irving

CHAP. expected soon a supply of arms and clothing from the
XXXVI same source.

1780. The several States were now urged to send forward
May. their quotas of men and provisions, to enable the army to co-operate with the French. In the camp there was almost a famine ; a Connecticut regiment was on the point of marching home, where they could obtain provisions. Congress was laboring to borrow money in Holland in order to supply these wants.

July A French fleet, consisting of seven ships of the line, and also frigates and transports, at length appeared at Newport. This was the first division, consisting of six thousand land troops. To avoid disputes that might arise from military etiquette, Count Rochambeau, their commander, was instructed to put himself under the command of Washington. The expected supplies of arms and clothing did not arrive, and for the want of them, the American army could not co-operate in an attack upon New York.

The French fleet was followed by one from England, of equal strength, and now Clinton, trusting to his superior naval force, made preparations to attack the French at Newport ; but as he and Admiral Arbuthnot could not agree as to the plan, the project was abandoned. The British, instead, blockaded the French. News came, not long after, that the second division designed for the United States was blockaded at Brest by another British squadron. Thus, for the third time, the Americans were disappointed in their hopes of aid from the French fleet, and, instead, the militia of New England was called out to defend it at Newport.

In the South was the quietness that reigns in a conquered country ; but the unsubdued spirit of the patriots was soon aroused by their partisan leaders,—Sumter, Clarke, Pickens, and Francis Marion, the latter a Huguenot by descent, and who had served against the Cherokees

at the close of the French war. These leaders, with their bands, generally horsemen, scoured the country, and improved every opportunity to make a dash at parties of British or Tories. At first they were almost destitute of arms ; these their ingenuity partially supplied by converting scythes and knives fastened to poles into lances ; wood saws into broadswords, while the women cheerfully gave their pewter dishes to be melted into bullets ; from nitre found in caverns in the mountains, and charcoal burned upon their hearths, they made their powder. So effectually did they conduct this irregular warfare, that ere long foraging parties of the enemy dared not venture far from the main army. If these patriots were repulsed in one place, they would suddenly appear in another, as vigorous as ever. While Sumter—characterized by Cornwallis, as the South Carolina “Game Cock”—with his band, was on the Catawba, Marion—known as the “Swamp Fox”—was issuing, “with his ragged followers,” from the swamps along the Lower Peedee.

CHAP.
XXXVI
1780.

Congress now resolved to send General Gates to take command of the southern army. Great expectations were raised when it was known that the conqueror of Burgoyne was about to assume the command. But General Charles Lee remarked, “That his northern laurels would soon be changed into southern willows.”

De Kalb, with the regiments under his command, retarded by want of provisions, moved slowly south. His soldiers could only by great exertion obtain their necessary supplies in the barren region through which they passed. Because of this want, he was forced to halt three weeks on Deep River, one of the upper tributaries of Cape Fear River ; there Gates overtook him, and assumed the command. Contrary to the advice of De Kalb and his officers, who recommended a circuitous route through the fertile and friendly county of Mecklenburg, Gates imme-

CHAI
XXXVI.

1780.

Aug.
13.

diately gave orders to march direct on Camden. He said the wagons coming from the north, and laden with provisions, would overtake them in two days. They marched through a region of pine barrens interspersed with swamps, and almost destitute of inhabitants. Their only food was green corn, unripe apples and peaches, and such lean wild cattle as chance threw in their way. The wagons never overtook them, but disease did, and the suffering soldiers were greatly enfeebled. After a toilsome march of nearly three weeks, he encamped at Clermont, about twelve miles from Camden. His army had increased almost daily, principally from North Carolina and Virginia, and now numbered nearly four thousand, of whom two-thirds were continentals.

Lord Rawdon, when he heard of the approach of Gates, retreated and concentrated his forces at Camden, at which place Cornwallis had just arrived from Charleston to take command.

Aug.
16.

Gates made a move the following night to take a position nearer Camden, and Cornwallis made a similar move to surprise Gates. The advance guards met in the woods; after some skirmishing, both armies halted till morning. With the dawn, the battle commenced. The British rushed on with fixed bayonets against the centre of the American army, where the militia were posted; they fled immediately, throwing down their arms lest they should be encumbered in their headlong flight. Gates himself and Governor Caswell were both carried off the field by the torrent of fugitives. The continentals stood their ground firmly, until their brave commander, De Kalb, who had received eleven wounds, fell exhausted—then they also gave way.

The American army was completely routed, scattered in small parties, and in all directions. Their loss, in slain and prisoners, was nearly eighteen hundred, besides all their baggage and artillery. The road was strewed with

the dead and wounded, the work of the British cavalry, which the impetuous Tarleton urged on in pursuit of the fugitives for twenty-eight miles.

CHAP.
XXXVI

1780

Certain of victory, Gates imprudently made no arrangements for a retreat, or the preservation of his stores, but instead, he met with the most disastrous defeat ever experienced by an American army. Truly, his northern laurels had degenerated into southern willows ! A few days after the battle, he arrived with about two hundred followers at Charlotte, in North Carolina.

De Kalb was found by the British on the field still alive ; his aide-de-camp, De Buysson, would not leave him, but generously suffered himself to be taken prisoner. The Baron lingered for a few days. His last moments were employed in dictating a letter to the officers and men of his division, expressing for them his warmest affection.

Some days before the late battle, Sumter fell upon a convoy of supplies approaching Camden for the British, and took two hundred prisoners. When Cornwallis heard of it, he sent Tarleton in pursuit, who rode so hard, that half his men and horses broke down. When he arrived on the Catawba, Sumter had reason to think himself beyond pursuit, and halted to refresh his men, when he was completely taken by surprise, his company routed, and his prisoners rescued. Thus, within three months, two American armies had been defeated, and scattered in every direction.

Gates continued to retreat toward the North, having now about a thousand men. Maryland and Virginia made great exertions to recruit the army, but with little success.

Cornwallis, instead of conciliating the people by clemency, excited them to intense hostility by cruelty. Of the prisoners taken at Sumter's defeat, there were some who had given their parole not to engage in the war ; a portion of these were hanged upon the spot. There was

CHAP.
XXXVI.

1780.

more revenge and hatred exhibited in the South by the Whigs and Tories against each other, than in any other section of the States. The severity of Cornwallis, however, did not deter the patriots from action. Marion was still in the field, and the untiring Sumter soon collected another force, with which he harassed the enemy.

Washington wished to strike a decisive blow, and he invited Rochambeau, who was commanding the French troops at Newport, to meet him at Hartford, to devise a plan of attack upon New York. After consultation, it was found that the French naval force was insufficient to cope with the British fleet at New York. Accordingly, the French Admiral on the West India station was invited to co-operate ; and, until he could be heard from, the enterprise was postponed.

While Washington was thus absent from headquarters, a nefarious plot, which had been in train for some months, came to light. One of the bravest officers of the American army was about to tarnish his fair name as a patriot, and bring upon it the scorn and contempt of all honorable men. It was discovered that Arnold had promised to betray into the hands of the enemy the important fortress of West Point. The wounds he had received at the battle of Behmus's Heights had unfitted him for active service, and he was placed in command at Philadelphia. There he lived in a very extravagant style ; involved himself in debts, to pay which he engaged in privateering and mercantile speculations, most of which were unsuccessful. He was accused of using the public funds, and condemned by a court-martial to receive a reprimand from the Commander-in-chief, who performed the unpleasant duty as delicately as possible. Yet Arnold felt the disgrace, and determined to be revenged. While in Philadelphia he married into a Tory family, which opened a way to an intercourse with British officers. His



JEAN DE VIMEUR, COMTE DE ROCHAMBEAU.

merits as an officer were great, but Congress evidently took into consideration his private character. The members from Connecticut knew him well. He was proverbially dishonest in his dealings, disregarded the rights of others, indifferent as to what men thought of his integrity, and to those under him cruel and tyrannical. In consequence of these inexcusable faults many distrusted him. The question has been raised, Why did Washington trust Arnold? Evidently, because he knew him only as an efficient and brave officer. It is not probable any person took the liberty of whispering to the Commander-in-chief the defects of Arnold's private character. We know that during his whole life, Washington was governed by the principle of appointing to office none but honest men.

CHAP
XXXVI
1780.

In the midst of his troubles, Arnold's selfishness became superior to his patriotism, and he opened a correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, under the signature of Gustavus. For months this continued, when he made himself known. In the mean time, he applied to Washington and obtained the command of West Point, with the full intention of betraying that important post.

Aug
3

In the British army was a young man of pleasing address; accomplished in mental acquirements, and as amiable as he was brave. Disappointed in love, he had joined the army and made fame the object of his ambition; as capable of planning the amusements for a ball or a masquerade as of fulfilling the duties of his office—that of adjutant-general. He won many friends, and with Sir Henry Clinton was a special favorite. It devolved upon this young man, Major John Andre, to answer the letters of "Gustavus." This he did under the feigned name of "John Anderson." When Arnold revealed his true character, Andre volunteered to go up the Hudson on board the sloop-of-war Vulture, to have an interview with him, and make the final arrangements for carrying out the treachery

CHAP.
XXXVI.1780.
Sept.
21.Sept.
23.

The Vulture came to anchor a short distance below the American lines. Thence a flag was sent to Arnold, giving him the information. In the evening the latter sent a boat to bring Andre ashore. The night passed, however, before their plans were arranged, and Andre was compelled, though very unwillingly, to pass the next day within the American lines. During the day the Vulture attracted the attention of some American gunners, who began to fire upon her, and she dropped down the stream. For some unexplained reason, the man who had brought Andre ashore refused to take him back to the sloop, and he was forced to return to New York by land. He changed his uniform for a citizen's dress, and with a pass from Arnold, under the name of John Anderson, set out. Passing to the east side of the river, he travelled on unmolested until he came in the vicinity of Tarrytown. There he was arrested by three young men, John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart. They asked him some questions, and he, supposing them Tories, did not produce his pass, but said he was "from below," meaning New York, and that he was a British officer, travelling on important business. When he found his mistake, he offered them his watch, his purse, and any amount of money, if they would let him pass. Their patriotism was not to be seduced. Paulding declared that if he would give ten thousand guineas he should not stir a step. In searching his person, they found in his boots papers of a suspicious character. They brought him to Colonel Jamison, the commanding officer on the lines at Peekskill. He recognized the handwriting as that of Arnold. The paper contained a description of West Point, and an account of its garrison. But he could not believe that his superior officer was guilty of treason, and had it not been for the protests of Major Talmadge, the second in command, he would have sent the prisoner to Arnold ; as it was, he sent him a letter giving an account of the arrest, and of

the papers found upon his person. The papers he sent by express to Washington, now on his way from Hartford. CHAP.
XXXVI

The letter came to Arnold while he was breakfasting with some officers, who had just returned from that place. Concealing his emotions, he rose from the table, called his wife out of the room, briefly told her he was a ruined man and must flee for his life. She fell insensible at his feet. He directed the messenger to attend to her, returned to the breakfast-room, excused himself on the plea that he must hasten to the fort to receive the Commander-in-chief. Then seizing the messenger's horse, which stood ready saddled, he rode with all speed to the river, sprang into his boat, and ordered the men to row to the Vulture. Thence he wrote to Washington, begging him to protect his wife, who, he protested, was innocent of any participation in what he had done. 1780.

When Andre heard that Arnold was safe, he wrote to Washington, confessing the whole affair. He was immediately brought to trial under the charge of being within the American lines, as a spy. Though cautioned to say nothing to criminate himself, he confessed the whole, and on his own confession he was found guilty. The commission to try him was presided over by General Greene. Lafayette and Steuben were also members of it. Andre protested that he had been induced to enter the American lines by the misrepresentations of Arnold. Clinton made every effort to save his favorite. The amiableness of Andre's private character enlisted much sympathy in his behalf. And Washington wished, if possible, to spare him; but a higher duty forbid it. Inexorable martial law denied him his last request, that he might be shot as a soldier, and not hanged as a spy. Sept.
29.

Cornwallis at length commenced his march toward North Carolina. His army was in three divisions; one of which, under Colonel Patrick Ferguson, was to move Oct.
2.
Sept.

CHAP.
XXXVI.

1780.

to the west near the mountains, to intimidate the Whigs, and enroll the numerous Tories said to be in that region. The cavalry, and a portion of the light troops, under Tarleton, were to move up the Catawba, while the main body, under Cornwallis himself, was to take the route by way of Charlotte, Salisbury, and Hillsborough, through the region in which the Whigs were very numerous. This was with the expectation of forming a juncture with troops sent to the lower Chesapeake from New York. As soon as the British army began its march, the Whigs sprang into activity, and harassed them ; scarcely did an express sent from any division of the army escape being shot or taken. Cornwallis declared Charlotte " the hornet's nest of North Carolina."

Ferguson, the son of a Scotch judge of eminence, had entered the army from the love of military life, had seen service in Germany, and was deemed by Cornwallis an excellent officer. He excelled in the use of the rifle, and in training others to the use of that weapon. He was generous and humane ; in any enterprise persevering and cool. Over his company of light-infantry regulars he had control, and restrained them from deeds of violence ; but he was joined by a rabble of desperadoes and rancorous Tories. As they passed through the country, these Tories committed outrages upon the inhabitants. He met with scarcely any opposition. But information of these outrages and of his approach had spread rapidly throughout the region. Little did Ferguson think that at this time, when he neither saw nor heard of an enemy—for all his expresses were cut off—that from the distant hills and valleys of the Clinch and the Holston, and from the eastern spurs of the mountains, companies of mounted backwoodsmen—their only baggage a knapsack and blanket, their only weapon a rifle—were passing silently through the forests to a place of rendezvous in his front. The most formidable of these were from Tennessee and Kentucky,

under Colonels Sevier and Shelby,—afterward first gov- CHAP
XXXVI
ernors of those States.

Rumors stole into his camp that these half-farmers 1780.
and graziers and half-hunters were assembling ; but he
scouted the idea that they could oppose him ; though,
when he received more correct information, he began to
retreat as rapidly as possible. He had not been long on
his way when this motley host, three thousand strong,
came together. They held a council ; they were not to
be baffled ; about nine hundred mounted their fleetest
horses and started in pursuit. They rode for thirty-six
hours, part of the time through a drenching rain, dis-
mounting but once. Ferguson was astonished at their
perseverance. He pushed for a strong position on King's
Mountain, near the Catawba. This mountain rises almost
like a cone ; its top was sparsely covered with tall forest
trees, while at the base they were more dense. On the
level space on the top he arranged his men, saying, with
an oath, that the "rebels" could not drive him from his
position.

Oct
9.

The backwoodsmen approached, reconnoitred, held a
council, then dismounted to attack the enemy in three
divisions—in front, and on the right and left flanks. The
battle soon commenced, the Americans crept up the sides
of the mountain, and with deliberate aim poured in their
deadly bullets. Ferguson, on a white charger, rode round
and round the crest of the hill, and cheered his men. No
impression was made on the assailants. He ordered the
regulars to charge bayonet, and they drove the left division
down the side of the mountain—for the backwoodsmen
had no bayonets. Presently the regulars were taken in
flank, and they retreated to the top, where, by this time,
the second division had clambered up. This they drove
back also ; but before the regulars, now almost exhausted,
could regain their position, the third division was on the
plain. Thus it was, as often as a division retired before

CHAP.
XXXVI.

1790.

the bayonet, another gave relief. Ferguson passed from point to point, and cheered and rallied his men ; but suddenly his white charger was seen dashing down the mountain-side without a rider : he had fallen by a rifle-ball. The animating spirit was gone ; the British and Tories grounded their arms and surrendered at discretion. Three hundred had been killed or wounded, and more than eight hundred were made prisoners. The backwoodsmen lost but twenty slain and a somewhat larger number wounded. Ten of the Tories, who had been especially cruel toward their countrymen, were hanged upon the spot.

The backwoodsmen disbanded and returned home ; their victory had revived the drooping spirits of the southern patriots. The battle of King's Mountain bore the same relation to Cornwallis, that the battle of Bennington did to Burgoyne ; and both were won by the undisciplined yeomanry.

When Cornwallis heard of the defeat of Ferguson he retreated from Salisbury to Winnsborough, in South Carolina. In one portion of the country Marion appeared, but Tarleton forced him to retreat to the swamps. Then the active Sumter appeared in force again, and repulsed a detachment sent against him. Tarleton went in pursuit, but Sumter learned of his approach, and began to retreat rapidly, while Tarleton pressed on with his usual vigor. Sumter chose an advantageous position ; Tarleton attacked him, but was repulsed, and in turn forced to retreat. Sumter was severely wounded ; he was compelled to retire for some months ; his band, in the mean time, separated.

Gates now advanced South to Charlotte. Here he was overtaken by Greene, who, on the suggestion of Washington, had been appointed by Congress to the command of the southern army. Congress had also ordered an inquiry into the conduct of Gates.

Greene found the remnants of the army in a miserable

condition, without pay, without necessities, and their clothes in rags. To increase the army, divisions were sent from the North. Morgan with a regiment, Lee's body of horse, and some companies of artillery, were with Gates when Greene arrived.

CHAP.
XXXVI
1780.

During this time, a civil war, almost savage in its character, was raging all over the Carolinas. Little parties of Whigs and Tories fought with each other whenever they met ; they ravaged each others' neighborhoods, and plundered the people of their furniture, and even of their clothes.

The year was about to end, with the British power triumphant in the three southern States. In Georgia the royal government was re-established, while the important points held in the Carolinas gave the enemy almost the entire control of those States. The numerous Tories were exultant, while the whole country was nearly exhausted by the long continuance of the war.

During the summer of this year, it was thought England would find abundant employment for her armies and navy nearer home. Because she had the power, by means of a vast navy, she assumed the right to board the ships of any neutral nation, and to search for merchandise contraband of war—a practice as arbitrary and arrogant as it was unjust and injurious. Queen Catharine, of Russia, would submit no longer to the imposition. She proposed to enter into a combination, known as the "Armed Neutrality," with Denmark and Sweden, to enforce the policy that "Free ships make free goods." That, in time of war, ships of neutral nations could carry merchandise without liability to seizure by the belligerent powers. The British ministry hesitated to enlist the whole maritime world against their commerce, that was already suffering much. Holland gave indications that she was willing, not only to join the "armed neutrality," but to enter into a commercial treaty with the United States. This inten-

7HAP.
XXXVI.

1780.

tion became known by the capture of a correspondence on the subject. The vessel on board of which Henry Laurens, the American Minister to Holland, had sailed, was captured by an English frigate. Laurens threw the papers overboard, but an English sailor leaped into the water and recovered them.

Laurens was descended from one of the many Huguenot families that sought an asylum in South Carolina ; nor did he belie the nobleness of his ancestry. He was taken to England and confined a close prisoner in the Tower of London, on a charge of high treason, plied with inducements to desert his country's cause, but without avail. He stood firm, and was finally liberated, to proceed to Paris, there to aid in negotiating a treaty with England herself, on behalf of his country, which had fought its way to independence.

The British ministry demanded that this correspondence should be disavowed, but the States-General, with their usual coolness, gave an evasive answer. England declared war immediately, and her fleet exhibited their thirst for plunder by entering at once on a foray against the commerce of Holland throughout the world.

England now had reason to be alarmed at surrounding dangers. Spain joined France, and their combined fleets far outnumbered hers in the West Indies. Holland declared war against her, while nearer home there was danger. Eighty thousand Irishmen had volunteered to repel a threatened invasion from France ; but now these volunteers, with arms in their hands, were clamoring against the oppression that England exercised over their industry and commerce, and threatened to follow the example of the American colonies in not using British manufactures ; and, what was still more ominous, demanded that the Irish Parliament should be independent of English control. The whole world was affected by these struggles. Spain sent her ships to prey upon English commerce, and

an army to besiege the English garrison at Gibraltar. CHAP.
France had armies against her in America and in India— XXXVI
both aiding rebellious subjects. To meet these over- 1780
whelming powers, England put forth gigantic efforts. We
must admire the indomitable spirit, that steady energy,
with which she repelled her enemies, and held the world
at bay.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION—CONTINUED.

The Spirit of Revolt among the Soldiers.—Arnold ravages the Shores of the Chesapeake.—Battle of the Cowpens.—Morgan retreats; Cornwallis pursues.—Greene marches South.—Lee scatters the Tories.—Battle of Guildford Court House.—Conflict at Hobkirk's Hill.—The Execution of Hayne.—Battle of Eutaw Springs.—Plans to Capture New York.—Wayne's Daring at the James River.—National Finances.—Robert Morris.—French and American Armies on the Hudson.—Clinton deceived.—Combined Armies beyond the Delaware.—French Fleet in the Chesapeake.—Cornwallis in the Toils.—The Attack; Surrender of the British Army and Navy.—Thanksgivings.

CHAP.
XXXVII.

1781.

Jan.
1.

THE last year of the struggle for Independence opened, as had all the others, with exhibitions of distress among the soldiers. The regiments of the Pennsylvania line, encamped for the winter near Morristown, grew impatient at the indifference of Congress to their necessities. In truth, that body was more or less distracted by factions, and made no special efforts to relieve the wants of the soldiers. Thirteen hundred of these men, indignant at such neglect, broke out in open revolt, and under the command of their sergeants, marched off toward Philadelphia, to lay their complaints before Congress.

General Wayne, to prevent their pillaging, sent after them provisions; he himself soon followed, and urged them to return to their duty. The sergeants, at his instance, proposed to send a deputation to Congress, and to the Pennsylvania Assembly, but the soldiers refused to

entertain the proposition, and persisted in going themselves. Though thus mutinous, they scorned the thought of turning "Arnolds," as they expressed it, but promptly arrested as spies two Tory emissaries sent by Sir Henry Clinton to tamper with their fidelity. These emissaries were soon after hanged. Wayne in his zeal placed himself before the mutineers and cocked his pistols. In an instant their bayonets were at his breast. They besought him not to fire, saying: "We love, we respect you, but you are a dead man if you fire. Do not mistake us; we are not going to the enemy; were they now to come out you would see us fight under your orders, with as much resolution and alacrity as ever."

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781.

Intelligence of this revolt excited great alarm in Philadelphia. Congress sent a committee, which was accompanied by Reed, the President of Pennsylvania, to meet the insurgents and induce them to return to their duty. The committee proposed to relieve their present wants, to give them certificates for the remainder of their pay, and to indemnify them for the loss they had sustained by the depreciation of the continental money. Permission was also given to those who had served three years to withdraw from the army. On these conditions the soldiers returned to the ranks. When offered a reward for delivering up the British emissaries sent to corrupt them, they refused it, saying: "We ask no reward for doing our duty to our country."

The discontent spread. Three weeks after this affair, the New Jersey line also revolted; but that was suppressed by a strong hand in a few days. So much discontent in the army spread consternation throughout the country; not, however, without a salutary effect. The patriots were awakened to make greater exertions to provide for the necessities of the soldiers. Their self-denials, labors, and sufferings had been too long overlooked.

Urgent demands were now sent to all the States,

CHAP.
XXXVII.

1781

especially those of New England, to furnish the army with the proper necessaries. To encourage enlistments, some of the States promised to provide for the families of the soldiers, and Congress endeavored to obtain a foreign loan.

Arnold, as the reward of his treachery, received fifty thousand dollars, and the commission of brigadier-general in the British army. Lost to shame, he put forth a "Proclamation to the officers and soldiers of the Continental Army." He contrasted their privations and want of pay with the comforts and full pay of the British soldiers, and offered every man who should desert to the royal cause, fifteen dollars as a bounty, and full pay thereafter. The "proclamation" had no other effect than to increase the detestation in which the soldiers held the traitor.

Jan. Clinton sent Arnold with sixteen hundred men, British and Tories, to ravage the coasts of Virginia. Thomas Jefferson, who was then governor, called out the militia to defend Richmond; but only about two hundred men could be raised, and with great difficulty most of the public stores were removed. After Arnold had taken possession of the town, he proposed to spare it, if permitted to bring up the ships and load them with the tobacco found in the place. Jefferson promptly rejected the proposition. Arnold destroyed a great amount of private property, burned the public buildings, and some private dwellings. He then dropped down the river, landing occasionally to burn and destroy.

Baron Steuben, who was at this time in Virginia enlisting soldiers for Greene's army, had not an adequate force to repel the invaders. Washington sent to his aid Lafayette, with twelve hundred men, principally from New England and Jersey. They hoped to capture Arnold. On the same errand, two French ships of war contrived to enter the Chesapeake. Soon after, the whole

French fleet, with troops on board, sailed from Newport for the same place. A British fleet followed from New York, and an indecisive engagement took place between them off the entrance to the bay. The French fleet, worsted in the fight, returned to Newport, while the British entered the bay and reinforced Arnold with two thousand men, under General Phillips, who had recently been exchanged for General Lincoln. Phillips assumed the command, much to the satisfaction of the British officers, who disliked to serve under the traitor.

CHAP.
XXXVII
1781.

Thus, for the fourth time, the French fleet failed to co-operate with the American land-forces; in consequence of which Lafayette was compelled to halt on his way at Annapolis.

Phillips, having now a superior force, sent detachments up the rivers and ravaged their shores. One of the vessels sailed up the Potomac as far as Mount Vernon. The manager of the estate saved the houses from being burned by furnishing supplies. Washington reproved him in a letter, saying, he "would prefer the buildings should be burned, than to save them by the pernicious practice of furnishing supplies to the enemy."

Mar.
26.

Cornwallis, who was at Winnsborough, detached Tarleton, with about a thousand troops, cavalry and light-infantry, to cut off Morgan's division, which was in the region between the Broad and Catawba rivers. When Morgan heard of Tarleton's approach, he retired toward the Broad River, intending to cross it. Tarleton pursued with his usual rapidity. Morgan saw that he must be overtaken; he halted, refreshed his men, and prepared for the conflict. He chose his ground at a place known as "The Cowpens," about thirty miles west of King's Mountain, and thus named because herds of cattle were pastured in that portion of the Thicketty mountains. The two armies were about equal in numbers. More than half of Morgan's were North and South Carolina militia, under

Jan
17.

CHAP.
XXXVII.

1781.

Colonel Pickens. Morgan disposed his men to the best advantage ; the Continentals on a woody hill, and the militia in a line by themselves. He was deficient in cavalry, but placed what he had under Colonel Washington, as a reserve. The British and Tories, though fatigued by their last night's march, were confident of victory ; they rushed on with shouts. The militia stood their ground, delivered their fire, but quailing before the bayonet, they broke and fled. In pursuing the fugitives, the enemy almost passed by the Continentals, who, to avoid being taken in flank, fell back in order. This movement the British mistook for a retreat, and they commenced a vigorous pursuit, but when they approached within thirty yards, the Continentals suddenly wheeled, poured in a deadly volley, then charged bayonet, completely routed them, and captured their colors and cannon. Mean time the British cavalry, under Tarleton himself, continued the pursuit of the militia. While thus rushing on in confusion, the American cavalry attacked them in flank, and routed them also. These two repulses occurred almost at the same time, but in different parts of the field. The enemy were routed beyond recovery, and the Americans pursued them vigorously. The fiery Tarleton, accompanied by a few followers, barely escaped capture. Of his eleven hundred men he lost six hundred, while Morgan's loss was less than eighty.

When Cornwallis, who was only twenty-five miles distant, heard of Tarleton's defeat, he at once determined upon his course. He thought that Morgan, encumbered with prisoners and spoils, would linger for some time near the scene of his victory. He therefore destroyed his baggage, converted his entire army into light troops, and with all his force set out in pursuit. His object was twofold ; to rescue the prisoners, and crush Morgan before he could cross the Catawba and unite his force with that of General Greene

Morgan was too watchful to be thus caught. He knew Cornwallis would pursue him, and he left his wounded under a flag of truce, and hurried on to the Catawba, and crossed over. Two hours had scarcely elapsed before the British vanguard appeared on the opposite bank. A sudden rise in the river detained Cornwallis two days; in the mean time Morgan sent off his prisoners, and refreshed his men.

When Greene heard of Morgan's victory, he put his troops in motion, and two days after the passage of the Catawba joined him and assumed the command. He was not yet able to meet the enemy, and the retreat was continued toward the Yadkin, the upper course of the Peedee. His encumbered army could move but slowly; just as his rear-guard was embarking on the river, the British van came up. A skirmish ensued, in which the Americans lost a few baggage wagons. To-morrow, thought Cornwallis, I shall secure the prize; and he halted for the night to rest his weary soldiers. The rain had poured in torrents, and in the morning the river was so much swollen, that his army could not ford it, and Greene had secured all the boats on the other side. The latter, though here joined by other divisions, dared not risk a battle with his unrelenting pursuers. He called out the militia in the neighborhood to check the enemy at the fords, and hurried on to cross the river Dan into Virginia, whence alone he could receive recruits and supplies. General Morgan, on account of illness, now withdrew from the army, and Greene left Colonel Otho H. Williams, with some light-armed troops, to keep the pursuers in check.

As soon as possible Cornwallis crossed the Yadkin; if the Americans could get beyond the Dan they would be safe, and he strained every nerve to cut them off. He supposed they could not cross at the lower ferries for want of boats, and that they must go higher up the stream, where it could be forded. With this impression he pushed

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781

Feb.
8.

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781.

Feb
14.

for the upper fords, and Colonel Williams kept up his delusion by manœuvring before him in that direction. But the judicious Greene, anticipating the movement, had taken measures to collect boats at the lower ferries, and sent forward Kosciusko to throw up breastworks to defend them. He now urged on his weary soldiers, at the rate of thirty miles a day, reached the ferries, and carried over his main body, and the baggage. Meanwhile, when they had sufficiently retarded the pursuers, by breaking down bridges and carrying off provisions, the light-troops, as if for the night, kindled their camp-fires in sight of the foe ; then dashed off, and by a rapid march of forty miles, reached the ferries and passed over. In a few hours, the van of the British appeared on the opposite bank. Cornwallis, in his movement toward the upper fords, had gone twenty-five miles out of his way. After a chase of more than two hundred miles, the object of his pursuit lay in sight, but the waters between could not be forded, nor could boats be obtained. As the two armies rested in sight of each other, how different were their emotions ! The one overflowing with gratitude, the other chafed with disappointment.

The half-clad Americans had toiled for nearly four weeks over roads partially frozen, through drenching rains, without tents at night ; multitudes were without shoes, and in this instance, as in many others during the war, their way could be tracked in bloody foot-prints. Twice had the waters, through which they had safely passed, risen and become impassable to their pursuers, and again a river swollen by recent rains lay between them. Was it strange, that those who were accustomed to notice the workings of Providence, believed that He who orders all things, had specially interposed His arm for the salvation of the patriots ?

After resting his soldiers—who, if they were compelled to march rapidly, were comfortably clad—Cornwallis com-

menced to move slowly back. He and his officers were greatly mortified at their want of success ; they had made great sacrifices in destroying their private stores, that when thus freed from encumbrances, they could overtake the Americans and completely disperse them. A few days later, he took post at Hillsborough, whence he issued another of his famous proclamations.

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781

General Greene refreshed his troops, of whom he wrote to Washington, that they were “in good spirits, notwithstanding their sufferings and excessive fatigue.” He then repassed the Dan, and boldly marched in pursuit, to encourage the Whigs of the Carolinas, and prevent the Tories from rising.

It was rumored that Tarleton was enlisting and organizing great numbers of Tories in the district between the Haw and Deep rivers. General Greene sent Colonels Lee and Pickens, with their cavalry, against him. On their way they met three or four hundred mounted Tories, who mistook their men for Tarleton’s, and came riding up, shouting “Long live the king !” It was for them a sad mistake. The Americans made no reply, but surrounded them, and without mercy cut them to pieces. Another exhibition of that deadly rancor that prevailed in the South between the Whigs and the royalists. This check taught the Tories caution, and materially diminished their enlistments. Many others, on their way to the British camp, when they heard of this conflict, returned to their homes.

Mar.
2.

Cornwallis, almost destitute of supplies, changed his position, and moved further South. Greene cautiously followed, not daring, from very weakness, to risk an engagement with the enemy’s veterans, except when they were in small parties. As for himself, he was so watchful against surprise, that he never remained more than one day in the same place, and never communicated to any one beforehand where he expected to encamp.

Feb
26.

CHAP.
XXXVII.

1781. Fresh troops, in the mean time, were gradually joining him from Virginia and Maryland, and when his force amounted to four thousand, he left his baggage seventeen miles in the rear, and approached the enemy to give them battle. It was in the vicinity of Guilford Court House

Mar. 15. He drew his army up in two lines ; the militia, in whom he had little confidence, as they were apt to give way at the first charge, he placed behind a fence, and stationed sentries in the rear, with orders to shoot the first man who should run. The battle was fought in a region covered with thick woods, with cleared fields interspersed. The North Carolina militia could not withstand the shock of the British charge, but threw down their arms and fled. The Virginia militia, under Colonel Stevens, stood their ground, and for a time kept up a destructive fire ; but they too were compelled to yield to the bayonet. Now the enemy pressed on in pursuit, but presently Colonel Washington charged them with his horse, and drove them back. Then again the British artillery opened upon the American pursuers, and they in turn were checked. Greene depended much on his Continentals, but one of the newly-raised Maryland regiments gave way before a battalion led by Colonel Stewart. The battalion was presently checked by Colonel Washington's cavalry, and the brave Stewart was himself slain. It was impossible to retrieve what the North Carolina militia had lost, and Greene ordered a retreat, which he conducted with his usual skill.

Though Greene retreated from the field, Cornwallis was unable to pursue. More than a thousand of the militia deserted and returned home, and Greene's army was soon as weak as ever. This has been thought one of the severest battles of the whole war. "The wounded of both armies lay scattered over a wide space. There were no houses nor tents to receive them. The night that followed the battle was dark and tempestuous ; horrid shrieks re-

sounded through the woods ; many expired before morning. Such is war !”

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781.

April
7.

April
25.

Cornwallis's army was so broken by this battle, and weakened by desertions and sickness, that it numbered but about fourteen hundred men. He was compelled to abandon his position, and fall back to Wilmington, near the seaboard. After recruiting his men, Greene boldly marched into South Carolina, and advanced rapidly upon Camden, where Lord Rawdon with a small force held command. That central position was connected, on the one hand, with Charleston, and on the other with the strong forts of Ninety-Six and Augusta. Between these important points, there were several smaller posts. Lee and Marion were sent, with their cavalry, to attack some of these. Greene himself advanced within two miles of the British lines, and encamped at Hobkirk's Hill, near a swamp which covered his left. Rawdon thought to surprise the Americans, made a circuit of the swamp, and came suddenly upon the camp ; but the surprise was only partial. Greene promptly formed his line. In moving along a narrow passage, the British were exposed to a severe fire, and the American infantry were about to attack them in flank, while the horse, under Colonel Washington, moved to charge them in the rear. Rawdon brought up his reserve to counteract this movement. A regiment of Continentals, in the American centre, and upon whom Greene depended very much, unexpectedly gave way, and thus threw the army into confusion, and a retreat was ordered.

The loss on each side was nearly equal ; the Americans, however, brought off their cannon, and checked the pursuit. In the mean while several fortified places belonging to the British fell into the hands of Lee and Marion, thus breaking up the communication between Charleston and the interior.

Rawdon abandoned Camden, and retreated to Monk's Corner, in the vicinity of Charleston.

CHAP.
XXVII.

1781.

June
18

Greene marched against the strong post of Ninety-Six, but after besieging it for some time, he heard that Rawdon had been reinforced, and was then hastening to relieve it. After making a vigorous attempt to take the place by assault, he raised the siege and retreated across the Saluda. The heat had now become excessive, and both armies retired from active operations: the American on the hills of the Santee, and the British on the Congaree. The British had lost in the space of seven months the greater part of South Carolina, and were now restricted to the region between the Santee and the Lower Savannah. The partisan warfare continued, although the main armies were at rest.

The British resolved to execute as traitors those who had given their parole not to engage in the war or had received a protection, if they should be taken prisoners with arms in their hands. A distinguished citizen of Charleston, Colonel Isaac Hayne, had been taken prisoner at the capture of that city, but owing to family afflictions—a sick and dying wife and helpless children—he gave his parole to remain neutral, and was promised protection. In violation of this pledge, he was soon after ordered to take up arms against his countrymen. He refused; but instead deemed himself justified in again joining the American army.

He was again taken prisoner, and now condemned to die as a traitor. The inhabitants of Charleston, Whig and Tory, petitioned for his pardon, yet Rawdon refused, and Hayne was hanged. His execution was looked upon as contrary to military rule, cruel and unjust. In the minds of the Whigs the bitterest animosity was excited. Greene threatened to retaliate. The American soldiers were with difficulty restrained from putting to death the British officers whom they took prisoners.

When the heat of the weather somewhat abated, Greene moved from the hills up the Wateree to Camden,



Le^{re} Le Grasse

and thence across the Congaree and down it to the vicinity of Eutaw Springs. The British, now under Colonel Stuart, retired before him ; but the Americans surprised a large foraging party and took a number of prisoners. The remainder escaped and joined their main force, which immediately drew up in order of battle. Though the attack was made with great ardor, the enemy withstood it with determined bravery. The contest raged most fiercely around the artillery, which changed hands several times. The British left at length gave way, and the Americans pursued, but presently the fugitives took possession of a large stone house, surrounded by a picketed garden. From this place they could not be immediately dislodged. A British battalion, which had successfully resisted a charge of the Americans, suddenly appeared at the rear of the assailants. The latter, disconcerted by this movement, and thrown into confusion, began to retreat.

CHAP.
XXXVI.
1781.

Sept.
8.

The force of each army was about two thousand. The loss of the British was seven hundred, and that of the Americans about five hundred.

The victory was claimed by both parties, but the advantage was certainly on the side of the Americans. Colonel Stuart, the British commander, thought it prudent to fall back to the vicinity of Charleston. Greene retired again to the hills of Santee to refresh his men, who were wretchedly off for necessaries, being barefooted and half-clad, out of hospital stores, and nearly out of ammunition.

Greene's military talents had been severely tested during this campaign ; he was as successful in attacking as he was in avoiding his enemies. In no instance was he really equal to them in force and equipments ; but he never fought a battle that did not result more to his advantage than to that of the enemy. Their very victories were to them as injurious as ordinary defeats. It is not strange that he was the favorite officer of the Commander-in-chief.

CHAP
XXXVII.

1781.

May.

While these events were in progress in the South, a series of important operations were also in train in the North. There were two objects, one of which might be attained : New York might be taken, as its garrison had been much weakened by sending detachments to the South; or Cornwallis might be captured in Virginia. But neither of these could be accomplished without the aid of a French army as well as fleet. While the matter was under consideration, a frigate arrived from France bringing the Count De Barras, who was to command the French fleet at Newport, and also the cheering news that twenty ships of the line, under the Count de Grasse, with land forces on board, were shortly to sail for the West Indies, and that a portion of this fleet and forces might be expected on the coast of the United States in the course of a few months. Washington and the Count de Rochambeau had an interview at Weathersfield, Connecticut, to devise a plan of operations. They determined to make an attack upon New York. The French army was soon to be put in motion to form a junction with the American on the Hudson, and a frigate was despatched to inform the Count de Grasse of the plan, and to invite his coöperation.

July
6.

Clinton, suspecting the designs against New York, became alarmed, and ordered Cornwallis, who was at Williamsburg, Virginia, to send him a reinforcement of troops. To comply with this order, the latter marched toward Portsmouth. Lafayette and Steuben cautiously followed. Their men numbered about four thousand; the army of Cornwallis was much more numerous and better appointed. Lafayette intended to attack the rear-guard of the British when the main body had passed James River. Cornwallis suspected the design, and laid his plans to entrap the Marquis. He sent over a portion of his troops with the pack-horses, and so arranged them as to make a great display; then threw in the way of the Americans a negro

and a dragoon, who pretended to be deserters, and they announced that the main body of the British army had passed the river. Lafayette immediately detached Wayne with a body of riflemen and dragoons to commence the attack, while he himself should advance to his support.

CHAP.
XXXVII
1781.

Wayne moved forward, forced a picket, which designedly gave way, but presently he found himself close upon the main body of the enemy. In a moment he saw that he had been deceived. Wayne's daring nature decided his course: he at once ordered a charge to be sounded; his men, horse and foot, caught his spirit, and with shouts, as if sure of victory, they dashed against the enemy with great impetuosity, gallantly continued the fight for a short time, and then as rapidly retreated. The ruse succeeded admirably. Cornwallis, astounded at the boldness and vigor of the attack, hesitated to pursue, thinking the movement was designed to lead him into an ambushade. This delay enabled Lafayette to extricate himself from his dangerous position.

Cornwallis now crossed the river, but while the detachment designed for New York was embarking, a second communication was received from Clinton. He now announced the arrival of reinforcements of Hessians from Europe, and also directed Cornwallis to retain all his force, and choose some central position in Virginia, and there fortify himself. In accordance with this command, the latter chose the towns of Gloucester and Yorktown, situated opposite each other on York River. Here, with an army of eight thousand effective men, he threw up strong intrenchments, and also moored in the harbor a number of frigates and other vessels of war.

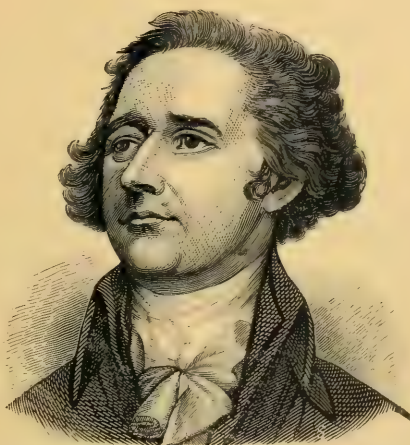
The financial affairs of the country continued in a deplorable condition. Congress hoped to remedy the evil by

CHAP.
XXXVII.

1781. appointing a single superintendent of finance, instead of the committee to whom it had hitherto been intrusted. Robert Morris, an eminent merchant of Philadelphia, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, received the appointment. He accepted the office only on the express condition, that all transactions should be in specie value. The results vindicated the wisdom of the choice ; the genius in furnishing the "sinews of war" was as efficient as that displayed by others in the field. At his instance Congress established the Bank of North America, with a capital of two millions of dollars, and to continue in force for ten years. The bank was pledged to redeem its notes in specie on presentation. This feature of the institution at once secured the confidence of the public, and the wealthy invested in it their funds. Operating by means of the bank, Morris raised the credit of Congress higher than it ever stood before ; and he was also enabled, in a great measure, to furnish supplies for the army and pay for the soldiers. Whenever public means failed he pledged his own credit.

Washington, on his return from the interview with Rochambeau, addressed letters to the authorities of New Jersey and New England, urging them in this emergency to furnish provisions and their quotas of men. But they were dilatory and unable to comply, and he had but five thousand effective men at Peekskill, and they would have been destitute of provisions, had it not been for the energy of Morris.

July. The French army had remained inactive eleven months at Newport ; it now moved to join Washington in the Highlands. Information was received from the Count de Grasse that he would shortly sail with a large fleet for the United States. Washington and Rochambeau hastened their preparations to coöperate with him upon his arrival in the proposed attack on New York. An intercepted letter gave Clinton the knowledge of these movements, and



A Hamilton

he was soon on the alert to defend the city. The British posts on Manhattan Island were reconnoitred by the Americans, the combined armies were encamped at Dobbs' Ferry and on the Greenburg hills, waiting for reinforcements and the Count de Grasse. Presently came a frigate from the Count to Newport with the intelligence that he intended to sail for the Chesapeake. This information disconcerted all their plans ; now they must direct their forces against Cornwallis. To accomplish this effectively Clinton must be deceived and Cornwallis kept in ignorance. To "misguide and bewilder" Sir Henry, a space for a large encampment was marked out in New Jersey, near Staten Island ; boats were collected ; ovens were built as if preparing for the sustenance of a large army ; pioneers were sent to clear roads toward King's Bridge, and pains were taken to keep the American soldiers ignorant of their own destination.

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781.

Aug

General Lincoln was sent with the first division of the army across the Jerseys ; he was followed by the French. Wagons were in company to carry the packs of the soldiers, to enable them to move with more rapidity. Washington sent orders to Lafayette, who was yet in Virginia, to take a position to prevent Cornwallis retreating to North Carolina ; to retain Wayne with his Pennsylvanians, and to communicate with General Greene. He also wrote to the Count de Grasse, who would soon be in the Chesapeake.

Thus were the plans skilfully laid by which the contest was brought to a happy issue. When the Northern soldiers arrived in the vicinity of Philadelphia, and found that they were really going against Cornwallis, they manifested some discontent in prospect of the long southern march in the month of August. At this critical moment, John Laurens, son of Henry Laurens, President of Congress, arrived from France, whither he had been sent to obtain aid ; he brought with him a large supply of clothing, ammunition, and arms ; and what was just then very

CHAP.
XXXVII.

much wanted, half a million of dollars. By means of this, and with the aid of Morris, the soldiers received a portion of their pay in cash. Their good humor was restored, and they cheerfully marched on.

Aug.
28.

De Barras, who commanded the French fleet at Newport, suddenly put to sea. Clinton at once divined the object was to unite, in the Chesapeake, with another French fleet from the West Indies ; and he sent Admiral Graves to prevent the junction. The admiral was astonished to find De Grasse, with twenty-five sail of the line, anchored within the Capes. De Grasse ran out to sea, as if to give the British battle, but really to divert their attention until De Barras could enter the Bay. For five days the hostile fleets manœuvred and skirmished. Meanwhile De Barras appeared and passed within the Capes, and immediately De Grasse followed. Graves now returned to New York.

Sept.
5.

Sept.
10.

Until the main body of the combined armies was beyond the Delaware, Clinton supposed the movement was a ruse to draw him out to fight in the open fields. Cornwallis himself was as much deceived ; thinking he would have Lafayette only to contend with, he wrote to Clinton that he could spare him twelve hundred men to aid in defending New York. Not until he was fairly in the toils, when the French fleet had anchored within the Capes, did he apprehend his danger.

Thinking that perhaps a portion of the American army might be sent back to defend New England, Clinton sent Arnold with a force, composed principally of Tories and Hessians, on a marauding expedition into Connecticut. But Washington was not to be diverted from his high purpose. While he and De Rochambeau are pushing on toward the head of the Chesapeake, let us turn aside to to speak of this maraud, which closes the career of the traitor in his own country.

New London was the first to be plundered and burned, and there Arnold destroyed an immense amount of property. Fort Griswold, commanded by Colonel William Ledyard—brother of the celebrated traveller—was situated on the opposite shore of the river. This was assaulted, and after an obstinate resistance, in which the British lost two hundred men and their two highest officers, it was carried. When the enemy entered, the Americans laid down their arms, but the massacre continued. Major Bromfield, a New Jersey tory, by the death of the two higher officers, became the leader of the assailants. Tradition tells that when he entered the fort he inquired who commanded, and that Colonel Ledyard came forward, saying, “I did, sir; but you do now;” at the same time handing him his sword: that Bromfield took the sword and plunged it into Ledyard’s breast. This was the signal for indiscriminate slaughter, and more than sixty of the yeomanry of Connecticut were massacred in cold blood. The militia began to collect in great numbers from the neighboring towns. Arnold dared not meet his enraged countrymen, and he hastily re-embarked. These outrages were committed almost in sight of his birthplace. Thus closed “a career of ambition without virtue, of glory terminated with crime, and of depravity ending in infamy and ruin.”

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781.

Sept.
7.

The combined armies arrived at Elkton, where they found transports sent by Lafayette and De Grasse to convey them to the scene of action. Previously De Grasse had landed three thousand troops under the marquis St. Simon, to unite with the forces under Lafayette, Steuben, and Wayne.

Sept
27.

As had been anticipated, Cornwallis endeavored to force his way to the Carolinas, but the youthful marquis, whom some months before he had characterized as a “boy,” was on the alert. He then sent off expresses with urgent

CHAP. appeals to Clinton to send him aid. In the mean time he
XXXVII. was indefatigable in strengthening his fortifications.

1781. The combined forces, French and American, were about twelve thousand, besides the Virginia militia called out by Governor Nelson, who, as the State treasury was empty, pledged his own property as security to obtain a loan of money to defray the expenses. The Governor was a resident of Yorktown, and when the cannonade was about to commence, he was asked where the attack would be most effective: "He pointed to a large, handsome house on a rising ground as the probable head-quarters of the enemy. It proved to be his own."

The plan of operations were speedily arranged, and the allies began to press the siege with great vigor. Their lines were within six hundred yards of the enemy's works, which they completely surrounded. General Washington himself put the match to the first gun. The heavy ordnance brought by De Barras was soon thundering at the fortifications. The British outworks were very strong, and beyond these were thrown up redoubts to hinder the approach of the assailants. The cannonade continued for four days; the enemy's outworks were greatly damaged and guns dismounted, while a forty-four gun ship and other vessels were burned by means of red-hot shot thrown by the French. Cornwallis withdrew his men from the outworks, but the redoubts remained. Two of these were to be stormed; one assigned to the French, the other to the Americans. The assault was made about eight o'clock
Oct. in the evening. The Americans, under Alexander Ham-
14. iltou, were the first to enter; they scrambled over the parapet without regard to order, and carried the redoubt at the point of the bayonet. The French captured theirs, but according to rule, and they suffered more than the Americans in their headlong attack. The emulation exhibited by both parties was generous and noble. From

these captured redoubts a hundred heavy cannon poured in an incessant storm of balls. Cornwallis, as he saw his works one by one crumbling to pieces, his guns disabled, his ammunition failing, determined to make a desperate sally and check the besiegers. The British soldiers, a little before daybreak, suddenly rushed out, and carried two batteries, but scarcely had they obtained possession of them, before the French in turn furiously charged, and drove them back to their own intrenchments. But one avenue of escape was left ;—they must cross the river to Gloucester, cut a way through the opposing force, and by forced marches reach New York. Cornwallis resolved to abandon his sick and wounded and baggage, and make the desperate attempt. Boats were collected, and in the night a portion of the troops crossed over ; the second division was embarking, when suddenly the sky was overcast, and a storm of wind and rain arrested the movement. It was now daylight. The first division with difficulty recrossed to Yorktown, as on the river they were subjected to the fire of the American batteries. Despairing of assistance from Clinton, and unwilling to risk the effect of an assault upon his shattered works, or to wantonly throw away the lives of his soldiers, he sent to Washington an offer to surrender. The terms were arranged, and on the 19th of October, in the presence of thousands of patriots assembled from the neighboring country, Cornwallis surrendered seven thousand men as prisoners of war to Washington, as commander-in-chief of the combined army, and the shipping, seamen, and naval stores to the Count de Grasse.

CHAP.
XXXVII

1781.

Oct.
16.Oct.
19.

At Charleston, when Lincoln capitulated, the Americans were not permitted to march out with their colors flying, as had been granted to Burgoyne, but with their colors cased. It was thought proper to deny them the courtesy granted at Saratoga, and the British soldiers were directed to march out with their colors cased ; and Lincoln was deputed by Washington to receive the sword of Cornwallis

CHAP.
XXVII.

1781.

Washington sent one of his aids to carry the joyful news to the Congress at Philadelphia. He reached the city at midnight. Soon the old State-house bell, that five years before signalized to the people that the Declaration of Independence was made, now awoke the slumbering city to hear the watchmen cry, "Cornwallis is taken! Cornwallis is taken!" The inhabitants by thousands rushed into the streets to congratulate each other. Congress met the next morning and proceeded in a body to a church, and there publicly offered thanks to Almighty God for the special favor He had manifested to their struggling country, then issued a proclamation appointing a day for national thanksgiving and prayer, "in acknowledgment of the signal interposition of Divine Providence." Throughout the whole land arose the voice of thanksgiving from the families of the patriots, from the pulpits, from the army. Never did a nation rejoice more. The clouds of uncertainty and doubt were dispelled; the patriots were exultant in the prospect of peace and of the established freedom of their country. Their intelligence enabled them to appreciate the blessings for which they had so long struggled.

If the battle of Bunker Hill, or the evacuation of Boston, had led to a reconciliation with the mother country, how different had been their feelings. Then an affection, a reverence for England would have lingered, only to retard the progress of the Colonists—at best but half-forgiven rebels—and hold them subordinate to her, not so much in political dependence as formerly, but sufficient to stifle that sentiment of nationality, so essential to the proper development of their character and of the resources of the country.

We have seen how long it took illiberal laws, enforced in a tyrannical manner, to alienate their affections. It now required a seven years' struggle of war, outrage and suffering, dangers and privations, to induce a pervading national sentiment, rouse the energies of the people,



THE MEETING OF WASHINGTON AND ROCHAMBEAU

give them confidence, and lead them to sympathize with each other. CHAP.
XXXVII

Congress voted thanks to Washington, to the Counts De Rochambeau and De Grasse, and to the army generally. Eulogies were showered upon the Commander-in-chief;—the spontaneous outpourings of a grateful people, who, during the darkest hours of the contest, had in him unbounded confidence. 1781.

Yorktown was now a name to be honored even beyond those of Bunker Hill and Saratoga. How much was involved in that surrender! The long struggle was virtually ended. It had been a contest not for power, not for aggrandizement, but for a great truth and principle, which had been overshadowed by authority and pressed down by arbitrary rule. Said Lafayette to Napoleon, when he sneered at the smallness of the armies engaged in the American Revolution: "It was the grandest of causes, won by the skirmishes of sentinels and outposts." It is true that the number who fell on the battle-fields was comparatively small. The names of but few of these have come down to us; they were written only on the hearts of friends and relatives who mourned their loss. Scarcely was there a family but had a precious record; the cherished memory of some one who had thus sacrificed his life.

NOTE.—The number of soldiers furnished by each State to the Continental army, during the war, may be seen by the following table:

Massachusetts,	67,907	North Carolina,	7,263
Connecticut,	31,939	South Carolina,	6,417
Virginia,	26,678	Rhode Island,	5,908
Pennsylvania,	25,678	Georgia,	2,679
New York,	17,781	Delaware,	2,386
Maryland,	13,912		
New Hampshire,	12,497		
New Jersey,	10,726		
			<hr/> 231,791

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

CLOSING EVENTS OF THE WAR—FORMATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

British Efforts Paralyzed.—The States form Independent Governments.—Indian Wars.—Massacre of the Christian Delawares.—Battle of the Blue Lick.—Carleton supersedes Clinton.—Commissioners of Peace.—The common Distress.—Dissatisfaction in the Army.—The “Anonymous Address.”—Peace concluded.—British Prisoners; the Tories.—Disbandment of the American Army.—Washington takes leave of his Officers.—Resigns his Commission.—Shay’s Rebellion.—Interests of the States clash.—The Constitutional Convention.—The Constitution ratified by the States.—The Territory North-west of the Ohio.—Ecclesiastical Organizations.

**CHAP.
XXXVIII.**

1781. On the very day that Cornwallis surrendered, Clinton sailed to his aid with seven thousand men. When off the entrance to the Chesapeake, he learned, to his astonishment, that all was lost. As the British fleet was much inferior to that of the French, he hastily returned to New York.

Washington requested Count de Grasse to coöperate with General Greene in an attack upon Charleston, but De Grasse pleaded the necessity of his presence in the West Indies, and excused himself. The Americans now returned to their old quarters on the Hudson. The French army wintered at Williamsburg in Virginia, while the British prisoners were marched to Winchester.

The capture of Cornwallis paralyzed the efforts of the

British and Tories. In the South they evacuated all the posts in their possession, except Savannah and Charleston; before the latter place Greene soon appeared, and disposed his forces so as to confine them closely to the town. In the North, the only place held by the enemy was New York.

Washington never for a moment relaxed his watchfulness, but urged upon Congress and the States to prepare for a vigorous campaign the next year. But so impoverished had the country become, that to raise men and money seemed almost impossible, while the prospect of peace furnished excuses for delay.

The several States now took measures to form independent governments, or to strengthen or modify those already in existence. Some of these had been hastily formed, and, consequently, were more or less defective. The custom was introduced of sending delegates to conventions called for the purpose of framing constitutions, which were submitted to the people for their approval or rejection. The common law of England was adopted, and made the basis in the administration of justice in the courts.

A cruel border warfare was still continued by incursions of Indians against the back settlements of Pennsylvania and Virginia, and against the frontiers of New York, by Indians and Tories.

Many of the Delaware Indians, under the influence of Moravian teachers, had become Christian, and so far imbibed the principles of their instructors as to be opposed to war. Some of these, nearly twenty years before, had emigrated from the banks of the Susquehanna and settled on the Muskingum, where they had three flourishing villages, surrounded by corn-fields. The hostile Indians from the lakes, in their incursions against the frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia, robbed these Delawares of

CHAP.
XXXVII.
1781.

CHAP. their provisions. The Delawares became objects of sus-
 XXXVIII. picion to both the hostile Indians and the whites. The
 1781. former accused them of revealing their plans, the latter of
 conniving at the incursions of their enemies, and the hostile
 Indians compelled them to emigrate to the vicinity of San-
 dusky.

In the mean time, murders had been committed by the
 Shawanese in the vicinity of Pittsburg. A company of
 eighty or ninety backwoodsmen volunteered, under a Colo-
 nel Williamson, to take revenge on the supposed murderers
 —the Christian Delawares—a portion of whom had re-
 turned to their old home to gather their corn. The expে-
 dition reached the villages on the Muskingum, collected
 the victims, it would seem, under the pretence of friend-
 ship, then barbarously and in cold blood murdered about
 Mar. ninety of these inoffensive creatures,—men, women, and
 1782. children.

This success excited to other invasions, and four hun-
 dred and eighty men, under Colonels Williamson and
 Crawford, marched from Western Pennsylvania to surprise
 the remnants of the Christian Indians at Sandusky, and
 also to attack the village of the hostile Wyandottes. The
 June Indians learned of their approach, waited for them in am-
 6. bush, and defeated them; took many prisoners, among
 whom were Crawford, his son, and son-in-law. These three
 they burned at the stake.

About the same time, a large body of the Indians
 north of the Ohio, led by the infamous Simon Girty, a
 tory refugee, invaded Kentucky. They were met by the
 Kentuckians, under Colonels Boone, Todd, and Triggs, at
 the Big Blue Lick, when a bloody and desperate encounter
 ensued. But overwhelmed by numbers, nearly one-half
 the Kentuckians were either killed or taken prisoners.

After the capture at Yorktown no battle occurred be-
 tween the main armies, and but one or two skirmishes.
 Aug. In one of these, in the vicinity of Charleston, the younger



John Adams

Laurens was slain—a young man of great promise, who was universally lamented.

CHAP.
XXXVIII

Among the English people at large the desire to close the war had greatly increased. With them it had ever been unpopular; they were unwilling that their brethren beyond the Atlantic should be deprived of the rights which they themselves so much valued. The intelligence of the surrender of Cornwallis created among them stronger opposition than ever to the harsh measures of the Government. Yet the war party—the King and Ministry, and the majority of the aristocracy—were unwilling to yield to the pressure of public opinion. They were thunderstruck at this unexpected disaster. Says a British writer: “Lord North received the intelligence of the capture of Cornwallis as he would have done a cannon-ball in his breast; he paced the room, and throwing his arms wildly about, kept exclaiming, ‘O God! it is all over; it is all over!’” For twelve years he had been prime minister. The pliant servant of the King, he had ever been in favor of prosecuting the war, but now the voice of the English people compelled him to resign.

1782.

Sir Guy Carleton, whom we have seen winning the respect of the Americans, by his upright and honorable conduct when Governor of Canada, was appointed to succeed Sir Henry Clinton. In the following May he arrived at New York, empowered to make propositions for peace. He immediately addressed a letter to Washington, proposing a cessation of hostilities, and also issued orders, in which he forbade the marauding incursions of the Indians and Tories on the frontiers of Western New York.

Congress appointed five commissioners to conclude a treaty with Great Britain. These were: John Adams, Doctor Franklin, John Jay, Henry Laurens, who, lately released from his confinement in the Tower, was yet in London, and Thomas Jefferson;—the latter, however, declined to serve. They met at Paris two British Commissioners, who had been authorized to treat with “certain

CHAP.
XXXVIII.

- colonies" named in their instructions. The American Commissioners refused to enter upon negotiations, unless in the name of the "United States of America;"—they claimed the right to be recognized a power among the nations. This right was acknowledged by Britain, and on the 30th of November the parties signed a preliminary treaty, which Congress ratified the following April. Negotiations continued, and the final treaty was signed on the 3d of September following. France and England in the mean time likewise concluded a treaty of peace. The American Commissioners also negotiated treaties of commerce with Spain and Holland.

Though the war was ended, the American people had numberless difficulties with which to contend. The army, that through the many trials of the contest had remained faithful, was in a deplorable condition. The half-pay for life, which, three years before, Congress had promised to the officers, proved to be only a promise. Washington wrote confidentially to the Secretary of War in behalf of those about to be discharged from the service: "I cannot help fearing the result, when I see such a number of men about to be turned on the world, soured by penury, involved in debts, without one farthing to carry them home, after having spent the flower of their days, and many of them their patrimonies, in establishing the freedom and independence of their country, and having suffered every thing which human nature is capable of enduring on this side of death. You may rely upon it, the patience and long sufferance of this army are almost exhausted, and there never was so great a spirit of discontent as at this instant."

- Mar. At this crisis an address, plausibly written, was privately circulated in the camp. It suggested to the officers and men the propriety of taking upon themselves to redress their grievances; that they should intimidate Congress and compel it to pay their just demands.

The address seems to have been the embodied sentiments of some half dozen officers, although written by Captain Armstrong, the son of General Armstrong of Pennsylvania. A call was issued for a meeting of the officers, but the next morning, in the regular orders for the day, Washington took occasion to disapprove of the meeting as a violation of discipline. He also named a day for the officers to assemble and hear the report of a committee of their number who had been sent to lay their demands before Congress. The next day a second anonymous address was issued, but somewhat more moderate in tone than the first. The officers met according to appointment, and Gates, being second in command, was made chairman of the meeting. Washington presently came in, made them a soothing address, appealed to their patriotism and to their own fair fame in toiling for their country, and now were they willing to tarnish their name or distrust their country's justice? He pledged his word to use his influence with Congress to fulfil its promises. He then withdrew. The meeting passed resolutions which condemned in severe terms the spirit of the anonymous address.

Congress soon after resolved to accede to the proposition of the officers, and change the promise of half pay for life, to that of full pay for five years. And also to advance to the soldiers full pay for four months.

This was not the only instance in which the influence of Washington arrested plots designed to ruin the prospects of the young republic. The condition of the country was so desperate that many feared the States could not form a permanent government. At the suggestion of officers who thus thought, Lewis Nicola, a foreigner, a colonel in the Pennsylvania line, wrote Washington an elaborate letter, in which he discussed the expediency of establishing a monarchy, and finally offered him the crown. Washington indignantly condemned the scheme. Said he · "I

CHAP. cannot conceive what I have done during my whole life,
 XXXVIII. which could cause any one to imagine that I could enter-
 1783. tain such a proposition for a moment."

When these facts became known, it was not strange that the people feared a standing army.

Intelligence came at length of the signing of the treaty between the United States and Great Britain. Congress issued a proclamation giving the information to the nation.
 April 19. On the 19th of April, precisely eight years from the battle of Lexington, the cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the camp at Newburg.

The soldiers of Burgoyne and Cornwallis were yet prisoners, and had been marched to New York in order to be sent home. A general exchange of prisoners now took place. The prospects of the Tories were dreary indeed. The severe laws enacted against them were still in force, and now several thousand of them had assembled at New York, and were compelled to leave the country. The majority of them were wealthy. During the war many of them had held offices in the British service, and some had grown rich as merchants, landowners, and sutlers for the British army; others, the unscrupulous, by privateering. Those who lived in the North emigrated to Canada and Nova Scotia, while those of the South went chiefly to the West India Islands.

A clause was inserted in the treaty which prohibited the carrying away of the slaves, large numbers of whom had fled to the British army during the campaigns in the Carolinas and Virginia.

Carleton refused to comply with the demand, on the ground that it would be highly dishonorable to deliver them up since they had sought protection under the British flag. To secure their safety, he sent them away among the very first, while at the same time he kept an accurate



N Webster

list of their number, leaving to future negotiation indemnity for their loss. CHAP.
XXXVIII

These negroes, now liberated, were first taken to Nova Scotia ; afterward, a large number of them emigrated to Sierra Leone : “ Their descendants, as merchants and traders, now constitute the wealthiest and most intelligent population of that African colony.” 1788.

Before the disbandment of the army, Washington addressed a letter to the Governors of the several States, urging them to guard against the prejudices of one part of the country against another ; to encourage union among the States, and to make provision for the public debt. June.

On the 3d of November the army was disbanded. These patriot soldiers returned to their homes, to mingle with their fellow-citizens, and enjoy the blessings which their valor had obtained for themselves and their posterity. From that day the title of revolutionary soldier has been a title of honor. Nov.
3.

Before the officers of the army finally separated, they formed a society known as the Cincinnati—a name derived from the celebrated farmer-patriot of Rome. The association was to be perpetuated chiefly through the eldest male descendants of the original members. But as this feature, in the eyes of many, seemed to favor an hereditary aristocracy, it was stricken out ; still the society continued to be to some parties an object of jealousy.

As soon as preparations could be made, the British evacuated the few places occupied by their troops ; New York on the 25th of November, and Charleston in the following month. General Knox, with a small body of troops, and accompanied by Governor George Clinton and the State officers, entered New York as the British were leaving. Nov
25.

A few days after, the officers of the army assembled at a public house to bid farewell to their beloved commander. Presently Washington entered ; his emotions were too strong to be concealed. After a moment's pause he said : Dec
4.

CHAP.
LXXXVIII.

1783.

“With a heart full of love and gratitude, I now take leave of you ; I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy, as your former ones have been glorious and honorable.” He then added : “I cannot come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged if each of you will come and take my hand.” General Knox, being the nearest, turned to him. Washington, affected even to tears, grasped his hand and embraced him. In the same affectionate manner he took leave of each succeeding officer : “The tear of manly sensibility was in every eye ; not a word was spoken to interrupt the dignified silence and the tenderness of the scene. Leaving the room, he passed through the corps of light infantry, to the barge which was to convey him across the river. The whole company followed in mute and solemn procession, with dejected countenances, testifying to feelings of delicious melancholy, which no language can describe. Having entered the barge, he turned to the company, and, waving his hat, bade them a silent adieu. They paid him the same affectionate compliment.”¹

On his way to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, he left with the controller at Philadelphia an accurate account of his expenses during the war ; they amounted to sixty-four thousand dollars. These accounts were in his own handwriting, and kept in the most perfect manner ; every charge made was accompanied by a mention of the occasion and object.

Dec.
25.

In an interview with Congress, he made a short address. Said he : “The successful termination of the war has verified the most sanguine expectations ; and my gratitude for the interposition of Providence, and the assistance I have received from my countrymen, increases with every review of the momentous contest.” Then recommending to the favorable notice of Congress the

¹ Judge Marshall.

officers of his staff, and expressing his obligations to the army in general, he continued: "I consider it as an indispensable duty to close this last act of my official life, by commending the interests of our dearest country to the protection of Almighty God, and those who have the superintendence of them, to his holy keeping."

(CHAP.
XXXVIII)

1788.

"Having now finished the work assigned me, I retire from the great theatre of action, and, bidding an affectionate farewell to this august body, under whose orders I have so long acted, I here offer my commission, and take my leave of all the employments of public life."

The President of Congress, General Mifflin, who, in the darkest hour of the revolution, had favored the Conway Cabal, replied: "Sir, the United States, in congress assembled, receive with emotions too affecting for utterance, the solemn resignation of the authorities under which you have led their troops with success through a perilous and doubtful war. We join with you in commending the interests of our dearest country to the protection of Almighty God; and for you, we address to Him our earnest prayers, that a life so beloved may be fostered with all His care; that your days may be as happy as they have been illustrious; and that he will finally give you that reward which this world cannot give." Washington hastened to Mount Vernon, which he had not visited for eight years, except for a few hours while on his way against Cornwallis.

Independence was at last attained, but at immense sacrifices. The calamities of war were visible in the ruins of burned towns, in the ravaged country, in the prostration of industry, and in the accumulation of debts. These amounted to one hundred and seventy millions of dollars—a sum enormous in proportion to the resources of the country—two-thirds of this debt had been contracted by Congress, and the remainder by the individual States.

1784

CHAP.
XXXVIII.

These were evils, but there were still greater which came home to the domestic hearth. Frequently the members of families had taken different sides, some were Whigs and some were Tories ; and that remorseless rancor which so often prevails in times of civil discord, extended throughout the land. It is pleasant to record, that in the course of a few years, a forgiving spirit among the people led to the repeal of the severe laws enacted against the Tories, and very great numbers of them repented of their misguided loyalty and returned to their native land.

On the conclusion of peace the English merchants, alive to their interests, flooded the States with manufactured goods at very reduced prices. This operation ruined the domestic manufactures, which the non-importation association, and necessities of the war had created and cherished, drained the country of its specie, and involved the merchants and people in debt. This poverty was followed by discontent, which prevailed more or less, and excited disturbances in several of the States.

1786.
Dec.
25. In Massachusetts a thousand men assembled at Worcester, under the leadership of Daniel Shays, and forced the Supreme Court to adjourn, to prevent its issuing writs for the collection of debts.

Governor Bowdoin called out the militia, which was put under the command of General Lincoln, who in a few weeks suppressed the outbreak. It was evident, however, that there was among the people a strong feeling of sympathy with the insurgents, for the vast majority of themselves labored under similar grievances.

1787.
Jan. This distress was overruled for good. It was the means of bringing all the States to view with favor a union under the same constitution, and thus form a government which should have power to act for the good of the whole country.

The States made trial of independent governments

but after an experiment of three or four years the result proved unsatisfactory. This was especially the case in relation to the subjects of legislation which concerned the whole country ; such as the regulation of commerce, the common defence, the adjustment of controversies between one State and another, and making of treaties with other nations.

CHAP
XXXV
1787.

These difficulties were increasing—many interests clashed. Some of the States passed laws which conflicted with those of their sisters ; since the close of the war, commerce had increased very rapidly, but American merchants were still excluded by the British from the West India trade. They complained to Congress, but the States had not yet conceded authority to that body, to regulate commerce or to legislate for the whole country.

Some States had good harbors, and imported merchandise upon which duties were imposed at the expense of their neighbors ; and ports competed with each other by lowering the rate of imports. Thus there were rival ports on the Delaware ; and Maryland and Virginia competed with each other for the trade of the Chesapeake, while New Jersey and Connecticut were laid under contribution by their neighbors of New York and Massachusetts. No State could protect itself by retaliation against the restrictions of foreign countries, as the attempt would throw its own trade into the hands of a sister rival.

Efforts were made to obviate these evils, and those States bordering on the waters of the Chesapeake and Potomac sent delegates to a convention held at Alexandria, to establish a uniform tariff of duties on the merchandise brought into their ports. This led to correspondence between the prominent men of the country and the legislatures. Another convention was held at Annapolis, to which there were representatives from only five States ; finally, the people elected delegates to meet in

CHAP. Convention in Philadelphia, to revise the Articles of Con-
XXXVIII. federation.

1787. On the 14th of May the members of the Convention met in the State House, in Philadelphia, in the same hall where the Declaration of Independence was made. Washington, who, since the war, had lived in retirement at Mount Vernon, appeared as a delegate. He was unanimously chosen President of the Convention.

The Convention resolved to sit with closed doors ; not even a transcript of their minutes was permitted to be made public. The articles of the old confederation, found to be very defective, were thrown aside, and the Convention addressed itself to framing an independent constitution.

There were present about fifty delegates, representatives from eleven different States, all of whom had the confidence of their fellow-citizens, and were distinguished for their intellectual and moral worth and experience in public affairs. Some had been members of the Stamp Act Congress in 1765, some of the Continental Congress in 1774, and some were also among the signers of the Declaration of Independence. Conspicuous was the venerable Dr. Franklin, now in his eightieth year, who, thirty years before, at a convention at Albany, had proposed a plan of union for the colonies.

The various disturbances in different parts of the land had shaken the faith of many in the power of the multitude to govern themselves. Said Elbridge Gerry, in the Convention : " All the evils we experience flow from an excess of democracy. The people do not want virtue, but are under the dupes of pretended patriots ; they are daily misled into the most baleful measures of opinions."

It was necessary to have a central government, which could give security to all the States, and at the same time not conflict in its powers with their rights.

It was found very difficult to arrange satisfactorily the

representation in the two branches of the proposed government. The smaller States were alarmed, lest their rights would be infringed upon by the overwhelming majority of members coming from the larger ones. This difficulty was removed by constituting the Senate, in which the States were represented equally without reference to their population ; each being entitled to two members, while in the House of Representatives the States were to be represented in proportion to their population.

CHAP.
XXXVIII
1787.

After four months of labor, during which every article was thoroughly discussed, the Constitution was finished and signed by all the members present, with the exception of three ; Gerry, of Massachusetts, George Mason and Edmund Randolph, of Virginia. This result was not obtained without much discussion ; at one time, so adverse were opinions that it was apprehended the Convention would dissolve, leaving its work unfinished. It was then that Franklin proposed they should choose a chaplain to open their sessions by prayer. Said he : " I have lived a long time ; and the longer I live the more convincing proofs I see of this truth, that God governs the affairs of men. And if a sparrow cannot fall to the ground without his notice, is it possible that an empire can rise without his aid ? "

The Convention presented the Constitution thus framed to Congress, and that body submitted it to the people of the States for their approval or rejection.

It was a document of compromises ; probably not a member of the Convention was perfectly satisfied with it. There were three prominent compromises ; the first, the equal representation in the Senate, a concession to the smaller States ; the second, that in the enumeration of the inhabitants three-fifths of the slaves were to be included in determining the ratio of representation in the lower house of Congress ; a concession to the slaveholders ;

CHAP.
XXVIII.

1787.

and the third, permission, till 1808, to the States of Georgia and South Carolina, to receive slaves imported from Africa, as the delegates from those two States refused to sign the Constitution except on that condition. The great desire to secure the moral power of a unanimous vote of the members of the Convention in favor of their own work, alone obtained this concession.

In less than a year after the Constitution was submitted to the people, it was adopted by all the States, except North Carolina and Rhode Island, and by them in less than two years.

This ratification of the Constitution was not brought about without a struggle. The subject was discussed in conventions and in the legislatures, and in the newspapers. The States were for a time unwilling to resign any of their sovereignty to a Federal or National Government.

Many elaborate essays, collectively known as the *Federalist*, were written by Alexander Hamilton, Jay, and Madison, in favor of its adoption. These essays had an immense influence upon the leading minds of the country ; and these in turn greatly influenced the popular will.

It shows the practical wisdom of those who framed the Constitution, that in the application of its principles for almost three quarters of a century, it has been found necessary to change or modify only very few of its articles.

July
13.

While the Convention which framed the Constitution was in session in Philadelphia, the Continental Congress in New York passed a bill "for the government of the Territory north-west of the Ohio." That region had been ceded to the United States by the States of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York and Virginia. In this bill were introduced provisions securing the exercise of religious freedom, and for the encouragement of schools, and also the proviso that "there shall be neither slavery, nor involuntary servitude

in said territory, otherwise than in punishment for crime." The region south of the Ohio was to be afterward regulated. Three years before Thomas Jefferson had introduced a bill, and urged its passage with all his influence, to exclude slavery not only from the territory then held by the United States, but from all which should thereafter be ceded to Congress by the respective States. This bill failed by only a few votes.

CHAP.
XXXVIII
1784.

The people, though thus engaged in moulding their political institutions, did not neglect to conform their systems of ecclesiastical government to the new order of things. The Revolution had changed the relation of the religious denominations to the State. In New England, Congregationalism was the established religion, and every citizen was required to aid in the support of some church. In all the southern colonies the Episcopal Church was equally favored, and partially so in New York and New Jersey. Only in Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, and Delaware, were all the Protestant sects on an equality, as to their religious rights.

The Episcopal Church was more disorganized than any other. It had hitherto been attached to the diocese of the Bishop of London, but now that authority was not recognized.

As yet there was no American bishop, and no means to obtain the consecration of any clergyman to that office, except by English bishops. Accordingly the Reverend Samuel Seabury, of Connecticut, at the request of the Episcopalians of that State, visited England to obtain ordination as a bishop. But the English bishops were prevented by law of Parliament from raising any one to that dignity, who did not take the oaths of allegiance, and acknowledge the King as head of the Church. Seabury then applied to the non-juring bishops of the Episcopal Church of Scotland, by whom he was ordained. Some Episco-

CHAP.
XXXVIII.

1787.

pallians, however, were not satisfied with an ordination at the hands of the Scottish bishops.

A convention of delegates, from several States, met and formed a constitution for the "Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America." After some revision this constitution was adopted by conventions in the separate States. Titles were changed in order to conform to republicanism; such as "Lord Bishop," and all such as were "descriptive of temporal power and precedence." The Liturgy for the same reason was modified. A friendly letter was addressed to the English bishops, requesting at their hands ordination of American bishops. An Act of Parliament gave the desired authority, and William White, of Philadelphia, Samuel Provost, of New York, and James Madison, of Virginia, were thus ordained. Soon after these ordinations, a General Convention ratified the constitution, and the organization of the Episcopal Church in the United States was complete.

About this time came Thomas Coke, as superintendent or bishop in the Methodist Episcopal Church. He had been an able laborer with Wesley, by whom he was ordained to that office. This sect spread very rapidly, especially in the south; in that section of the country were a great many vacant parishes, which belonged to the Episcopal Church, numbers of whose clergymen left the country during the troubles of the Revolution. At this time the denomination did not number more than ninety preachers, and fifteen thousand members.

The institutions of the Congregational and Presbyterian Churches required no change to adapt them to the new order of things.

1788. The Presbyterians took measures to organize their Church government on a national basis. Four Synods were formed out of the Synod of New York and Philadelphia. A General Assembly, composed of delegates from

all the Presbyteries of the land, was authorized to meet annually.

CHAP.
XXXVII

Soon after the treaty of peace with England, the Pope's Nuncio at Paris made overtures to Congress, through Doctor Franklin, on the subject of appointing a Vicar Apostolic or bishop for the United States. On the ground that the subject was purely spiritual, and therefore beyond its jurisdiction, Congress refused to take any part in the matter. The Pope then appointed as his vicar apostolic, John Carroll, a brother of Charles Carroll, of Carrollton; the same was afterward raised to the dignity of Archbishop of the Roman Catholic Church in the United States.

1788.

Almost immediately after the Declaration of Independence the Presbytery of Hanover, in Virginia, addressed a memorial to the House of Assembly, in which they petitioned for the separation of church and state. They preferred that the gospel should be supported by the free gifts of its friends; they asked no aid from the civil power to maintain their own churches, and were unwilling that any denomination should thus be favored. The movement thus commenced was ardently seconded by the Baptists and Quakers, who petitioned the Assembly to the same effect. These petitions were met by counter-memorials from the Episcopalians and Methodists, who urged in behalf of the Establishment, that it was a system which "possessed the nature of a vested right, and ought to be maintained inviolate."

1776

The separation of church and state soon became a prominent question in Virginia. Jefferson took an important part in the animated contest, but the most effective was the united influence of those who first opposed the establishment, and who never relaxed their efforts till the churches were declared independent of the civil power, and every colonial law interfering with the religious rights of the people was swept away.

CHAP.
XXXVIII.

1788.

The example thus set by Virginia was not without its influence; the union of church and state was dissolved in the other States soon after the close of the Revolution, except in Connecticut and Massachusetts, where the system was retained many years longer.¹

Thus we have seen the Fathers of the Republic equal to every emergency as it occurred. They carried their country through the Revolution; then through the trying period between its close and the formation and adoption of the Constitution, and the adjustment of the difficult question of the relation between church and state. As statesmen and patriots they are held in higher estimation to-day by enlightened and liberal men than ever before; while the cause they advocated takes a deeper hold upon the general intelligence of the world. Had they been advocates of principles that could not bear the test of time and experience, though equally honest and sincere, they would still be looked upon as misguided men. On the contrary, they were in advance of their own age, and as time moves on they are more and more appreciated; their cause was commensurate in importance with the zeal and self-denial they exercised in making the principles of true liberty the inheritance of civilized man. It requires a good cause, as well as success, to secure the respect of future generations.

¹ Hildreth, Vol. III. Dr. Hawkes' Contributions to Ecclesiastical History of the U. S. Dr. Baird's Religion of America.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION

The Reception and Inauguration of the President.—An Era in human progress.—The Departments of State organized.—Hamilton's Financial Report.—Congress Assumes the Debts of the Nation.—The National Bank.—Commercial Enterprise.—Manufactures.—Indian War.—Harmer's Repulse.—St. Clair defeated.—Wayne defeats the Indians.—Political Parties.—Jefferson.—The French Revolution.—Genet arrives as French Minister.—War between France and England.—Neutrality proclaimed by the President.—Partisans of France.—Arrogant proceedings of Genet.—The Whiskey Insurrection.—Special Mission to Great Britain.—A Treaty concluded.—Its Ratification.—Other Treaties.—Washington's Farewell Address.—The Policy of the Government established.

WHEN two-thirds of the States had adopted the Federal Constitution, it became the law of the land. The Continental Congress—that body so remarkable in its origin, in what it had accomplished, and now about to pass out of existence—ordained that the new government should go into operation on the 4th of March, and also designated the city of New York as the place where the National Congress should hold its sessions. The same authority also named the time for electing the President and Vice-President, according to the manner prescribed in the Constitution.

The hearts of the American people were turned to one man. George Washington was unanimously chosen the first President of the Republic. John Adams received the next highest number of votes, and was elected Vice-

CHAP
XXXIX
1789.

CHAP.
XXXIX.

1780

President. Charles Thompson, the old Secretary of Congress, was sent to Mount Vernon to inform Washington of his election, and another messenger to Boston, to inform Adams of his. The latter had just returned from a residence of nine years in Europe, where he had been engaged in public business ; he immediately set out to enter upon the duties of his office. As a mark of respect, he was escorted by a troop of horse through Massachusetts and Connecticut, and was met at the New York State line, and in a similar manner attended to the city.

Washington wished to travel to New York in as private a manner as possible. But enthusiasm and respect, drew the people in crowds to see and honor him. The authorities of the States through which he passed, vied with each other in testifying their regard. The most graceful reception, and no doubt to him the most grateful, was the one he received at Trenton. As he came to the bridge, over which, twelve years before, on the eve of the battle of Princeton, he retreated with his weary and disheartened soldiers, he found it spanned by a triumphal arch bearing the inscription : " The Defender of the Mothers will be the Protector of the Daughters." Here were assembled a company of matrons and young girls, dressed in white, with baskets of flowers in their hands. As he approached they began to sing an appropriate ode, written for the occasion. At the close of the line, " strew your hero's way with flowers," they suited the action to the sentiment by strewing the flowers before him. At Elizabethport he was met by a committee of both Houses of Congress, and the heads of departments, and received on board a barge, magnificently decorated, and manned by thirteen pilots in appropriate uniforms. The barge was accompanied by a numerous cortege of boats filled with citizens. Welcomed to the city, amidst the salutes of artillery from the ships in the harbor, American as well as foreign, and from the battery, he was conducted to



WASHINGTON AND HIS MOTHER

From a Painting by L. Fournier.

the house prepared for his reception, by Governor George Clinton, the State officers, and a numerous concourse of people.

CHAP.
XXXIX

1789.

On the morning of the 30th of April, at 9 o'clock, the churches were opened for religious services and prayer. A little after the hour of noon, on the balcony of the Federal Hall, on the site of the present Custom House, in the presence of a vast concourse of people in the streets, the oath of office was administered to the President elect, by Robert R. Livingston, Chancellor of New York. At the close of the ceremony the Chancellor exclaimed : " Long live George Washington, President of the United States ! " The assembled multitude responded to the sentiment.

April

The members of both Houses returned to the Senate chamber, where the President delivered an inaugural address, replete with wisdom and with sentiments designed to harmonize the discordant opinions which prevailed, and with renewed expressions of gratitude to Heaven for the favor granted the people of America, in all their struggles. Then he closed by announcing that he would receive no remuneration for his services, only asking that his expenses might be paid. The members of Congress, accompanied by the President, then went in procession to St. Paul's church, where, led by Bishop Provost, the Chaplain of the Senate, they implored the blessing of the King of nations upon the government just inaugurated.

The youthful nation was about to assume the powers of self-government, under circumstances never before witnessed in the history of man ; to throw off the useless in forms and systems, retain what was valuable, and commence a new era in human progress. The people themselves established their own government ; its Constitution was framed to secure their own welfare, and not to make the State great at their expense. They had learned this of their fathers. In English history all the great advances in securing the enjoyment of human rights, from the day

CHAP.
XXXIX.

1789.

on which Magna Charta was given, to the Declaration of Independence, had tended to protect the rights of the subject—the individual man—and now this principle, untrammelled by clogging forms, was to be carried out. The individual man was to be pre-eminent ; the State only his instrument, the mere machine of his own contriving, designed and moulded from time to time to protect his civil and religious privileges. In the great empires of the Old World, the empire was every thing ; the people nothing. Now the people were to be every thing ; henceforth *they* were to be the fountain of power and influence. Ancient Greece and Rome had their civilization, their literature, their art, their liberty ; but they failed ; they had no elevating principle like Christianity to permeate and influence the people, penetrate their inmost life, and dignify the humblest by bringing into exercise the noblest attributes of their nature. A Christianized civilization ; the recognition of man's dearest rights ; an open field for individual enterprise ; attachment to institutions under whose ample shield protection was secured to all, were so many pledges of the ultimate success of a people thus governed.

The new government had before it a difficult task to arrange the various departments of State ; to obtain revenue, and pay off the national debt. Three executive departments were created, the presiding officers of which were styled secretaries—the Treasury, War, including that of the Navy, and Foreign Affairs. These secretaries, the President, with the concurrence of the Senate, could appoint to office, or dismiss from the same. They were to constitute his cabinet or council ; and when requested by him, were bound to give in writing their opinions on the subject under discussion. A judiciary for the nation was established, under the title of the Supreme Court of the United States, having subordinate Circuit and District courts. Washington nominated Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury ; General Knox, Secretary of

War ; Thomas Jefferson, Secretary for Foreign Affairs ; **CHAP.**
John Jay, Chief Justice of the United States, and Edmund **XXXIX**
Randolph, Attorney-General. **1789.**

The first session of Congress, a laborious one of six months, was spent in organizing the government. It shows the spirit of the times, that before they adjourned Congress passed a resolution, requesting the President to recommend a "day of public thanksgiving and prayer, in acknowledgment of the many signal favors of Almighty God, and especially his affording the people an opportunity peaceably to establish a constitution of government for their safety and happiness."

In January, the second session of the First Congress **1790.** commenced. The President, instead of sending a written message, as is now the custom, made to both Houses, assembled in the Senate chamber, an address. He directed their attention to the public defence ; to the encouragement of agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and literature ; to the enactment of naturalization laws, and especially to the payment of the national debt. These various heads of business were referred to committees. During this session the official intercourse between the heads of departments and the Houses of Congress took the form of written communications.

Hamilton made his celebrated financial report, in which he recommended certain measures for obtaining revenue to defray the current expenses of the Government and pay off the national debt. This debt was in the form of certificates or notes of obligation to pay for value received. During the war they had been issued by the States as well as by Congress, to persons who furnished supplies to the army, and for other services. Congress assumed these debts, and also the foreign debt. The expenses of two distinct governments—the Federal and that of the separate States—were to be borne. The revenue could be derived only from taxes on property. As the control of commerce

CHAP. had been transferred to Congress by the States, it was
XXIX. fitting that the revenue derived from the tax or duty levied
1790. on imported merchandise should be appropriated to the support of the Federal Government, while that arising from real estate and other sources, should be assigned to the use of the States. Hamilton proposed, and the government adopted the system of indirect taxation by raising revenue from the duties thus imposed ; and to meet a certain deficiency at the time, an excise, or tax on the manufacture of domestic spirits.

Near the close of this session, Congress, after much discussion, passed a bill to locate the seat of the General Government on the banks of the Potomac, and authorized the President to select the spot within certain limits, and to make arrangements for the erection of suitable buildings. Until these should be ready for occupation, its sessions were to be held in Philadelphia, at which place, accordingly, the second Congress began its first session.

Dec.
6.

The President congratulated the members on the increasing prosperity of the country, and the unexpected success in obtaining revenue. On the recommendation of Hamilton, Congress gave a charter for twenty years for a National Bank, with the privilege to establish branches in any of the States. The capital of the Bank was ten millions, of which the government took two millions, and individuals the remainder. The Bank was as beneficial to the government as it was to the commercial interests of the country. Its bills were payable in gold or silver when presented at its counters. This feature had a decided effect ; it raised the credit of the General Government, and inspired confidence in the commercial world. The first census, just taken, showed the population of the States to be almost four millions.

By assuming the debts contracted by the States in the defence of their common liberties, Congress had simply performed an act of justice ; provision was made to pay

the interest, and also in time to liquidate the debts themselves. The duties imposed upon imports to raise revenue, had also a beneficial effect upon the struggling manufactures of the country. The mutual confidence between the States and the Federal Government, produced a like influence upon the minds of the people; their industry was encouraged, and their commerce extended. American merchantmen were seen on almost every sea; some sailed to the north-west coast of the continent, where, in exchange for trinkets, they obtained furs; these they bartered for cargoes in China, and these again they sold at home at an immense profit; while others were as busily employed in the trade to the East and West Indies, and to Europe. About this time Captain Gray, of Boston, returned from a voyage around the world—the first ever made by an American. On his second voyage he discovered, and to a certain extent, explored the Columbia river.

CHAP
XXXIX

1790.

1792.

Though the Revolution broke the fetters with which English cupidity had bound the domestic manufactures of the colonies, still there were innumerable difficulties in the way. A coarse fabric, known as linsey-woolsey, and dyed in various colors, derived from the bark of trees in the forest, comprised almost entirely the extent of domestic cloths. At the town of Beverly, in Massachusetts, was established the first factory for making cotton cloth. “The patriotic adventurers” were not very successful in their enterprise, though they had machines that could “card forty pounds of cotton in a day, and spin sixty threads at a time.” Newburyport has the honor of having the first factory for making woollen cloths, and two years later an establishment for printing calico. These crude efforts were not very successful, but they were the harbingers of future triumphs.

1788.

1794

Sir Richard Arkwright improved upon a machine invented by a poor man named Higs, who called it a “Jenny,” in honor of his daughter, and who, amid many

CHAP.
XXXIX.

- discouragements, and the jeers of his ignorant neighbors, contrived to spin a dozen threads of cotton at a time.
1794. He turned his machine by hand; Arkwright arranged it to be driven by water-power. Samuel Slater, "the father of American manufactures," a native of Derbyshire, an apprentice of Arkwright's partner, made himself familiar, not merely with the use of the machine, but with the construction of the machines themselves. The British government did every thing in its power to retain the knowledge of the invention within the kingdom. Slater resolved to emigrate to America, and there introduce this art of spinning cotton. He landed at New York, but not meeting with encouragement, he went to Rhode Island,
1790. and at Pawtucket put in operation sixty-two spindles on the Arkwright principle. Sixteen years later he was joined by his brother, John Slater,* who brought with him the recent improvements in the art.

In the valley of the Ohio, Indian troubles were on the increase. The British neglected to give up the Western posts according to the treaty, but retained them with their small garrisons. The Indians became restless, and occasionally made incursions against the frontier settlements, especially those in Kentucky. It was surmised that

Oct. British emissaries had excited them to these outrages.

- The year previous they had repulsed General Harmer, who had been sent against them, and this success increased their boldness. General St. Clair, now Governor of the North-west Territory, was appointed to the command of another expedition against them. In the mean time volunteers from Kentucky made desultory expeditions into the wilderness north of the Ohio. They attacked all the Indians they met, friendly or unfriendly, but the latter generally kept out of their way; to burn empty wigwams, and destroy cornfields, only exasperated the savages more
1791. and more.

* His descendant, John S. Slater, in April, 1882, had introduced into the N. Y. Legislature a bill organizing an Association to manage a fund of \$1,000,000 presented by him for aid in educating the negroes of the Southern States.

It was the middle of September before St. Clair, with an army of about two thousand men, began his march from Fort Washington, the little stockade fort on the site of the present city of CINCINNATI. It was his object to open a way, and establish a line of posts from the Ohio to the Maumee, and there build and garrison a strong fort, as a check upon the marauding Indians. Two of these posts he had already established. The militia who joined the army from Kentucky, were insubordinate, and, as the army could move but very slowly in cutting its way through the wilderness, they grew impatient, and finally numbers of them returned home. The Chickasaw warriors also deserted, and his force was reduced to fourteen hundred men. When he reached the head-waters of the Wabash, his army was surprised by Little Turtle, a celebrated Miami chief, and the Indians, who had hitherto contrived to keep out of sight. The militia fled immediately, and threw the regulars into confusion, who could not regain their order, nor sustain the attack. St. Clair was in his tent prostrated by illness and not able to mount his horse, and when Colonel Butler fell, the army commenced its retreat, or rather flight, abandoning every thing. Fortunately, plunder had more attractions for the savages than pursuit of the fugitives. The remnant of the army returned to Fort Washington, and the whole frontier was again defenceless. St. Clair resigned his command, and the President appointed General Wayne, whom we have seen so daring in the battles of the Revolution, to lead the next expedition; for the sake of connection the account of this will be given here.

CHAP.
XXXIX

1791

Nov
4.

An attempt was made to negotiate a peace, but without success; in the mean while Wayne was at Fort Washington, earnestly engaged in recruiting and organizing his army. With his usual energy he pushed his forces rapidly forward to the scene of St. Clair's defeat, and there built a fort which he named Recovery. This

1794.

June

**CHAP.
XXXIX**

- 1794** fort the Indians besieged for two days, but were at length driven off. Six weeks after he suddenly marched to the Maumee. The Indians were taken by surprise. They took position amidst some fallen timber, prostrated by a hurricane, in order to avoid the cavalry, of which they had a great fear. Wayne ordered the infantry to charge with the bayonet through the timber. The Indians were immediately routed, and scattered in all directions. The fertile valleys of the neighborhood were covered with cornfields ; these fields of grain were destroyed up to the very gates of the British fort, which Wayne could scarcely restrain his army from attacking. Thus, in a campaign of ninety days, he had marched three hundred miles, the greater part of the road cut by the army, had completely broken the Indian power, destroyed their provisions for the next winter, and established a full garrisoned fort in the midst of their country. He now returned to Greenville, some miles west of the Miami, to winter-quarters.
- Aug. 20.**
- Nov.**

The following summer eleven hundred warriors, representatives from the western tribes, met Wayne at that place and made a treaty which secured peace to the frontier. Their friends the British were about to evacuate the western posts, and they found it more to their advantage to submit. They ceded at this time nearly all the territory of what is now the State of Ohio, for which they were paid. For twenty years the Indians had made incursions into Kentucky, and during that time they had carried off a great number of captives. By this treaty all these captives were to be restored to their friends. It was a moving spectacle to see parents endeavoring to find their children, who, years before, had been taken from their homes, some of them had forgotten their native language, some preferred to stay with their savage captors rather than return to civilized life. Many husbands and wives who had been separated for years, were restored to each other.

Aug. 1795.

The conflict of opinions, in regard to the adoption of the Constitution, had created two parties ; the Federalist and the Anti-Federalist : the one, the administration and its friends ; the other, those opposed to its policy. As the Constitution became more and more popular, opposition was specially made to Hamilton's management of the financial affairs of the government. Time has proved the wisdom of his policy, which has continued, in the main, to be that of the government from that day to this.

CHAP.
XXXIX
1792

"He was made Secretary of the Treasury ; and how he fulfilled the duties of such a place, at such a time, the whole country perceived with delight, and the whole world saw with admiration. He smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth. He touched the dead corpse of the Public Credit, and it sprang upon its feet."¹

In this opposition Jefferson, the Secretary of State, performed a secret but active part. Having been some years in France, as American Minister, he had returned home thoroughly imbued with French politics. He disliked Adams almost as much as he did Hamilton, and he seems to have been haunted with the idea that these two members of the cabinet were, in disguise, either monarchists or aristocrats ; that they were devising plans to change the republican form of the government ; and that Washington was misled by them. He noticed and recorded every remark which seemed to him suspicious, made by these gentlemen, when in the hours of unreserved social intercourse. While ostensibly the friend of Washington and his administration, he was in communication with the opposition, and diffusing his opinions in his private correspondence. Measures, which at one time he himself had approved, he now feared might have lurking in them some latent principle which might lead to the establishment of

¹ Daniel Webster.

**CHAP.
XXXIX.**

1793.

a monarchy. His party thought it expedient to repudiate the name, Anti-Federalists, and assume that of REPUBLICAN, at the same time proclaiming they were the only true friends of the people. An incessant warfare commenced against the policy of the government, accompanied with scurrilous abuse of the President.

The assumption of the State debts ; the national bank ; the manner of raising the revenue ; the funding system, by which provision was made to pay the interest on the national debt, were, in the eyes of the opposition, so many cunningly-devised plans to create friends among the rich, and in the end subvert the liberties of the country.

The public interest demanded it, and after much solicitation from the leading members of the government, Washington consented to serve for a second term. He was unanimously chosen. Adams was re-elected Vice-President ; he receiving seventy-seven electoral votes and George Clinton, of New York, fifty.

1799.

Two months and a half after the first inauguration of Washington as President, a bloody revolution broke out in France. The people of the United States looked with much interest upon the French people struggling for liberty. But it was soon evident that the state of the nation's morals, political as well as private, forbade the success of the French republic. The remembrance of the alliance with France, by which they had received aid in the time of need, elicited the sympathy of the American people. The republican party wished to form an alliance with the new Republic, while Washington, and the majority of his cabinet, as well as the more judicious statesmen, were in favor of neutrality. The unheard-of cruelties, which, in the name of liberty, had been practised in France for a year or two, had cooled the zeal of many. One party had succeeded by guillotining the leaders of its rival ; the amiable Louis, who had aided the Americans

in their struggle for liberty, had been murdered by his subjects ; and Lafayette was forced to flee. Strange that such "excesses and horrible butcheries" found apologists in the United States.

CHAP.
XXXIX
1793
April

While the public mind was thus divided, came Edmond Charles Genet or "Citizen Genet" as he was styled, as minister of the French Republic. He brought the intelligence that France had declared war against England. Now the opposition, urged on by their hatred to the latter power, wished to enter into an alliance with France, and thus involve the country in war. But Washington and his cabinet, in spite of these clamors, promptly proclaimed neutrality as the policy of the United States, and also warned the people not to commit acts inconsistent with the proclamation of neutrality, nor with the strictest impartiality towards the belligerents. The wisdom of the Government saved the country from a multitude of evils.

Genet took advantage of the sympathy manifested for France by a portion of the American people, and began to fit out privateers against English commerce. This was an insult to the dignity of the government, and a violation of the proclaimed neutrality. But the partisans of France were determined that the country should be committed to an alliance with the great sister Republic in the old world.

About this time numerous societies, modelled after the famous Jacobin clubs in Paris, began to be formed in various parts of the Union. The more ultra assumed the title of Democratic, while others preferred to call themselves Democratic Republican. They made strenuous efforts to influence the public mind in favor of French politics, and drive the government from its determination not to interfere in the quarrels of Europe. The President and his policy were assailed in terms of unmeasured abuse. The principal organ of this abuse was the Gazette news-

CHAP.
XXXIX.

paper, edited by Philip Freneau, who at this time was employed by Jefferson as translating clerk.

1793. The Republican newspapers continued to accuse the President and his cabinet of being enemies of France, the only friend of the United States, and of being friends of England, the bitter enemy of American liberties.

Genet mistook the clamors of a few for the sentiments of the majority of the people. He now had the audacity to authorize the French consuls in the ports of the United States to receive and sell prizes taken from the English, with whom we were at peace. He had also other projects in view, one to raise men in the Carolinas and Georgia and wrest Florida from Spain, another to raise men in Kentucky and make an attack on Louisiana.

In his correspondence with the government he became more and more insolent, imputed improper motives to its members, till finally the President transmitted his letters to Gouverneur Morris, American minister at Paris, with directions to lay them before the Executive Council—and request his recall.

When Genet received the information of this procedure he was thunderstruck. He charged Jefferson with insincerity, as “having an official language and a language confidential.”

Though sympathizing with France in her struggles for liberty, but not in her atrocious excesses, the great majority of the people, when informed of the true state of the case, began to hold meetings and express their approbation of the measures adopted by the President, to prevent his country from being embroiled in European quarrels.

1794.

In due time Morris presented the request that Genet should be recalled ; but another change had occurred in France. The management of affairs had passed into the hands of the Jacobins ; the Reign of Terror had commenced. Genet was unceremoniously recalled, and Mr

Fauchet appointed in his place. Genet did not return home, but became a citizen of the United States.

CHAP.
XXXIX

Through much toil and danger had the fertile valleys of the Monongahela and its tributaries been settled. The pioneers were principally Scotch-Irish Presbyterians, from eastern Pennsylvania and Virginia. Their trials were as great as those of the early colonists. At first their families lived in blockhouses or forts, through fear of the Indians, while they, as they cleared the forest or tilled the soil, were always armed; they even carried their rifles in their hands when on the Sabbath they assembled in the grove, or the rude log church, to hear the Gospel. The untrodden mountains lay between them and the settlements on the Atlantic slope. Across these mountains the only road was a bridle-path; the only conveyance a pack-horse. Iron and salt could only be obtained as these pack-horses carried them across the mountains. Salt was worth eight dollars a bushel; and often twenty bushels of wheat were given in exchange for one of salt. Their fertile fields produced an abundance of grain, especially wheat, from which they distilled the famed Monongahela whiskey, while their orchards were laden with apples and peaches from which they made brandies. To find a market for these, almost their only product, they must take a long and dangerous journey in flat-boats down the Ohio and the Mississippi to New Orleans, and thence by ship to the eastern markets.

From
1768
to
1784.

The tax levied upon the manufacture of domestic spirits was opposed by many. It was no doubt looked upon as unequal, as it was appropriated to the support of the Federal government, while the tax itself fell upon only a small portion of the community. But nowhere was it so persistently resisted as by these settlers of the four western counties of Pennsylvania. They rose in open rebellion; not only refused to pay the tax, but drove off the officers appointed to collect it. This opposition was

CHAP.
XXXIX.

1794.

Aug.
1.

not confined to obscure persons, but some of the most influential encouraged the multitude to resist the law ; but their ministers, to a man, exerted all their influence in favor of obedience. The more violent leaders openly boasted they would not only resist the law, but separate from Pennsylvania, and form a new State. They professed to have very little regard for the Federal government, and took encouragement from the same party that sustained Genet. To discover those who sent information of their high-handed measures to the government, these rebels robbed the mail ; they scoffed at the proclamation of the Governor of the State and also at that of the President. Thus matters continued for nearly two years. It shows the excitement which prevailed, that at one time with only three days' notice, there assembled on Braddock's Field nearly seven thousand armed men. They had for their motto "Liberty and no excise." The assemblage passed many resolutions, indicating an intention to resort to further acts of violence.

This meeting was presided over by Colonel Edward Cook, one of the judges of Fayette county, who had taken an active part in resisting the enforcement of the law. Its secretary was Albert Gallatin, from the same county, a native of Switzerland, who had been in the country but a few years ; a young man of superior education ; an ardent sympathizer with the French school of politics ; a violent opposer of the excise law. He had risen rapidly in popular favor, had been a member of the Legislature of the State, and also of a Convention to amend its Constitution.

Governor Mifflin wished to try the effect of a circular addressed to the insurgents, before calling out the militia. The circular was unheeded. The President issued a proclamation ordering the rebels to desist from their illegal proceedings ; at the same time he called out the militia, who responded promptly to the call.

The leaders soon found that, after all, the Federal

authority had the power and was determined to enforce the law. The leaders became anxious to screen the people from the anger of the government, and themselves from the anger of the people.

CHAP.
XXXIX

1794.

Nov.

Only when the militia, which had crossed the mountains, in two divisions, formed a juncture at Union Town, did the insurgents submit. A few arrests were made; the most active leaders had fled the country. Thus ended "The Whiskey Insurrection." The vigor and energy displayed by the Federal government in putting down the insurgents added strength to its authority.

The belligerents in Europe, though professing friendship, had but little regard to the rights of Americans. While France was detaining their ships in her ports, England was issuing orders to her navy to seize and detain all vessels freighted with French goods, or laden with provisions for any French colony. These measures would ruin American commerce. Congress passed a resolution which forbid any trading vessel to leave an American port for sixty days. This was designed to annoy the British, by not furnishing provisions for their navy,—yet it operated just as much against the French, through whose particular friends the bill was passed.

A war with England was impending. To avert such a calamity, and to arrange the difficulties existing between the two countries, Washington resolved to send a special ambassador to the Court of St. James. April

To this important mission he nominated the patriotic and pure-minded Chief Justice Jay. Jay was of Huguenot descent; as to his revolutionary services second only to the President himself; of the highest reputation as a jurist; his integrity, learning and disinterestedness had won him universal respect. In addition, there was a propriety in the selection that conciliated all minds, for he was one of the commissioners who had negotiated the

1788

**CHAP.
XXIX.**

1794.

first treaty with Great Britain. It would be a very difficult task to obtain all that the American people thought they had a right to ask. There were many assumptions of power which England would be unwilling to yield. To negotiate under such circumstances required much skill and judgment.

On his arrival in England, Jay was treated with great courtesy and respect, and a disposition was manifested to amicably arrange the difficulties which had arisen between the two countries.

Both parties had their complaints to make. The one, that the Western posts had not been given up according to the treaty ; that their neutral rights were not respected ; that compensation had not been given for the slaves carried off at the close of the war ; that their merchants were excluded from the West India trade, and that British sailors, who by adoption had become Americans, were impressed and forcibly taken out of American ships.

The other, that debts contracted with English merchants prior to the Revolution could not be collected ; that the property of Tories had not been accounted for. A treaty was finally concluded, not such as Jay wished, nor as justice demanded, but the best that could be obtained under the circumstances.

The Western posts were to be given up in two years ; the West India trade was granted on certain conditions, while free admission was given to British ports in Europe and in the East Indies, but no compensation could be obtained for the negroes. On the other hand, provision was made for the collection of the debts complained of.

A great clamor was raised against the treaty, which was grossly misrepresented. One party contended that its ratification would produce war with France, the other that its rejection would lead to a war with England. There were stormy debates on the subject in Congress, and in some of the State Legislatures. But when the difficulties

that stood in the way of obtaining more desirable conditions became known, and when the character of the treaty itself was understood, the more intelligent and conservative portion of the people, were in favor of accepting it. After a fortnight's debate in secret session the Senate advised its ratification, and thus was secured peace for some years; under the circumstances, a very important gain.

CHAP.
XXXIX1795.
June.

Treaties were also negotiated with Spain, in which the boundaries between the United States, Louisiana, and Florida were more definitely settled. The free navigation of the Mississippi was also secured to both parties, and the Americans were granted for three years the privilege of making New Orleans a place of deposit for their trade.

American commerce, deriving its main resources in the New England States, had increased very rapidly; the trade to the Mediterranean was, however, much hindered by depredations committed upon it by Algerine pirates. Whether to purchase an exemption from these annoyances, as Europe had been in the habit of, or to send a fleet and punish the marauders, was a difficult question to answer. It was thought better, for the present, to redeem the American sailors held as slaves by these barbarians. On this occasion a bill was passed to build six frigates; this was the foundation of the Navy of the United States. The following year a treaty was made with the Dey of Algiers, and the captives released on the payment of a heavy ransom—nearly a million of dollars were paid for this purpose. This money expended in fitting out an armament, and thoroughly chastising the pirates, would have been better policy,—as was proved some years afterwards.

Sept.
5.

Three more States—Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee—were admitted into the Union during the administration.

1796

As Washington was unwilling to serve another term,

**CHAP.
XXXIX.****1796.****1797**

the two parties arrayed their forces for a trial of strength. The Federalists nominated John Adams for President and the Republicans Thomas Jefferson. The parties were very nearly equally divided. Adams received two more votes than Jefferson, and was declared to be elected President, and the latter Vice-President.

Before retiring from public life Washington published a farewell address to the people of the United States. They responded to it with respect and affection ; the outburst of a nation's gratitude. It was a truly paternal address, warning the nation against party strife and sectional jealousies, advising the policy of impartial neutrality toward other nations when at war with each other, and as a safeguard to liberty, the preservation of the Union and the Constitution.

Thus ended the eight years of Washington's administration. When it commenced all was unsettled. Now the government was established. In that short time it had been severely tested.

The general policy of his administration became the fixed policy of the government of the United States. The most enduring monument of his integrity and wisdom ; of his patriotic and Christian principles. Strange as it may seem, the annals of unscrupulous political warfare do not furnish a parallel to the scurrilous slanders that were heaped upon him, not only during his administration but at its close. Such were the disreputable means used to induce the United States to become the ally of France and to join in a war against the hated England.

CHAPTER XL.

JOHN ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

Serious Aspect of Relations with France.—Commissioners of Peace.—The French Cruisers.—The Alien Act.—War impending.—Washington, Commander-in-Chief.—Capture of the Frigate L'Insurgente.—Peace concluded.—Death of Washington.—Eulogiums on his Character.—The city of Washington becomes the Seat of Government.

THE policy of the new administration was like that of the preceding, the cabinet officers of which were retained. The new President was not more influenced by love for England than by admiration for France. He had no expectation that the latter country would establish a government upon just and righteous principles. He expressed a "determination to maintain peace and inviolate faith with all nations, and neutrality and impartiality with the belligerent powers of Europe."

CHAP.
XL.

1797.

In the mean time relations with France assumed a serious aspect. Nothing would satisfy that power but a willingness on the part of the United States to be used as a dependant. While the French partisans were clamoring for such an alliance, the Directory exhibited their good will by issuing orders to seize and retain all American vessels having on board English manufactured goods.

Washington had recalled Monroe from the French Mission, and in his place sent Charles C. Pinckney. The latter sent his credentials to the Minister of Foreign Affairs, but a few days after Monroe was notified that a

CHAP. minister would not be received from the United States
XL. until grievances were redressed ; but Monroe himself was
1797. complimented for his devotion to the French cause ; under the circumstances, a compliment somewhat equivocal.

Pinckney was treated with studied neglect, bordering on insult ; finally he demanded his passports and departed for Holland. During this time French privateers and cruisers were capturing American merchantmen and treating their crews as prisoners of war. Some of the privateers were commanded by renegade Americans, who gloried in sailing under the colors of the "Great Republic."

France also stimulated Holland and Spain to complain of the partiality of Jay's treaty with Great Britain ; and was also suspected of an intention to rob Spain of Louisiana and Florida. With overpowering successes, and unscrupulous political morals, she was making rapid strides toward becoming the great power of the world.

Still more alarming was the fact that there existed in the United States a large party that opposed the neutral policy of the government, and openly favored an alliance with the "Terrible Republic."

May. The President called a special session of Congress, and laid before it a statement of the relations with France. When it became known that in their representative the United States had been deliberately insulted ; and that French aggressions on American commerce were increasing, the enthusiasm of the partisans of France somewhat declined.

Two special commissioners were appointed to proceed to Paris, and, if possible, adjust the existing difficulties. John Marshall and Elbridge Gerry were selected for this mission. The former, who was a Federalist, became afterward Chief Justice of the United States ; the latter, a Republican in sentiment, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, became afterward Vice-President. They were authorized to conclude a treaty ;



J. Marshall

one that should not conflict with treaties existing with other nations ; and to insist upon the right of the United States to remain neutral.

CHAP.
XL.

1798.

Oct.

The envoys joined Pinckney in Paris, and immediately made known to the Minister of Foreign Affairs the object of their mission. This minister was no less a personage than the celebrated Talleyrand, who some years before had been an exile in the United States, where, not receiving the attention which he thought he deserved, had returned home in no very complacent humor. At first he refused an audience to the commissioners, but soon after sent irresponsible persons to make them propositions, which, if found convenient, he could easily disavow. Thus for several months they were the victims of diplomatic trickery.

Meanwhile French cruisers captured American vessels, and French courts confiscated their cargoes, and imprisoned their crews. Finally the commissioners were given to understand, if they would advance a little money for the special benefit of Talleyrand and his worthy friends, and also pledge the United States to make France a loan, that negotiations would be commenced in earnest. This proposition was indignantly refused. Marshall and Pinckney were immediately ordered to leave the country, and Gerry, whose party at home sympathized with France, was invited to remain and negotiate a treaty. It was by such insults and injuries, that France hoped to intimidate the United States, and make them as dependent on her boasted magnanimity, as she had already made Spain. The disrespect offered the commissioners excited great indignation in the minds of the American people. Strange as it may seem, the opposition insisted that France was not to blame, but their own government, in faithfully enforcing its policy of neutrality. At length the correspondence between Talleyrand's agents and the commissioners was published. The French party offered no more

CHAP. apologies. The spirit of the insulted people was aroused
XL. The reply of Pinckney to the corrupt emissaries of Tal-
1798. leyrand—"Millions for defence, not one cent for tribute,"
 was echoed throughout the land. Addresses to the President, approving his measures, began to pour in from all parts of the nation. The French party soon dwindled to a small minority. The only hope Jefferson cherished was that Congress would adjourn. "To separate Congress now," wrote he, "will be withdrawing the fire from a boiling pot."

A large number of French exiles—it was thought nearly thirty thousand—were, at this time, in the country. Some of these acted as spies, at least so thought the government; some had tampered with the people of Kentucky to induce them to join in an expedition against Louisiana, then belonging to Spain, and some planned a similar expedition against Florida. Thus did they abuse the hospitality tendered them by endeavoring to create divisions among the people, and opposition to the policy of the government.

Under these circumstances Congress passed what was termed the "Alien Act," to continue in force two years,
July. by which the President was authorized to order out of the country aliens, who, by their plots might endanger the interests of the government in case of war. The law was never enforced, but nevertheless a large number of these exiles left the country.

Presently Marshall returned, and confirmed all that had been reported of the demands of the French Republic. The President sent in a message to Congress, which contained a statement of the embarrassing relations existing between the two countries. Preparations were made for war. It was resolved to raise and equip an army; to fortify important posts on the sea-coast; to prepare a naval armament, and to capture French armed vessels, but not to molest merchantmen.

The people came forward with alacrity to assist. CHAP.
XL.
 Money was subscribed liberally, especially in the seaboard towns, to equip a navy. The frigates so long building were just finished; and the Constitution, the United States, and the Constellation, the germ of our present navy, were fitted for sea 1798.

Washington was nominated as Lieutenant-General and Commander-in-Chief of the army—a nomination unanimously confirmed by the Senate. He heartily approved the measures of the President, and condemned those of France, saying that the administration ought to inspire universal satisfaction, and added, “we can with pure hearts appeal to Heaven for the justice of our cause, and may trust the final result to that kind Providence which has hitherto and so often signally favored the people of the United States.”

When it was seen that the United States would not submit to insult, but were preparing to repel it by force, the Directory made overtures for peace. This intimation came from Murray, the American Minister at Holland, to whom Talleyrand had communicated the proposition. The President accordingly nominated two commissioners, Oliver Ellsworth and W. R. Davie, who were to join Murray in Paris.

President Adams took the ground that they should not enter France, unless assurance was given that they would be received in a “manner befitting the Commissioners of an independent nation.”

On their arrival in France they found Bonaparte at the head of affairs, and the cunning and politic Talleyrand still in office. Negotiations commenced, and in due time a treaty was concluded, which in its provisions adjusted nearly all the matters of dispute.

The fleet which had been fitted out to protect American commerce from French depredations had not been idle. More than three hundred private vessels had been

Sept

CHAP. licensed to carry arms and to defend themselves from the
XL. common enemy. But the incident which gave the great-
 1799. est satisfaction to the country was the capture of the
 French frigate *L'Insurgente*, by the *Constellation*, under
 Feb. Captain Truxton. The two vessels were about equal in
 9. their complement of men and guns. After a severe con-
 test of an hour and a quarter, the *L'Insurgente* struck
 her colors, having lost in men twenty to one of her an-
 tagonist. This was the first time that an American
 armed vessel had met one of another nation on equal
 terms. As a presage of future triumphs it was most
 grateful to the people.

Ere long intelligence came of the conclusion of peace.
 The army was disbanded, but the defences along the coast
 were still maintained, and also it was resolved to keep the
 navy afloat.

But before it was known in America that the Com-
 missioners of peace had been kindly received, an event oc-
 curred which cast a gloom over the nation, and for a season
 silenced the clamors of party spirit—the death of Wash-
 ington. In riding about his farm he was exposed to a
 cold rain. The following morning he complained of a sore
 throat, an inflammation of the windpipe followed, which
 speedily produced death. With calm resignation he ex-
 pressed his willingness to die.

Dec.
 14.

A joint committee of both Houses of Congress reported
 resolutions recommending to the people of the United
 States, out of respect for his memory, to wear badges of
 mourning for thirty days, and also that his approaching
 birth-day be celebrated “by suitable eulogies, orations,
 and discourses, or by public prayers.” Thus did the
 people honor him “who was first in war, first in peace,
 and first in the hearts of his countrymen.”

The oration before both houses of Congress, was pro-
 nounced by Colonel Henry Lee, whom we have seen as
 the intimate though youthful friend of Washington. In

accordance with the above recommendation, his birth-day was celebrated throughout the land; the most eminent in the nation delighted to honor his memory. Nor was his name honored only in his native land. When the news reached Europe it elicited emotions of sadness and tokens of respect. The great British fleet of sixty ships of the line, under the command of Lord Bridport, and at the time lying in the English channel, lowered their flags to half mast. In his orders of the day to the French army, Bonaparte, then First Consul of France, paid a tribute to his memory, and afterward caused a funeral oration to be delivered before the civil and military authorities, and the standards of the army to be draped in mourning for ten days.

CHAP
XL.
1799.

Such were the public tokens of respect. But he had a higher honor—a place in the affections of the good and humane in private life more than any man of any age; he never received an office in the gift of the people, or at the hands of their representatives, that was not unanimously given. To him alone has gone forth that heartfelt respect, that reverence and gratitude which can be embodied only in the endearing title, the FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY.

Says an eminent British statesman and scholar, (Lord John Russell,) "To George Washington nearly alone in modern times has it been given to accomplish a wonderful revolution, and yet to remain to all future times the theme of a people's gratitude, and an example of virtuous and beneficent power." "His intellectual, like his moral qualities, were never brought out to display his own talent or enhance his own glory. They were forthcoming as occasion required, or the voice of the country called for them; largeness of combination, quickness of decision, fortitude in adversity, sympathy with his officers, the burst of impetuous courage, were the natural emanations of this great and magnanimous soul." ¹

¹ Life and Times of James Fox, Vol. 1, pp. 266 and 254

CHAP.
XL.

1799.

The administration of Adams, now drawing to its close, was in its policy like that of Washington. During these twelve years, there was much opposition, but that policy in the main has remained unchanged from that day to this. To be free from the turmoil of European politics was wisdom, but to carry it out required the calm determination of Washington, as well as the impulsive energy of Adams, "who was not the man to quail" when he thought duty called.

1800.

During the summer the seat of the Federal Government was removed to the City of Washington, then "a little village in the midst of the woods," in the District of Columbia.

1801
Feb.
17.

The struggle for political power was renewed with great vigor, and in the bitterness of party spirit. The Federalists nominated Adams and Charles C. Pinckney for President, while the Republicans nominated for the same office, Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr. When the electors came to cast their votes it was found that Adams had sixty-five, Pinckney sixty-four, and Jefferson and Burr had each seventy-three. In accordance with the provisions of the Constitution, it became necessary for the House of Representatives to make the choice. After thirty-six ballotings, during seven days, Jefferson was chosen President, and Burr Vice-President.

CHAPTER XLI.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

The President's Inaugural.—Purchase of Louisiana.—The Pirates of the Mediterranean.—Captain Bainbridge.—The Burning of the Philadelphia.—Tripoli Bombarded.—Death of Hamilton.—Aaron Burr.—Opposition to the Navy.—Gunboats.—Right of Neutrals infringed upon.—The unjust Decrees issued by England and France.—American Merchants demand the Right to defend themselves.—Impressment of American Seamen.—Treaty with England rejected by the President.—Affair of the Chesapeake.—The Embargo; its effect.—Public feeling on the subject.—Manufactures.—Embargo repealed.

On entering upon office Jefferson found the country in a prosperous condition. The revenue was abundant for current expenses; the stability of the government had inspired the industrial interests with confidence, commerce had increased beyond all precedent, and was pressing on to still higher triumphs.

CHAP.
XLI.

1801

The prospect of a general peace in Europe also gave assurance that American ships would no longer be subjected to unlawful seizures under the pretense that they carried cargoes contraband of war. The census just taken had shown the population to be, within a few hundreds, double what it was at the commencement of the revolution. The total population being 5,319,762. The number of members of the House of Representatives was 141.

The new President professed to deprecate party spirit: and wished to be recognized as a "moderate republican," proclaiming as "brethren of the same principles, we are

CHAP. called by different names, we are all Republicans, we are
 XLI. all Federalists." But in a very short time he began to
 1802. remove those from office, who were not of his own political
 opinions. The bitterness of party spirit was not allayed
 by this policy.

Immigrants had been pouring into the region North-
 west of the Ohio. In one year twenty thousand persons
 had passed into that territory to find homes. The people
 of the eastern portion, presented themselves at the door
 of Congress, asking permission to be admitted as a State.
 The request was granted, and the State of Ohio, with a
 population of seventy thousand, became a member of the
 April. Union.

The Spanish Governor of Louisiana, in violation of an
 existing treaty—that of 1795—refused permission to the
 traders on the Mississippi to deposit their produce at New
 Orleans. This act, so injurious to their commerce, caused
 a great commotion among the people beyond the moun-
 tains. The government was called upon to redress these
 grievances ; the Western people must have the privilege
 of freely navigating the Mississippi, or they would seize
 New Orleans, and drive the Spaniards from the territory.
 At this crisis intimations came from Paris that Spain, by
 a secret treaty, had ceded Louisiana to France. Bona-
 parte's vision of restoring the French power on this con-
 tinent had become somewhat dim, especially as the over-
 powering fleet of Great Britain would seize and occupy
 the mouth of the Mississippi, whenever it was known to
 belong to France. To avoid this contingency, he was
 willing to sell the entire territory of Louisiana to the
 United States. Accordingly Robert R. Livingston,
 American Minister at Paris, commenced negotiations,
 which resulted in the purchase of that region for fifteen
 millions of dollars. The rights and privileges of Ameri-
 can citizens were guaranteed to the inhabitants of the
 purchased territory.

1803.
 April
 30.

When the sale was completed, Bonaparte is said to have exclaimed :—" This accession of territory strengthens forever the power of the United States ;—I have just given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride."

CHAP.
XLI.

1803.

In the midst of the turmoil of wars in Europe, the pirates of the Mediterranean had renewed their depredations upon American commerce. Captain Bainbridge in command of the frigate *George Washington* was sent to Algiers with the usual tribute. The Dey ordered him to carry some presents and his ambassador to Constantinople. Bainbridge at first refused. The Dey was highly indignant, " You pay me tribute," said he, " by which you become my slaves, and therefore I have the right to order you as I think proper." However, as he was exposed to the guns of the castle and batteries, and learning that English, French, and Spanish ships of war had submitted to similar impositions, Bainbridge thought it more prudent to comply with the arrogant demand, hoping at some future time to avenge the indignity thus offered his country's flag. In closing his report to the Navy Department, he wrote, " I hope I will never again be sent to Algiers with tribute unless I am authorized to deliver it from the mouth of our cannon."

Sept

.808

As these depredations continued, and, while the tribute became more and more onerous, a squadron, under Commodore Preble, was sent to capture the pirates and blockade the harbor of Tripoli. The frigate *Philadelphia*, commanded by Bainbridge, when chasing an Algerine cruiser, ran upon a sunken rock near the shore. While thus disabled, Tripolitan gun-boats captured her after a contest, which lasted an entire day. Bainbridge and his crew of three hundred men, were made prisoners, and treated as slaves, for whom an exorbitant ransom was demanded.

Finding means, however, to communicate with the American squadron, he suggested the possibility of burn-

**CHAP
XLI.**

1804. ing the Philadelphia, as she lay moored under the guns of the castle. Lieutenant Decatur volunteered to act on the suggestion. A small Tripolitan trader had been captured a few days before. This vessel, now named the Intrepid, was selected for the enterprise. With a crew of seventy-six chosen men—all volunteers—Decatur sailed on his perilous undertaking. Combustibles were prepared in bundles, and to each man was assigned his particular duty.

1804. Passing into the harbor, they approached the Philadelphia about midnight. When hailed, the interpreter answered they were traders, who had lost their anchor in the late gale, and begged permission to make fast to the frigate till morning. The request was granted, and the Intrepid slipped alongside. Suddenly the Turks noticed that she had her anchors, and gave the alarm, shouting

Feb. 16. “Americanos.” In a moment more, Decatur and his brave companions clambered up one side of the vessel, while the panic-stricken Turks, after slight resistance, as rapidly passed over the other into the water. The faggots were handed up, and carried to every part of the ship, and in thirty minutes she was on fire from stem to stern. So dry had the vessel and the rigging become in that warm climate, that with difficulty the Americans escaped the flames. When clear of the frigate cheers of triumph told that the daring attempt had been successful. The flames soon lighted up the harbor; the castle opened with its guns upon the Intrepid, which, urged on by the rowers, was rapidly passing out of danger. Soon the guns of the burning frigate began to explode and throw their shot in all directions. This was one of the boldest enterprises ever undertaken by our naval heroes.

The squadron continued to blockade the harbor of Tripoli, and during the following summer bombarded the town. The contest was severe, and there was much hand-to-hand fighting on board gun-boats. Intelligence came

that other vessels were on their way, and a further attack was postponed. Before the arrival of this reinforcement the Bashaw came to terms, and desired to make peace ; other causes aided in hastening this event. He had driven his elder brother, Hamet, into exile, and usurped his throne. Captain William Eaton, American Consul at Tunis, concerted measures with the exiled brother to drive the usurper from Tripoli. With four hundred troops, only nine of whom were Americans, Eaton and Hamet marched a thousand miles across the Libyan desert, and suddenly appeared before Derne, which place, with the aid of the American fleet, they captured in a few days. The Bashaw sent troops against the invaders ; these troops were also defeated, then to save himself he made proposals to negotiate. Peace was concluded by Lear, the American consul at Tripoli, but not on as favorable terms as justice demanded. After an exchange of prisoners, man for man, there still remained two hundred Americans ; for these a heavy ransom was paid. Thus conceding the point in dispute, that the Bashaw had a right to receive ransoms for prisoners taken by his pirates.

CHAP.
XLI.

1804.

1805
June
3.

Jefferson was re-elected President, and, instead of Burr, George Clinton, of New York, Vice-President. Burr's intrigues had become known to both parties, and he experienced the just fate of the insincere—he was suspected by all, and trusted by none. Rejected by his own State, his political prospects ruined, and overwhelmed by debts, the result of unsuccessful speculations, his cold and unrelenting spirit panted for revenge. He looked upon the influence of Alexander Hamilton, as one cause of his political failure. To retrieve his political fortunes Burr was willing to risk his own life, if he could but kill the man whose patriotism and integrity he well knew, and whose influence he dreaded. He laid his plans to force Hamilton into a duel. They met on the banks of the Hudson, opposite New York, Hamilton previously de-

1805.

- CHAP.** claring that to fight a duel was contrary to his judgment
XLI. and his sense of moral duty ; that he wished Burr no ill,
 1804. and should make no effort to injure him. Burr took deliberate aim, and Hamilton was mortally wounded ; as he fell his own pistol went off accidentally. When the surgeon approached he said, " Doctor, this is a mortal wound." In twenty-four hours he was no more. Thus fell one of the brightest intellects, and purest, self-sacrificing patriots of the country—a victim to an unchristian custom, the relic of a barbarous age. His loss to the country was second only to that of Washington.

July
11.

The most imposing funeral ceremony the city ever saw revealed the depth of feeling in the public mind. Presently the correspondence between the parties was published ; this made known the designing manner in which Hamilton had been entrapped, and the disclosure produced in the public mind still greater indignation against Burr. The coroner's jury brought in a verdict of wilful murder against him. Fearful of violence he was fain to conceal himself for a few days in New York, and then to flee to Philadelphia, and finally to Georgia, until, as he expressed it, " the storm would blow over."

The sacrifice of a man so eminent, merely to appease the honor of a consummate villain, turned the minds of the people more directly to the moral turpitude, as well as the absurdity of the custom of duelling. Public opinion on this subject became, henceforth, embodied in laws, which banished the custom from some of the States, and will, it may be hoped, eventually banish it from all the others.

- The remaining history of Aaron Burr may be told in a few words. His intriguing and restless nature impelled him to other enterprises. The year following the death of Hamilton he went west. That section of the country contained many turbulent spirits, and had, moreover, manifested much dissatisfaction with the General Govern.
- 1805.



Wm. W. W.

ment. It was thought Burr had some designs for his own aggrandizement ; either to seize upon New Orleans and draw off the people of the valley of the Mississippi from their allegiance to the Union, or to make a foray into Mexico, overturn the existing government, and put himself at the head of the one he should establish. His mysterious movements from place to place, and the hints concerning his projects, which he threw out to those whom he wished to enlist, excited the suspicion of the federal government. After being permitted to plan and counter-plan for a year or more, he was finally arrested and brought to trial. But so cunningly had he managed the affair, that no decisive proof could be obtained of his designs. After a prolonged trial, he was acquitted of the charge of treason against the United States.

CHAP.
XLI.

1805.

1807.
Feb.

Though acquitted by the jury, public opinion treated him as guilty. Turned upon the world a penniless wanderer, suspected everywhere, even in foreign lands, where he lived in the greatest poverty, a pensioner upon the pittance doled out by a few friends. Ordered out of England as a French spy, and treated in France as a British emissary ; finally, he returned home, to find his family ties all broken, his daughter, an only and beloved child, having, under trying circumstances, recently perished at sea.

He made no advances to renew former friendships or acquaintance, and would gladly have shunned the public gaze, but he was compelled in his old age to resume the practice of the law as a means of support. With a ban resting upon him, he went down in loneliness to the grave, in his eighty-first year—a melancholy instance of prostituted talents.

1826

The country continued to be very prosperous ; the public expenses were lessened, and the finances were leaving every year an increasing surplus ; the belligerents

CHAP. in Europe had not yet interfered much with American
XLI. commerce, the great source of the federal revenue. The
1805. facilities for making money exchanges afforded by the
banks had a beneficial effect upon the internal trade of
the country. The exportation of domestic produce had
tripled in value since the adoption of the Constitution,
amounting to forty-two millions. There was also a rapidly-
increasing, and immensely profitable trade in the import
and export of foreign merchandise, exclusively for the
supply of foreign nations. Internal improvements were
not overlooked, and companies were formed for the con-
struction of roads and bridges, and others for insurance.

Washington and Adams, in their administrations, both endeavored to place the force of the country on a footing to command the respect of other nations. Hence they strongly urged the creation of a navy to protect American commerce, and the policy of fortifying important places along the coast. But Jefferson looked upon this as a useless expense. He would prefer to have the public ships hauled out of harm's way into harbors ; instead of prosecuting trade upon the ocean, where a cruiser of one of the belligerents might occasionally search a vessel for goods contraband of war, he would lay an embargo, and cut off all trade. Harbor fortifications were subjected to the same policy, falsely named economical ; gun-boats were to take the place of other defences. Even the frames of the six ships of the line, commenced by the previous administration, were cut up to make gun-boats.

For more than six years not a single vessel was added to the navy, though there were indications that war might speedily occur. The hostility in Congress to that branch of the service was confined principally to the southern members. It was avowed that in case of war it would be good policy to abandon the harbors and sea-coast, and retire into the interior ; that it would be better to give up commerce altogether than protect it by a navy.

The war between France and England had driven from the ocean all the merchant vessels of those nations. This trade passed into the hands of neutrals, the United States securing much the largest share.

CHAP.
XII.
1806.

The cruisers of the belligerent powers continued to infringe upon the rights of the neutrals. The battle of Trafalgar annihilated the fleets of Spain and France. The dread of French cruisers had passed away; and the British merchants began to complain of the vast profits made by the Americans in the neutral trade, whose emoluments they wished to secure to themselves. It was suspected that the vast amount of property carried by the Americans did not belong to them, but that it was taken to a neutral port merely to acquire a neutral character, and then transhipped to the ports belonging to those nations which were at war,—a charge no doubt true in many instances. On this ground American vessels were seized and condemned.

The English government passed a decree which declared the coast of Europe from the mouth of the river Elbe to Brest, to be in a state of blockade;—thus forbidding neutrals to trade within these prescribed limits. Napoleon, unable to contend with England upon the ocean, now issued the famous Berlin decree, which declared the coast of Great Britain to be in a state of blockade. In addition, he prohibited all trade in English merchandise. Two months later, Great Britain forbade all trade with France whatever. Thus these two nations wantonly disregarded the interests and rights of the commerce of the world. Both French and British cruisers, now captured American trading ships, and the commerce which extended to every sea, gradually dwindled down to a coasting trade. Owing to the government's policy—fondly cherished as the very essence of economy—the commerce of the nation was left to the tender mercies of ocean despots; there was no navy to give it protection, except

May.

Nov
21.

CHAP. ments was still open, and subject to future adjustment,
XLI. a treaty for ten years was negotiated between the two
 1807. countries. This treaty was more advantageous, upon the
 Jan. whole, to the United States, than the one negotiated by
 Jay, and was certainly better than the existing irritating
 relations of the two governments. France at this time,
 by virtue of the Berlin decree, continued to seize and con-
 fiscate American property, while Great Britain was anx-
 ious to be on as good terms with the United States as
 her situation would permit. Yet the President, and
Mar. Madison, his Secretary of State, arbitrarily rejected the
 treaty, without either consulting the rest of the cabinet,
 or the Senate which was in session. The plea given for
 this extraordinary act was, that the treaty was not satis-
 factory on the impressment question. The rejection of
 the treaty left the relations of the two countries in a worse
 condition than ever, even endangering their peace. Wash-
 ington and his cabinet, in ratifying the Jay treaty, secured
 to the country thirteen years of peace and unexpected
 prosperity ; the rejection of this treaty was succeeded by
 four years of ruinous evils, which resulted in plunging the
 nation into a war. Though the English government itself
 was disposed to conciliate, and friendly in its expressions,
 yet its naval commanders were exceedingly insolent in
 their intercourse with the Americans. The inability of
 the navy to maintain the nation's honor, tempted these
 unscrupulous commanders to insult its flag. Thus far
 they had confined their visits to merchantmen, presently
 they went a step farther.

The United States frigate Chesapeake, of thirty-eight
 guns, had enlisted four men who, it was said, were de-
 serters from the British ship-of-war Melampus. It was
 afterward proved that only one of them was an English-
 man. Strict orders had been issued by the government
 to the recruiting officers not to enlist British subjects,
 knowing them to be such.

Several English men-of-war were, at this time, lying in Chesapeake Bay; of the number was the frigate **Leopard**, of fifty guns. When it was known that the Chesapeake was about to put to sea, the **Leopard** passed out a few hours before, and when some miles from the coast, she neared and hailed the Chesapeake, under the pretense of sending despatches to Europe. A lieutenant came on board with a demand for the English seamen. Commodore Barron refused the demand, on the ground there were no such men on board. This refusal brought a broadside from the **Leopard**, which killed three men and wounded eighteen others. As the attack was entirely unexpected, and Barron unprepared, he struck his colors, after firing a single gun. The four men were taken from the Chesapeake, and the **Leopard** passed on to **Halifax**, while the Chesapeake returned to **Norfolk**, her crew deeply mortified and thirsting for revenge.

CHAP
XLI.

1807.

June
22.

The indignation of the whole people was intense. The insults of impressing men from merchantmen were as nothing, compared with firing into a national vessel. The President immediately issued a proclamation, in which he complained of the outrage, and ordered the British men-of-war out of the American waters, but as he had not the power to enforce the order it was disobeyed, and the people were enjoined not to have intercourse with the British vessels. He also called a special session of Congress, and a messenger was sent to England, with instructions to the American minister to demand satisfaction for the outrage. But a fast-sailing vessel had already left **Halifax** with the intelligence. The British government immediately disavowed the act, and sent, soon after, a special messenger to arrange the difficulty.

July
2.

In the mean while France and England vied with each other in issuing and enforcing decrees, which, in their effect, would ruin all neutral commerce. English Orders in Council required any vessel bound to a port in France

Nov

CHAP. to touch at some English port, and there obtain a license
XLI. to proceed on the voyage. Any vessel that did not com-
1807. ply with this despotic decree was forbidden to export
 French merchandise, unless the cargo was first brought to
 an English port and paid duties before it was shipped to
Dec. a neutral country. A month later Bonaparte retaliated
 by another decree, dated at Milan, by which every vessel
 that complied with the British decree, was declared to be
 forfeited. Thus American commerce was preyed upon by
 both parties.

As a scheme of retaliation, and to bring the belliger-
 ents to terms, Congress, on the recommendation of the
Dec. President, laid an embargo, which prohibited American
 commerce with France and England. A measure lauded
 by its advocates as the only means to save to their country
 American seamen and cargoes, and at the same time
 compel France and England to repeal their offensive de-
Nov. crees. The effect, however, was just the reverse. Bona-
 parte was delighted with the embargo, because it dimin-
 ished just so much of England's income, her means to
 carry on the war against himself; on the other hand,
 Great Britain was not dependent on American produce,
 the trade to Spain and Portugal, and their colonies, had
 both been recently opened to her merchants, who were
 very willing that their enterprising rivals should remain
 at home to experiment on political theories. The em-
 bargo itself was exceedingly unpopular in the United
 States. The intelligent portion of the people was un-
 able to see what benefit could be derived from their
 ships rotting in the ports, their seamen out of employ-
 ment, the industry of the country prostrated, and the
 millions of surplus property now worthless for want of a
 market.

Some years before Jefferson had expressed the senti-
 ment that the United States "should practise neither
 commerce nor navigation, but stand with respect to Eu-

rope precisely on the footing of China." Had the people submitted implicitly to the embargo, the system of non-intercourse with other nations would have been complete ; as it was, on the recommendation of the Executive, Congress found it necessary to pass stringent laws to enforce its observance. The President was authorized to call out the militia and employ ships as revenue cutters to prevent cargoes of American produce leaving the country. When it became known that this enforcing act had really become a law, public feeling, in many places, could be no longer restrained. Many of the papers announced its passage in mourning columns, under the motto, "Liberty is dead." General Lincoln, of revolutionary memory, resigned the collectorship of the port of Boston rather than enforce the law ; and great numbers of custom-house officers in other places did the same. In the agricultural portions of the country, the effect of the embargo was not so immediate as in the commercial. The planters and farmers, implicitly trusting in the wisdom of the Executive, stored up their cotton, tobacco and grain, hoping for a market when the belligerents would be pleased to repeal their hostile decrees

CHAP.
XII.

1807.

Some good grew out of this evil. The tens of thousands thrown out of employment by the effect of the embargo and kindred measures, were compelled by the iron hand of necessity to seek a livelihood by other means, and their attention was somewhat directed to domestic manufactures.

Opposition to the embargo still continued ; in Congress violent debates were held from day to day upon the exciting topic. At length even the planters and farmers began to waver in their faith, and to see as well as the New Englanders that it was a futile measure ; that instead of bringing the French and English to terms it was the subject of their ridicule, while it was becoming more and more ruinous to the nation.

CHAP.
XII
1807.

Madison, who had been elected President, plainly intimated his wish that the obnoxious measure should, in some way, be got rid of; and three days before the close of Jefferson's term the arbitrary act, forced upon the country without a moment's warning, and which brought ruin upon thousands in loss of property and of employment, was, to the joy of the nation, repealed.

Thus drew to a close Jefferson's administration. His theories interfered with his statesmanship, and he was unable to see that non-importation acts, so effective in times of colonial dependence, were, in the case of an independent nation, futile in the extreme, and therefore his favorite measure to bring England and France to terms was the embargo.¹ No one of our Presidents of Revolutionary fame was so unfortunate in his management of national affairs, and as such no statesman of those times has been so much overrated. When about to retire from the office he was deeply mortified to find that his well-meant theories, of which he was so tenacious, were found wanting when reduced to practice. When Madison was elected his successor, "he hastened to throw on him the burden of responsibility, and withdrew himself from all but the formalities of administration." "He laid down the sceptre; he had no party; Virginia herself ceased to be guided by his opinions."² Said John Randolph, one of his supporters, "Never has there been any administration which went out of office and left the nation in a state so deplorable and calamitous." His timid and, as it turned out, his spurious peace policy so weakened the Navy that it became nearly useless; while the coast defenses, as a result of the same theories, became almost dismantled.³ The measures which he persistently urged, and his adherents, with implicit faith in his wisdom, carried through Congress, rendered the nation contemptible in the eyes of the belligerents of Europe.

¹ Hist. pp. 612, 613, ² Life of Gallatin (Adams), pp. 379, 380.

³ Hist. pp. 606-608.

CHAPTER XLII.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Condition of the Country.—Erskine's Negotiation.—Depredations upon American Commerce.—Bonaparte's Rambouillet Decree.—Affair of the Little Belt.—The Census.—Indian Troubles.—Tecumseh and the Prophet.—Battle of Tippecanoe.—The two Parties.—The Twelfth Congress.—Henry Clay.—John C. Calhoun.—Threatening Aspect of Foreign Relations.—John Randolph.—Debates in Congress.—Another Embargo.—War declared against Great Britain.—Opposition to the War.—Riots at Baltimore.—Operations in the North-west.—Surrender of Hull.—Impressment of American Seamen.—Failures to invade Canada.

THE incoming administration was virtually pledged to continue the foreign policy of its predecessor, though that policy had not yet accomplished what its sanguine friends anticipated. The prediction of the Federalists—the conservative party of those days—that such measures would lead to a war with England, seemed to be near its fulfilment. The prospect was gloomy indeed. The nation was totally unprepared for such an event. Neither army nor navy to command respect ; no munitions of war worthy the name ; the defences of the seaboard almost worthless ; the revenue, owing to the embargo and non-intercourse acts, much diminished and diminishing more and more. The President and his cabinet desired to relieve the country of these pressing evils.

To accomplish this end, negotiations were commenced with Erskine, the resident British Minister. The youthful Erskine was a generous and noble-hearted man ; a

CHAP.
XLII.

1809.

CHAP. warm friend of the United States, unused to the tricks of
 XLII. diplomacy, he really wished to act generously for the in-
 1809. terests of both nations, and not selfishly for his own. He
 knew that Britain would derive great advantage from the
 renewal of trade with the United States, and hoped that
 the latter might be induced to take sides in the present
 struggle against France.

In accordance with the spirit of certain instructions, Erskine thought himself authorized to offer "a suitable provision for the widows and orphans of those who were killed on board the Chesapeake," and to announce the conditional repeal of the Orders in Council as far as they applied to the commerce of the United States. This repeal was to take place on the tenth of the following June.

1810. The President, on this assurance, issued a proclamation, giving permission for a renewal of commercial intercourse with Great Britain. The news was hailed with joy throughout the land. In a few weeks more than a thousand ships, laden with American produce, were on their way to foreign markets. This gleam of sunshine was soon obscured. Four months after the President issued another
 April. proclamation ; he now recalled the previous one, and again
 Aug. established non-intercourse between the two countries.

The British ministry had disavowed the provisional arrangement made by Erskine, giving as one reason that he had gone beyond his instructions. In the communication accepting Erskine's offer to provide for the sufferers in the Chesapeake affair, the provision was spoken of as an "act of justice comporting with what was due from his Britannic majesty to his own honor." This uncourteous remark gave offence, and furnished another pretext for breaking off the negotiation.

The failure of this arrangement, which had promised so much, greatly mortified the President and his cabinet, and as greatly wounded the self-respect of the nation. In consequence of this feeling, Jackson, the special envoy,

sent soon after by England, was not very graciously received. Negotiations were, however, commenced with him, but after exchanging angry notes for some months, all diplomatic intercourse was suspended between the two countries.

CHAP
XLII.

1810.

American commerce had now less protection than ever. In the desperate conflict going on in Europe it was impossible to obtain redress from any of the belligerents. The ocean swarmed with French and English cruisers, while Danish privateers infested the northern seas. They all enjoyed a rich harvest in plundering American merchantmen, under the convenient pretence that they carried goods contraband of war. Great numbers of ships thus pillaged were burned at sea to destroy all traces of the robbery. Willing to trust to their own genius to escape capture, the American merchants asked permission to arm their ships in self-defence. Congress denied the request, on the ground that such a state of affairs would be war! The people, however, thought there was little to choose between actual war and a system of active legalized piracy. Even the planters and farmers, finding on their hands a vast amount of produce, for which a market was denied, were now inclined to strengthen the navy, that it might protect commerce, or if necessary make an irruption into Canada, and by that means compel Great Britain to repeal her odious decrees.

France in the mean time was committing greater outrages on American commerce than even England. Bonaparte issued a decree, the Rambouillet, by which any American vessel that entered a French port or a port of any country under French control, was declared liable to confiscation. It shows the deliberate design of this piratical decree, that it was not promulgated till six weeks after its date. The first intimation American merchants received of its existence, was the seizure of one hundred and thirty-two of their ships, in French ports. These

Mar.
23.

CHAP.
XLII.

1810.

were soon after sold with their cargoes, and the money, amounting to eight millions of dollars, placed in the French treasury. Expostulations against such high-handed measures were treated with contempt and insult. The French minister of foreign affairs even charged the United States "with a want of honor, energy, and just political views," in not defending themselves. Bonaparte's great object was to drive them into a war with England, and thus exclude from her American produce. With this intention he pretended he would revoke the Berlin and Milan decrees, on condition the United States would make their rights respected, or in other words, go to war with England. At this time the only port in Europe really open to American commerce was that of Archangel in Russia. There American ships, after running the gauntlet between French and Danish cruisers, landed their cargoes of merchandise, which were thence smuggled into France and Germany.

Ere long Bonaparte's want of money mastered his hatred of England, and he unblushingly became the violator of his own decrees, and sold to the Americans, at enormous prices, licenses which gave them permission to introduce their products into French ports.

None felt the national insult given in the Chesapeake affair so deeply as the naval officers. They were anxiously watching for an opportunity to retaliate.

The frigate *President*, Captain Rodgers, was cruising off the capes of Delaware, when a strange sloop-of-war gave chase, but when within a few miles, her signals not being answered, she stood to the southward. The *President* now in turn gave chase, and in the twilight of the evening came within hailing distance. Rodgers hailed, but was answered by the same question ; another hail was given with a similar result. The stranger fired a gun, which was replied to by one from the *President*. These were

succeeded by broadsides from both vessels. The action lasted about twenty minutes, when the stranger was completely disabled. Rodgers hailed again, and now was answered that the vessel was his Majesty's sloop-of-war *Little Belt*. The disparity in the injury done to the respective vessels was quite remarkable. The *Little Belt* had more than thirty of her crew killed and wounded, while the *President* was scarcely injured, and had only one person slightly wounded. The affair created much excitement in both nations, and served to increase that alienation of feeling which had been so long in existence. The statements of the commanding officers differed very much as to the commencement of the encounter, but as each government accepted the testimony of its own officers, the matter was permitted to drop.

CHAP
XLII.1810
May
16.

The census just taken, showed the following result:—
the ratio of representation was fixed at thirty-five thousand :

Free Whites.	Slaves.	All others.	Totals.	Reps.
5,862,093.	1,191,364.	186,446.	7,239,903.	182.

Events of serious interest were occurring on the western frontier. Numbers of Indian tribes from time to time had ceded their lands and moved farther west. But the insatiable white man still pressed on ; his cultivated fields still encroached upon the Indian's hunting-grounds, and game was fast disappearing. When is this grasping at land to end ? asked the savages of each other. Two brothers, twins, of the Shawnee tribe, resolved to free their brethren from the aggressions of the settlers. Their plans were well laid, and showed an intimate knowledge of the secret of influence. The one, Tecumseh, was to play the warrior's part, the other Elskwatawa, more commonly known as the Prophet, appealed to their superstitions ; he professed to be a wonderful medicine-man, and in communication with the Great Spirit.

Tecumseh travelled from tribe to tribe, all along the

CHAP. frontiers, from north of the great lakes to the Gulf of
XLII. Mexico, and by his eloquence endeavored to unite them

1811. in a universal conspiracy against the common enemy
He knew the attempt to expel the invaders would be
vain, but he hoped his people would unite as one man,
and refuse to sell them any more of their lands. To ac-
complish their purpose the Indians must be independent ;
they must dispense with the few comforts they received
from the white man, and they must spurn the religion
which missionaries had been laboring to teach them. The
Prophet fulfilled his part ; he awed his simple auditors
with imposing powwows ; the Great Spirit had given him
marvellous powers. He could at a word make pumpkins,
as large as wigwams, spring out of the earth ; or ears of
corn, each large enough to feed a dozen men ; he appealed
to their reverence for the customs of their ancestors, and
sneered at their degradation in being the slave of the
white man's whiskey, or fire-water, as he significantly
called it. He must be obeyed—they must throw aside
the blanket and dress in skins ; instead of the gun they
must use the ancient bow and arrow ; and the iron toma-
hawk must give place to the stone hatchet of their fathers ;
but above all, they must discard the religion of the white
man ; it was the rejection of their ancient religion, which
made the Great Spirit so angry.

Alarm spread along the frontier settlements. The
Miamis had sold a portion of their lands on both sides of
the Wabash. Tecumseh was absent at the time, but
protested afterward, contending that as all the lands be-
longed equally to all the Indians, no tribe had a right to
sell a portion of them without the consent of the others.

General William Henry Harrison, the Governor of the
Territory of Indiana, held a conference with Tecumseh,
who at the time professed to be friendly, but his conduct
afterward excited suspicion. Lest the Indians should
unexpectedly commence hostilities, Harrison marched to

the town lately established by the Prophet, at the junction of the Wabash and Tippecanoe rivers. Messengers sent by the Prophet met the army a few miles from the town. Though Indians were hovering around the army on its march, yet efforts to hold a conference with them had thus far been unsuccessful. The messengers expressed great surprise that the Americans should approach their town, since the Prophet and his people were very desirous of peace. Harrison assured them that he had no intention to engage in hostilities, unless they themselves should attack him, and he invited the Prophet and his chiefs to an interview the next day. The messengers departed apparently pleased with the proposal, and on their part promised full compliance.

CHAP.
XI.II.
1811.

Knowing the Indian character, Harrison suspected treachery, and encamped with great caution; his men, placed in a hollow square, slept upon their arms. The next morning, about four o'clock, the Indians suddenly attacked the camp, but failed to break the line. For three hours the contest was very severe. The Indians would advance with great impetuosity, and then retreat to renew the effort. These movements were regulated by signals given by rattling deers' hoofs. When daylight appeared, the mounted men charged, and the savages fled in great haste. The next day the Prophet's town was found to be deserted. Tecumseh himself was not present at the battle of Tippecanoe.

Nov
7.

The belligerents of Europe still continued their aggressions upon American commerce. Recent intelligence from France indicated but little prospect of obtaining redress for present grievances, while the impressment question made the affairs with Great Britain still more complicated. Differences of opinion prevailed, as to the best means of obtaining justice for these foreign aggressions. The people of New England, and the merchants of the

CHAP. commercial cities and seaports of the other States, felt
 XLII. especially aggrieved by the policy of the national govern-
 1811. ment. The embargo and non-importation acts had ruined
 their commerce, and brought distress upon tens of thou-
 sands. Upon them, almost alone, had fallen the evils
 resulting from these political experiments. The people
 of the West, and of the interior of the Atlantic States,
 were in favor of hostilities ; their territory would be exempt
 from invasion, and they had no seaport towns to suffer
 from bombardment. Thus there were really two parties,
 the one in favor of obtaining redress by peaceful measures,
 the other by resorting to war.

In view of these threatening indications, the Presi-
 dent, by proclamation, convened the twelfth Congress a
 month earlier than the usual time of meeting. This
 Nov. Congress and the one succeeding are no less remarkable
 4. for the measures they introduced than for the unusual
 number of their members, who afterward filled a large
 space in the history of the country. It was a transition
 period. The patriots of the revolution, now venerable
 with age, were fast passing away from the councils of the
 nation, while their places were filled by more youthful
 members. Heretofore the leaders in Congress had been
 moderate in their measures, and were unwilling, unless
 for the best of reasons, to plunge the nation into a war.

As a member of the House of Representatives, appeared
 Henry Clay, of Kentucky. The son of a Baptist clergy-
 man of Virginia, he had been left at an early age a penni-
 less orphan. Struggling through many trials, his native
 eloquence had now placed him in the foremost rank of his
 country's orators. Ardent and generous, bland and yet
 imperious, as captivating in social life as he was frank in
 his public acts, he was destined to wield a mighty in-
 fluence in the councils of the nation. John C. Calhoun,
 of South Carolina, was also a member ; the close student
 and ardent theorist, dealing in first principles, he was



H. Clay

logical and eloquent. His style more suited to forensic debates than to popular assemblies.

CHAP.
XLII.

The President, in his message, directed the attention of Congress to the threatening aspect of Foreign Relations. This led to animated debates, in which the policy of peace or war; the defences of the country; the preliminary measures in case of a declaration of hostilities, came up for discussion. The speeches of the members may be taken as the exponents of the opinions of their constituents. The people of the West were especially clamorous for war. The recent outbreak of the Indians, on the western frontiers, was confidently attributed to the influence of British emissaries. This charge, though based upon surmises, served to increase the prejudice against England, and gave renewed life to the hatred of her produced by the Revolution.

1811

Finally, the Committee of Foreign Relations, in their report to the House, recommended, in the words of the President, "That the United States be immediately put into an armor and attitude demanded by the crisis; that an additional force of ten thousand regulars be raised; that the President be authorized to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers; and also that the vessels of the navy worthy of repair be fitted up and put in commission." Two separate resolutions were offered; one authorized the merchants to arm in self-defence, and the other, as a preliminary to war, to lay an embargo for ninety days. After an animated discussion these were both rejected.

Dec

Felix Grundy, of Tennessee, avowed that the report of the Committee was designed to prepare the public mind for war. "We are pledged," said he, "to France to continue our restrictions against Great Britain; we have tied the Gordian knot; we cannot untie it; we can cut it with the sword." "Though our restrictive system operates unequally, we must maintain it." He also advo-

CHAP.
XLII.1811.
Dec.

cated the invasion and conquest of Canada, and the reception of her inhabitants as members of the confederacy, in order to preserve the equilibrium of the government. "When Louisiana," said he, "will be fully peopled, the Northern States will lose their power; they will be at the discretion of others; they can be depressed at pleasure." Therefore he was not only in favor of admitting Canada, but also Florida.

John Randolph, of Virginia, in that sarcastic manner peculiar to himself, characterized the embargo and non-importation acts as most impolitic and ruinous measures—they had "knocked down the price of cotton to seven cents and tobacco to nothing," while they had increased the price of every article of first necessity three or four hundred per cent. This is the condition into which we have brought ourselves by our want of wisdom. But is war the true remedy; who will profit by it? Speculators, commissioners and contractors. Who must suffer by it? The people. It is their blood, their taxes, that must flow to support it. Will you plunge the nation into war, because you have passed a foolish and ruinous law, and are ashamed to repeal it?

He indignantly repelled the charge of British attachment made against those who were not willing to rush into war with England. "Strange," said he, "that we have no objection to any other people or government, civilized or savage; we find no difficulty in maintaining relations of peace and amity with the Autocrat of all the Russias; with the Dey of Algiers and his divan of pirates, or Little Turtle of the Miamis, barbarians and savages, Turks, and infidels of every clime and color, with them we can trade and treat. But name England, and all our antipathies are up in arms against her; against those whose blood runs in our veins, in common with whom we claim Shakspeare and Milton, Newton and Locke, Sidney and Chatham, as brethren. Her form of

government, the freest on earth, except our own, and from which every valuable principle of our institutions has been borrowed. There are honest prejudices growing out of the Revolution. But by whom had they been suppressed when they ran counter to the interests of his country? By Washington. By whom are they most keenly felt? By those who have fled to this abused country since the breaking out of the French revolution, and who have set themselves up as political teachers." This was in allusion to the editors of nearly all the papers in favor of war, who were foreigners—"these are the patriots who scruple not to brand with the epithet of Tory, those men by whose blood your liberties have been cemented."

CHAP
XLII

1811

Henry Clay urged, in reply, that the only means left to obtain the recognition of our national rights was to fight for them. A war would produce the repeal of the Orders in Council, and give us commerce and character; the nation by this mongrel peace would not only lose its commerce, but its honor. If we yield one point, presently another will be demanded; our only safety is to defend the nation's rights;—even if the seaboard should be subdued, yet the energy of the West would save the liberties of the country. Shall we bear the cuffs and scoffs of British arrogance, because we fear French subjugation? Who ever learned, in the school of base submission, the lessons of noble freedom, and courage, and independence!"

Sept
5

On the other side of the House, it was admitted that causes for war existed, but were they sufficient to justify the government of the United States in rushing unprepared into a contest with the most powerful nation on earth? This was the question to be decided by Congress. "What are we to gain by war?" asked Sheffey of Virginia. "Shall we throw away a trade of thirty-two millions with Great Britain for two with France? Peace is our policy; we are now the most prosperous and happy people on earth. This is more to us, than all the Orders

CHAP. in Council or the trade with France. We cannot bring
 XLII. Great Britain to terms by embargo and non-importation
 1811. acts ; neither can we starve the world by refusing to export our surplus grain. Our revenue is low enough now, in time of war it will be almost nothing. We should be willing to fight for the rights of impressed native-born Americans, but not for the right to harbor deserters from the British service.”—“Is this embargo a preparation for war ? ” asked Josiah Quincy of Massachusetts. “We have no information that England intends war. It is her policy to continue commerce with us, not to destroy it. But we are told that the object is to protect our merchants. Heaven help them from embargo protection ! The merchants have petitioned—not for embargo—not for commercial embarrassment and annihilation—but for protection.”

1812. While these debates were in progress in the House, the same general subject was under discussion in the Senate. In both Houses an unusual number of southern members were now in favor of making the navy more efficient. It was urged that the only way to bring Great Britain to terms was by harassing her commerce on the ocean. To do this a fleet was needed. “Create a fleet of thirty frigates,” said Lloyd, of Massachusetts, “and New England alone will officer it in five weeks.” “How can we contend with the most colossal power the world ever saw, except by our navy, scattered over the ocean, requiring ten times as many British vessels to watch them ? Adopt this policy, and soon the English people would ask their government, Why this war upon our trade ? why violate the rights of Americans ?¹ For whose benefit is this war ? Soon you will force the people of the United States to become their

¹ “They (the Orders in Council) were grievously unjust to neutrals, and it is now (1850) generally allowed that they were contrary to the law of nations, and to our own municipal laws.”—Lord Chief Justice Campbell, in his *Lives of the Chancellors*, vol vii. p. 218.

own manufacturers ; you will stimulate them to become a naval power, which one day may dispute with you the supremacy of the ocean." "In a short time the English government would be compelled to repeal its odious decrees." "To protect commerce is to aid agriculture, to benefit the northern as well as the middle and southern States. Moreover, it is essential to the preservation of the Union ; the commercial States will not endure that their rights should be systematically trampled upon from year to year, and they denied the defence which the God of nature has given them."

CHAP.
XLII.

1812

The discussions of these five months had a great influence upon the public mind. Though unwilling to use harsher measures than to authorize the merchants to defend themselves by arming their ships, the President sent a special message to Congress recommending an embargo for sixty days. The bill was amended by substituting ninety for sixty, in which form it passed, debate being cut short by the rule of the previous question.

April
4.

One month and a half later, intelligence from France made known that Bonaparte, in violation of his word, had declared the obnoxious decrees of Berlin and Milan henceforth the settled policy of the Empire. Thus the Emperor had entrapped the President. But England was as much in the wrong as France, and if so, why not declare war against both ?—It was openly avowed in Parliament that the offensive decrees and blockades must be maintained, or France could receive raw material from the United States ; continue her manufactures, and thus obtain the means to carry on the war. Great Britain also wished to secure for her own people the monopoly of commerce, as well as that of manufacturing for the world.

June

The President finally sent another message to Congress, in which he recapitulated the wrongs inflicted by England in her impressments and violations of the rights of neutrals. This was plainly a war message, and in accordance with

CHAP.
XLII.

1812.
June
18.

that view, a bill was drawn up declaring war against Great Britain. It was passed by a strictly party vote :— in the House 79 to 49, in the Senate 19 to 13.

The people were far from being unanimous in their approbation of the declaration of war. The minority of the Lower House of Congress published an address to their constituents, in which the views of those opposed to the war found expression. After a review of the controversy between the United States and the belligerents, they contend there was equal cause for hostilities against both England and France ; that it was unreasonable to expect the full recognition of neutrals' rights while the desperate conflict in Europe was in progress ; that conflict would soon end, and then the cause for war on our part would be removed. The Address says, " The effect of the British orders of blockade, is to deprive us of the commerce of France and her dependencies, while they leave open to us the commerce of all the rest of the world ; the former worth yearly about six millions and a half, and the latter worth thirty-eight millions. Shall the latter be sacrificed for the former ? A nation like the United States, happy in its great local relations ; removed from that bloody theatre of Europe, with a maritime border opening vast fields of enterprise ; with territorial possessions exceeding every real want ; its firesides safe ; its altars undefiled ; from invasion nothing to fear ; from acquisition nothing to hope, how shall such a nation look to Heaven for its smiles, while throwing away as though they were worth less, all the blessings and joys which peace and such a distinguished lot include ? But how will war upon the land protect commerce ? How are our mariners to be benefited by a war which exposes those who are free, without promising release to those who are impressed ? But it is said that war is demanded by honor. If honor demands a war with England, what opiate lulls that honor to sleep over the wrongs done us by France ? "

Such was the diversity of opinion as to the expediency of engaging in war, especially when the country, in every respect, was so unprepared. The opponents of the measure were assailed as unpatriotic, which they retorted by charging the advocates of war with subserviency to the policy of France.

CHAP.
XLII.

1812

It was easier for Congress to declare war, than to obtain the means to prosecute it. The treasury was almost empty, the non-importation acts, and embargoes, had nearly ruined the revenue ; the army was very limited in number, and very deficient in officers of experience ; while the navy was wanting in ships and munitions. Congress passed a bill to enlist twenty-five thousand men as regulars, and authorized the President to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers.

In appointing officers for the army, recourse was had, almost exclusively, to those who had served in the Revolution ; but the most prominent of these had passed away, and the remainder, with but one or two exceptions, had been engaged in civil affairs for thirty years ; and men competent to drill the recruits were not to be found. To remedy this want, Congress, now for the first time, made provision for the constant and liberal instruction of two hundred and fifty cadets in the military art, by establishing professorships in the Academy at West Point. Here was another instance of the foresight of Washington. He had, during his administration, urged upon Congress to establish and maintain a school in which military tactics should be taught to officers, who in turn could easily drill the militia. The wise policy of the measure was amply shown in the rapidity with which the American volunteers were drilled and made efficient soldiers in the late Mexican war. But for the present the nation suffered severely from false economy in not founding the Academy when first proposed.

1846

The first exhibition of the war spirit and the party

CHAP. feeling which existed was an attempt to stifle the freedom of
XLII. the press. The editor of a paper in Baltimore, Alexander
1812. Hanson, a grandson of a president of the continental congress, had spoken in moderate terms in condemnation of the
June declaration of war. A few days after, the mob, headed by
22. a Frenchman, destroyed his press and compelled him to fly for his life. Receiving no protection in his rights, as the magistrates connived at the outrage, Hanson and some twenty others thought it their duty to vindicate the liberty of the press. Among this number was General Henry Lee,—the chivalric Light Horse Harry of the Revolution,—the intimate friend of Washington, his eulogist by appointment of Congress, afterward Governor of Virginia, and General Lingan, also a worthy officer of the Revolution. They determined to defend the office of the paper. The mob appeared and stoned the house; the magistrates meanwhile made no effort to quell the riot. Thus the rabble raged during the night; in their attempts to force their way into the house, one of the ringleaders was shot. General Lingan was killed outright, and some of the other defenders of the office were most shamefully mangled and abused. General Lee was maimed for life. The leaders of the riot were never punished, though afterwards brought to trial,—a mere farce,—the district attorney even expressing his regret that all the defenders of the office had not been killed.

General William Hull, who had served with some distinction in the Revolution, and now Governor of Michigan Territory, was appointed commander of the forces in that region. The Territory contained about five thousand inhabitants, mostly of French origin. He received orders to invade Canada, the ardent friends of the war complacently thinking the inhabitants of that British province would cheerfully put themselves under the protection of the stars and stripes. Hull, however, found himself in a short time surrounded by a superior force of British and In-

dians ; the enemy also held possession of Lake Erie, and had easy communication with the rest of Canada, while between Hull's army and the settlements, intervened a vast and unbroken forest of two hundred miles. He urged upon the government to secure the command of the Lake before any attempt should be made at invasion, and also to furnish him not less than three thousand well provisioned troops. But he was told that he must content himself with two thousand men, while nothing could be done to secure the control of the Lake.

CHAP
XLII
1812.

When Hull arrived at DETROIT, then a village of some eight hundred inhabitants, he had but eighteen hundred men, of whom the greater part were militia ; there he received orders to invade Canada immediately. But by a strange blunder, the intelligence of the declaration of war, designed for Hull, and franked by the Secretary of the Treasury, fell into the hands of the British. They availed themselves of the information, and immediately seized Mackinaw ; the first intimation the garrison of that distant post received of the declaration of war. In a short time Hull himself was surrounded, and his communications cut off.

July
9.

The British general Proctor came up the Lake with reinforcements, whilst the British Fur Company enlisted their employees and excited the Indians. To open a road and obtain supplies, Hull sent out a detachment, but it fell into an ambuscade and was defeated. He now fortified himself, and to open communications to the river Raisin, sent another detachment under Colonels McArthur and Cass ; they became bewildered in a swamp, and were forced to find their way back to the camp.

Aug
14.

Presently General Brock, governor of Lower Canada, arrived at Malden with more reinforcements. He passed over the river and summoned Hull to surrender, who refused, and an attack was made upon his position, both from the British vessels and batteries. Brock landed and approached with seven hundred and fifty regulars, and as

CHAP.
XLII.

1812.

Aug.

16.

many Indians. Hull had but eight hundred men, and, threatened with destruction, as he imagined, by an overwhelming force, he surrendered his army and all Michigan at the same time.

Great indignation was expressed at this failure. The difficulties of Hull's position were very great, and perhaps, while no one doubted his personal courage, he may have wanted that sternness of soul so necessary to a successful commander. Those in authority screened themselves, by making the unfortunate general the scape-goat for their blunders, in sending him with a force and means so inadequate. When brought to trial, two years afterward, he urged in defence, that all the inhabitants of the territory would have been exposed to certain massacre had he attempted further resistance. The court, however, found him guilty of cowardice, and sentenced him to be shot ; but in consideration of his revolutionary services, the President granted him a pardon. His papers, since published, have revealed the insurmountable difficulties that surrounded him.

It is remarkable that one of the causes of the war, was removed within four days after its declaration. France unconditionally repealed the Berlin and Milan decrees, then Great Britain repealed her Orders in Council, which had been based on the French decrees. The impressment question still remained unsettled. Nearly six thousand cases of alleged impressment were on record in the State Department at Washington. It was admitted on the floor of the House of Commons, that there were probably sixteen hundred native-born Americans held in bondage in the British navy. Of these several hundred had already been liberated, and a willingness was expressed to discharge the remainder, as soon as their nationality was fully known. But the British naval officers complained that the plea of American citizenship was very much abused ; by forged documents, or by certificates, originally

genuine, but transferred from one seaman to another as occasion required. The English government, moreover, was so trammelled by forms that very seldom could the impressed sailor obtain redress ; all such cases must be brought before the Court of Admiralty in London, to reach which was almost impossible.

CHAP.
XLII.

1812

This, after all, was to be a war to protect personal freedom ; to obtain security from the visits to our ships of British press-gangs, led by insolent officers, and as such took hold of the sympathies of the American people. But Britain said, pass a law prohibiting our seamen from enlisting in your service, and we will not search your ships. The reply was, the flag of the United States must shield those seeking its protection. This sentiment appeared to England very like an effort to seduce her seamen from their allegiance.

When intelligence of the declaration of war reached England, the government acted generously in relation to the American vessels in its ports. Instead of being confiscated as in France, these ships were permitted six weeks to load and unload, and in addition were furnished with protections against capture by English cruisers on their way home. Yet these very vessels and their cargoes were liable to confiscation, when they should arrive in their own land, and that by a law of Congress !

Aug

As one of the causes of the war had been removed, Foster, the British Minister at Washington, proposed a cessation of hostilities until another effort should be made to arrange the impressment question. This proposal was not accepted by the American government. Not until all hope of reconciliation was passed, did the English authorities issue letters of marque and reprisal against American commerce ; and they still continued to grant licenses and protection to American vessels carrying flour to Spain for the use of the British armies in that country.

Hull's surrender threw a shadow over the prospect of

- CHAP. conquering Canada. Strenuous efforts were made to in-
 XLII. crease the army on the frontiers of New York. Major.
 1812. General Dearborn, who, when a youth, had served in the
 Revolution, and had been Secretary of War, under Jefferson,
 had under his command, in the vicinity of Lake Cham-
 plain, five thousand troops, three thousand of whom were
 regulars; and two thousand militia were stationed at
 different points on the St. Lawrence, east of Sackett's
 Harbor, while another army, miscellaneous in character,
 being composed of regulars, volunteers and militia, was
 stationed at different points from the village of Buffalo to
 Fort Niagara. The latter troops were under the com-
 mand of General Van Rensselaer.

To insure success the Americans must have the control of the Lakes Erie and Ontario; on the latter they had already a little sloop-of-war, of sixteen guns, and manned by a regular crew. Captain Chauncey, of the
 Sept. navy yard at New York, was appointed to the command of the Lakes. He purchased some merchant vessels, and fitted them out with guns and other equipments, brought from Albany, at an immense amount of labor. He soon however swept the Lake of British ships, which took refuge in Kingston harbor; the Frontenac of the times of French rule in that quarter. Lieutenant Elliot, in the mean time, was sent to equip a fleet on Lake Erie. By a daring exploit he cut out from under the guns of Fort
 Oct. Erie, two British armed vessels, which had just come
 9. down the Lake from Detroit.

The invasion of Canada commenced by an attempt to obtain possession of Queenstown, on Niagara river. Owing to a deficiency of boats, only about six hundred men, partly regulars and partly militia, passed over. Colonel S. Van Rensselaer, who commanded the militia, became separated from his men, and Colonel Christie, who commanded the regulars, failed on account of the rapidity of the current to reach the shore. Those who landed were

immediately attacked with great vigor. Rensselaer soon fell, wounded, but he ordered Captains Ogilvie and Wool to storm the battery, which they did in fine style, driving the British into a strong stone house, from which they could not be dislodged. General Brock, the same to whom Hull surrendered a few months before, was in command. Suddenly he headed a sortie from this house, which was promptly repulsed, and he himself slain.

CHAP.
XLII.

1812.

Oct.
18.

During this time, a space of five or six hours, the Americans were striving to pass the river, but only five or six hundred succeeded. Suddenly a band of Indians emerged from the woods, and joined in the fray; these were soon put to flight by Lieutenant Winfield Scott, who, with a company of regulars, volunteered for the purpose. The want of boats, and the want of system, had prevented a suitable number of Americans from passing over. In the mean while General Sheafe was advancing from Fort George, with reinforcements for the British. This intelligence, together with the sight of the wounded, who were brought in boats to the American side, somewhat cooled the ardor of the militia, and they refused to pass the river to aid their countrymen. Their wits were also sharpened, and they suddenly discovered that their commander had no *constitutional* authority to lead them into Canada. The result was, that those who had gone over, about one thousand in number, were compelled to surrender themselves prisoners of war. General Van Rensselaer, mortified at the want of spirit manifested on the occasion, resigned his command in disgust.

Inefficiency reigned in triumph all along the frontier. An expedition against Detroit, under the command of Harrison, was abandoned for want of means. The volunteers from Kentucky, as well as others, became mutinous and refused to advance. One failure followed another in rapid succession. The officers were quarrelling among

CHAP. XLII. themselves, charging each other with cowardice and fighting bloodless duels, while the soldiers deserted in bands, and those who remained were insubordinate. These failures were unsparingly ridiculed in the newspapers opposed to the war.

- 1812.
1807. Soon after the establishment of the Government the religious portion of the people began to inquire as to their duty in sending the Gospel to the heathen of other lands. Samuel J. Mills and some other students of Williams College consecrated themselves to the work of foreign missions. A monument—a marble shaft surmounted by a globe—in Mills Park, just outside the village, marks the spot where these students met behind a haystack to confer with each other and consecrate themselves to the work of evangelizing the heathen. The result was the formation of the American Board of Missions, which has had a remarkable success in extending the knowledge of the Gospel and introducing a Christian civilization in remote heathen lands. This Society was specially patronized by the Congregationalists and Presbyterians; the latter, after twenty-one years of co-operation, withdrew and formed the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions. Meanwhile other denominations entered with zeal upon the work—the Baptists (1814), the Methodist Episcopal (1819), Reformed Dutch Church (1832), Protestant Episcopal (1835), and afterward others; in all fifteen societies were formed. Under the control of these societies the missionaries and native teachers whom they have trained now number many thousands. The exertions of these devoted men have been crowned with remarkable success; they have displayed much practical wisdom in the management of the missions, and have translated the Scriptures into the languages of the various people with whom they labored. For these evidences of their scholarship and their enlightened zeal they have oftentimes received the commendations and thanks of European educated men and statesmen.
- 1810.
- 1833.
- 1882.

CHAPTER XLIII.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—CONTINUED.

The Vessels of the Navy.—The chase of the Constitution.—Capture of the Alert.—The Guerrière.—Incidents.—The Macedonian.—The Frolic.—The Java.—The effects of these Naval Conflicts in the United States and England.—Plan of Operations.—Harrison advances on Detroit.—General Winchester a Prisoner; Indian Barbarities.—The Kentuckians fall into an Ambuscade.—Repulse at Fort Stephenson.—The loss of the Chesapeake.—Perry's Victory.—Battle of the Thames.—Andrew Jackson.—Leads an Expedition; its Termination.—York captured; Death of General Pike.—Wilkinson transferred to the North.—Another attempt to conquer Canada.—Fort George destroyed; Newark burned.—The severe Retaliation.—The American Coast blockaded.—Ravages on the Shores of Chesapeake Bay.—Indian War in the South.—Jackson and others in the Field.—Battle at the Great Horse Shoe.—Captain Porter's Cruise.

WHILE the disasters recorded in the last chapter were in progress, the despised little navy had won laurels, by a series of victories as unexpected as they were glorious. When the war commenced, the whole navy of the United States in commission, consisted of only three first-class frigates; the President, the Constitution, and the United States; of the second class two, the Congress and the Essex; the Wasp and Hornet, sloops-of-war; and the brigs Argus, Syren, Nautilus, Enterprise, and Vixen. The second class frigates Chesapeake, Constellation, and John Adams, were undergoing repairs. The fleet was ordered to assemble at New York to be in readiness to defend harbors, and not to venture to sea, lest it should

CHAP
XLIII.

1812

CHAP. fall in the hands of the enemy ; a result which had been
XLIII. predicted again and again. Owing to the urgent remon-
1812. strances of Captains Stewart and Bainbridge, the intention of thus withdrawing the navy was abandoned. Within a few hours after the declaration of war was known in New York, a portion of the fleet was passing out to sea, in search of the enemy. This prompt movement was made for the double purpose of avoiding the orders, which the officers suspected were on the way from Washington, to detain them in the harbor, and to make a dash at the Jamaica fleet, said to be passing under convoy off the coast. When two days out, they chased and exchanged shots with the British frigate *Belvidera*, which, however, escaped and carried the news of the commencement of hostilities to Halifax. The Americans continued the pursuit of the Jamaica fleet, even to the entrance of the British Channel, but without overtaking it.

Meanwhile a British squadron issued from Halifax, to cruise off the port of New York. The *Constitution*, better known as *Old Ironsides*, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, in endeavoring to enter that port fell in with this fleet, and was chased by all its vessels for four days—the most remarkable chase on record. The unexampled skill with which she was managed, elicited universal admiration. Every nautical device was exhausted ; such as during a calm carrying out anchors and dropping them, and then pulling the ship up ; in the mean while, when opportunity served, exchanging shots with her adversaries. Finally she escaped into Boston. Orders from Washington were sent to Captain Hull to remain there ; but he anticipated them, and put to sea before they arrived.

The *Essex* was the first to capture a prize—a transport filled with soldiers—and shortly after, the British sloop-of-war *Alert*. The latter mistook the *Essex* for a merchantman, and came on expecting an easy victory, but

found herself so severely handled, that in a few minutes she was fain to strike her colors. CHAP.
XLIII.

Off the mouth of the St. Lawrence, Captain Hull fell in with the British frigate *Guerrière*, one of the fleet which had recently chased him. The *Guerrière* was on the look-out for "Yankee craft;" on one of her flags was the inscription, Not the Little Belt. Courting the combat, she shortened sail, and at long range opened upon the approaching *Constitution*; the latter did not fire a gun, but manœuvred to obtain a desirable position. Thus an hour and a half was consumed. When the *Constitution* secured her position, she poured in her broadsides with such rapidity and effect, that the enemy struck his colors in thirty minutes. So completely was the *Guerrière* cut to pieces, that it was impossible to bring her into port, and Hull ordered her to be burned. The *Guerrière* had seventy-nine killed and wounded, while the *Constitution* had only seven, and was ready for action the next day. In connection with this encounter may be related two incidents, which show the spirit on board the respective ships. When the *Constitution* came within cannon-shot, the opening fire from the *Guerrière* killed two men. The men were impatient to avenge their companions, and Lieutenant Morris came on deck, and asked, "Can we return the fire, sir?" "No, sir," calmly replied Hull. Soon after, Morris came again, and reported that another man was slain, and asked again, "Shall we return the fire?" "No, sir," was still the reply. For the third time, Morris soon appeared: "Can we fire now?" Hull, pausing a moment to survey the position of the ships, replied, "Yes, sir, you may *fire* now." The order was promptly obeyed, and Hull, with his eye intently fixed upon the enemy, exclaimed, when he saw the effect, "That ship is ours!" Ang
19.

On board the *Guerrière* were ten impressed Americans. They refused to fight against their countrymen, and were ordered below. One of them was afterward called upon

CHAP. XLIII.
 1812. deck, and asked by Captain Dacres if he knew the character of the approaching ship. He answered she was a frigate. As she drew nearer, and merely manœuvred, and made no reply with her guns, Dacres, somewhat puzzled, inquired again, "What does she mean? Do you think she is going to strike without firing a gun?" "I *guess* not, sir," replied the American; "she will get the position she wants, and you will then learn her intentions; with your permission, sir, I will step below."

Oct. 23. The United States, Captain Decatur, when cruising off the Azores, gave chase to a British frigate, which proved to be the Macedonian. A running fight commenced, which terminated by the Macedonian striking her colors, after losing one hundred out of her three hundred men, while the United States lost only five men and seven wounded. The other ships made several prizes on their cruise. The Argus escaped by superior seamanship, after being chased three days by six vessels, and took and manned a prize during the chase. The Wasp, Captain Jones, met the British brig Frolic, acting as a convoy for six merchantmen; to protect them she shortened sail and offered battle. The Wasp watched her opportunity, raked her antagonist, and then immediately boarded. The Oct. 18. boarders found the deck of the Frolic covered with the slain, and only one man unhurt, who was calmly standing at the wheel, and one or two wounded officers, who threw down their swords. Not twenty of the crew were unhurt. The Wasp had only five killed and as many wounded. But before she could make sail, the Poictiers seventy-four came up, and took both vessels.

Hull resigned the command of the Constitution, and Bainbridge was appointed in his place. Off the coast of Brazil the Constitution gave chase to a British frigate, the Java. The fight began at the distance of a mile, and was continued with great spirit, each manœuvring to get the advantage. At length they approached so closely as



Stephen Decatur

to fight yard-arm and yard-arm. The Java's masts were shot away, and her fire silenced. The Constitution drew off to repair her rigging, and then approached to renew the conflict, which the Java prevented by striking her flag. Nearly half of her men, numbering four hundred, were killed or wounded, while the Constitution had only nine killed and twenty-five wounded; among the latter was her commander. There being no friendly port in that part of the world to which he could take his prize, Bainbridge ordered her to be set on fire and blown up.

CHAP.
XLIII
1813.

Jan.
1.

It is difficult to conceive the exultation with which these victories were hailed in the United States. The very great disparity in the losses sustained by the respective combatants had excited surprise in both nations. The English loss of men in killed and wounded, compared with that of the Americans, was as eight to one. There could be no doubt but the ships of the latter had been better managed and better fought. The English people, we learn from the newspapers of the day, were deeply mortified at the loss of their frigates. One of the papers asked, "Shall England, the mistress of the seas and dictator of the maritime law of nations, be driven from her proud eminence by a piece of striped bunting flying at the masts-heads of a few fir-built frigates, manned by a handful of bastards and outlaws?" Some were thus abusive, but others were more respectful, and even found consolation in the fact that the Americans were the descendants of Englishmen. Says the London Times: "We witnessed the gloom which that event (the capture of the *Guerrière*) cast over high and honorable minds; it is not merely that an English frigate has been taken after a brave resistance, but it has been by a new enemy." And apprehensions were expressed that their maritime superiority was about to be challenged, if not taken away, by this new rival, which had so suddenly sprung into existence. "The mourning for this last most affecting event, (the capture

CHAP.
XLIII.

1813.

of the Java,) can never be laid aside till the honor of the British flag shall be redeemed, by establishing the same triumphant superiority over the Americans that we have heretofore had over all the nations that traverse the seas. Five hundred British vessels and three frigates have been captured in seven months by the Americans. Can the English people hear this unmoved? Down to this moment not an American frigate has struck her flag. They insult and laugh at us; they leave their ports when they please; and return when it suits their convenience; they traverse the Atlantic; they beset the West India Islands; they advance to the very chops of the Channel; they parade along the coast of South America; nothing chases, nothing intercepts, nothing engages them, but yields to them a triumph."

To account for these unexampled victories, some said the American frigates were Seventy-fours in disguise; others that their guns were heavier than those of their opponents. The latter supposition may have been true to some extent. But national self-complacency found more consolation in the conjecture, that the spirit of the American navy ought to be imputed to the few runaway British sailors enlisted in it!

The American privateers maintained the honor of the nation as much as the regular navy. Much more would have been accomplished, but the majority of the merchants were loth to send privateers to prey upon the property of their commercial friends and correspondents. As it was, more than three hundred prizes were taken, three thousand prisoners, and a vast amount of merchandise

Changes were made in the President's cabinet. General John Armstrong—the author of the famous Anonymous Address, at the close of the Revolution—was appointed Secretary of War in place of William Eustis, of Massachusetts, resigned. James Monroe still remained

at the head of the State Department, and Albert Gallatin at that of the Treasury, an office which he held under Jefferson.

CHAP
XLIII.

1813

The surrender of Hull aroused the warlike spirit of the West, and volunteers presented themselves in great numbers. The Americans were divided into three armies. That of the west, at the head of Lake Erie, under General Harrison; that of the centre, between Lakes Erie and Ontario, under General Dearborn, and that of the north in the vicinity of Lake Champlain, under General Wade Hampton. A similar arrangement was made by the British. Sir George Prevost was in chief command of the forces in Canada, General Proctor commanded the troops stationed near Detroit, and General Sheafe those in the neighborhood of Montreal and the Sorel river.

To recover what Hull had lost, Harrison moved toward Detroit and Malden; meantime General Winchester advanced with eight hundred volunteers, chiefly young men from Kentucky. That State swarmed with soldiers, drawn from every rank in society. As he drew near the Maumee Rapids, Winchester learned that a body of British and Indians was in possession of Frenchtown, on the river Raisin. He sent a detachment, which routed the enemy, and maintained its position until he himself came up. When General Proctor learned of the approach of Winchester, he hastened across the lake on the ice from Malden, with fifteen hundred British and Indians, to cut him off, before Harrison could give aid. The attack was made on the American camp before daylight. In the midst of the confusion Winchester was taken prisoner. Proctor promised him security for the safety of his men, and thus induced him to surrender them as prisoners. Fearing the approach of Harrison, Proctor retreated as rapidly as possible to Malden, and in violation of his pledges, he left the wounded Americans.

Jan
22.

The Indians turned back and murdered great numbers

CHAP.
XLIII.

1818.

of them, and carried the remainder to Detroit ; for some of these they demanded enormous ransoms, and others they reserved for tortures. The conduct of Proctor, in thus breaking his word, and violating the principles of common humanity, excited against the enemy the bitterest feelings of revenge. "Remember the Raisin !" became the war-cry of the Kentuckians.

Harrison advanced to the rapids, and there established a post, which in honor of the Governor of Ohio, he named Fort Meigs. There he was besieged, in the course of a few months, by a large force of British and their Indian allies. Learning that General Green Clay, of Kentucky, was descending the Maumee with twelve hundred men in boats, Harrison sent orders for half the men to land and seize the enemy's batteries on the north side of the river, spike their guns, and then come to the Fort, whence a sortie was to be made against the main batteries on the south side. The first order was fulfilled, and the British routed ; but instead of hastening to the Fort, the Kentuckians became unmanageable, and pursued a few Indians, who led them into an ambuscade prepared by the cunning Tecumseh. They were in turn routed by the Indians and a detachment of British soldiers, and of the Kentuckians only about one hundred and fifty escaped. Nevertheless Proctor was alarmed ; the force of the Americans was unknown, and as the Indians began to desert, May. he commenced a hurried retreat across the lake to Malden.

Two months after, Proctor again appeared before Fort Meigs, now under the command of Clay. Not able to take it, and having learned that Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky, had a small garrison, Proctor left Tecumseh with his Indians to besiege Fort Meigs, while he himself went against Fort Stephenson. This fort had a garrison of only one hundred and sixty young men, commanded by Major George Croghan, a youth in his twenty-second year. When summoned to surrender, he replied that he

should defend the fort till the last man was buried in its ruins. The siege commenced, and when a breach was made, the British regulars, at the word of their Colonel, who cried out, "Come on, give the Yankees no quarter," rushed to the assault. As they crowded into the ditch, the only cannon in the fort opened from a masked port hole. The gun was loaded with a double charge of musket balls; the effect was terrific, the enemy fled in confusion, and abandoned the siege. The Indians at the first repulse deserted, as usual.

CHAP.
XLIII.

1813.

Aug.

Meanwhile there had been other conflicts at sea. Captain James Lawrence, in command of the *Hornet*, had captured the *Peacock* off the coast of South America. The ships were equal in size and equipments. The action lasted but fifteen minutes. The *Peacock* raised signals of distress, for she was sinking rapidly, and in spite of the efforts of both crews she went down, carrying with her some of her own men and three of the *Hornet's*. On his return, Lawrence was appointed to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*, then in Boston harbor, undergoing repairs and enlisting a crew.

Feb.
23.

June

The British frigate *Shannon*, Captain Broke, had appeared off the harbor as if offering a challenge. The impetuous Lawrence put to sea, notwithstanding the deficiency of his crew, some of whom were much dissatisfied on account of back arrearages of prize money of a former cruise. The ship was also deficient in officers, the first lieutenant being unable from illness to go on board. The contest was witnessed by thousands from the hills and house tops. When the ships met, the *Chesapeake* became entangled with the *Shannon* in such a manner as to be exposed to a raking fire. Lawrence, mortally wounded at the commencement of the battle, was carried below. This created confusion for a few minutes, and Broke noticing that the fire had slackened, promptly gave orders to board, leading the men himself. The American

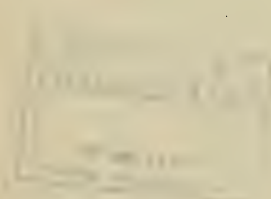
CHAP. boarders had just been called, and but few of them were
XLIII. yet upon deck ; after a hand to hand fight, the Chesapeake's colors were hauled down. The captor sailed immediately to Halifax. There Captain Lawrence died. He was buried with military honors and marks of respect. Afterward his remains were removed to New York. His last command, " Don't give up the ship," has become the watchword in the American navy.

The rejoicings in England over the capture of the Chesapeake were so great as to become highly complimentary to the Americans, to whom they were as gratifying as if the Shannon had been captured. It was an unequivocal evidence of the respect that the navy had inspired.

The same spirit which had done so much honor to the nation on the ocean, displayed itself on the lakes. The random incursions of undisciplined volunteers accomplished nothing until the control of the lakes was secured. A youthful lieutenant in the United States navy, Oliver Hazard Perry, a native of Newport, Rhode Island, volunteered for that service. Commodore Chauncey appointed him to the command of the fleet on Lake Erie. After much labor, Perry built and fitted out at the port of Erie, nine vessels of various sizes, from one carrying twenty-five guns down to those which carried only one. The American fleet had altogether fifty-five guns ; the British had six vessels carrying sixty-three guns. The number of men was about five hundred in each fleet. Owing to the direction of the wind at the commencement of the battle, Perry's flag ship, the Lawrence, was exposed to the concentrated fire of the enemy's entire fleet, and in a short time she was made a complete wreck. As the wind increased, the remaining ships were enabled to come up Leaping into a boat, and in the midst of flying balls, Perry now transferred his flag, which bore the motto " Don't give up the ship," to the next largest vessel, the Niagara. When passing through the enemy's line he



A. H. Perry



poured in broadsides, right and left, within pistol-shot. The other American vessels closed, and in less than an hour every British ship had surrendered. The hero announced the result to General Harrison, in the memorable despatch, "We have met the enemy and they are ours."

CHAP.
XLIII.

1813.

Sept.
10.

Harrison hastened to profit by the victory, and to lead his men against Detroit and Malden. The fleet carried a portion of the troops across the lake, but they found Malden deserted. Proctor and Tecumseh had destroyed their military stores, and taken with them the horses and cattle in the neighborhood, and were now in full retreat toward the Moravian town, on the Thames. At Detroit Harrison was unexpectedly reinforced by about thirty-five hundred mounted Kentuckians, under the venerable Governor Shelby, one of the heroes of King's Mountain, and Colonel Richard M. Johnson. The pursuit now commenced in earnest. After a forced march of sixty miles, they overtook the enemy. A desperate encounter took place; nearly all Proctor's men were either taken or slain, he himself barely escaping with about two hundred dragoons. The Indians fought furiously when cheered on by Tecumseh, but when he fell, it is said by a pistol ball fired by Colonel Johnson himself, they broke and fled. With the life of the great savage planner ended Indian hostilities in that part of the frontier. The Kentuckians returned home in triumph. Leaving Colonel Lewis Cass, who was soon after appointed Governor of Michigan, to garrison Detroit with his brigade, Harrison embarked with thirteen hundred regulars for Buffalo, to assist in the cherished project of conquering Canada.

Oct
5.

Military enthusiasm was not confined to Kentucky and the region north of the Ohio. In answer to a call to defend New Orleans, volunteers in great numbers assembled at Nashville, Tennessee. General Andrew Jackson was their chosen commander.

**CHAP.
XLIII.**

- 1813** Jackson was a native of North Carolina, of Scotch-Irish descent ; left fatherless at an early age :—his mother the descendant of a Scotch Covenanter, a woman of great energy, and of a daring spirit, but softened and subdued by religious principle and humane sympathy. From her he inherited a hatred of oppression, and an indomitable will that never failed to triumph. At the age of thirteen—in Revolutionary times—he began his career under General Sumter at the skirmish of Hanging Rock.
- 1780.** His eldest brother had already fallen in battle, and here, in company with the brother next in age, he fought valiantly. Their home broken up and pillaged, the mother and her two sons became exiles from their own fireside. Soon after the sons, through the plottings of Tories, were made prisoners. The next day a British officer ordered Andrew to clean his boots, but the young hero indignantly refused to perform the menial service, and steadily persisted, though his life was threatened and the officer struck him with the flat of his sword.

The heroic mother at length obtained the exchange of her sons, but only in a short time to follow to the grave the elder, who died of small-pox, which both the brothers had contracted during their captivity.

The next year the mother, with some other ladies, travelled more than one hundred miles to minister to the wants of the unfortunate patriots, her neighbors, who were confined as prisoners on board of loathsome prison ships in the harbor of Charleston. Enfeebled by her labors of love, she contracted the fever then raging among the prisoners and speedily passed away. Thus at the age of fifteen Jackson was left without a relative in his native land. Scarcely has it ever fallen to the lot of a youth to experience a series of such harrowing misfortunes. Though young in years these trials had their effect ; they gave him the maturity of manhood ; they strengthened the decision of character, which so marked his life. To his friends

generous to a fault, yet he never suffered his will to be successfully resisted ; not from stubbornness—that stronghold of little minds—but from his impression of right.

CHAP.
XLIH.

1796

He early emigrated to Tennessee, then a territory, and was the first representative from that State in the House. He was then described by a contemporary, “as having been a tall, lank, uncouth-looking personage, with long locks of hair hanging over his face, and a cue down his back tied in an eel-skin ; his dress singular, his manners and deportment that of a rough backwoodsman. No eye among his associates was prophetic enough, under that rude aspect, to recognize or imagine the future General and President.”¹

New Orleans was almost defenceless ; the same mistaken economy we have seen elsewhere, had been exercised here. There were only sixteen hundred men in the garrison, scarcely any ammunition, and no means of conveyance. Though without authority from the War Department, General Wilkinson—the same who in the days of the Revolution was one of the aids of General Gates,—had taken measures to survey all the water passages to the Gulf, and partially repair their fortifications.

1813

This expedition from Tennessee had a singular termination. The infantry, in number sixteen hundred, floated in flat-boats down the Cumberland, the Ohio and the Mississippi to Natchez, where they were joined by four hundred horsemen, who had marched across the country. Armstrong, the Secretary of War, sent orders to Jackson, who had been refused a commission in the regular army, to disband his men at Natchez, and deliver his military stores to General Wilkinson. To implicitly obey orders which he did not approve was not one of the virtues of Andrew Jackson. Suspecting that this order was a pretext to get rid of the volunteers without paying their

Feb

¹ Hildreth, vol. iv., p. 692.

CHAP.
XLIII.

1813.

April
17.

wages, he positively refused to obey. Indignant at the wrong done the men, he unceremoniously drove out of the camp the United States recruiting officers, who had come, hoping to induce those volunteers to enlist in the regular army, who had not the funds to return home. On his own responsibility, Jackson provided conveyances for the sick, and marched the whole force back to Nashville, and there disbanded them. The War Department overlooked the insubordination, and quietly paid the bill.

The military operations on the northern frontier continued as unimportant, as they were inefficient in bringing Great Britain to terms. To secure the control of Lake Ontario it was necessary to destroy or capture the ships and military stores at York, now Toronto, then the capital of Upper Canada, and the head-quarters of General Sheafe. When the spring opened, Commodore Chauncey sailed with sixteen hundred men on board his fleet. They landed a short distance from the town, Lieutenant Scott, who had recently been exchanged, leading the van. General Pike led the troops to the assault. The retreating British fired a magazine, which exploded with tremendous power, overwhelmed the advancing Americans, and killed and wounded more than two hundred of their number, among whom was the gallant Pike, who died the next day. The town surrendered, and the contents of another magazine were transferred to Sackett's Harbor.

Just before the Americans embarked, a little one story building, known as the Parliament House, was burned. The British attributed the act to them, but General Dearborn and his officers believed it was set on fire by the disaffected Canadians, as they had threatened to burn it.

Major Grafton certified that no American could have committed the deed without his knowledge, as he had the command of the patrol in the vicinity of the House. The

Canadian Chief Justice of the district, in a communication, spoke of the humane conduct of the Americans, "which entitled them to the gratitude of the people of York." Yet retaliation, for the burning of this building, was the excuse offered afterward for the wanton destruction and pillaging of the public buildings at Washington.

CHAP.
XLIII.
1813.

During the summer occurred a number of failures, all traceable to the inefficiency of the commanders. Finally certain members of Congress informally requested the President, through secretary Monroe, to recall Dearborn from the command. Accordingly Wilkinson was transferred from New Orleans to the northern frontier. General Wade Hampton, recently in command at Norfolk, was also appointed to the command of a division ; but as he and Wilkinson were not on friendly terms, he accepted the office only on condition that he should not be placed under the command of the latter. That patriotism which would overlook private resentment for the good of the country must be sacrificed to the personal enmities of these gentlemen. Hoping to remove the difficulty, Armstrong, the Secretary of War, suddenly appeared on the ground, and assumed the chief command himself ; but he and Wilkinson could not agree on a plan of operations. After refusing to accept the proffered resignation of Wilkinson, who did not relish the uncalled-for interference, the Secretary returned to his more appropriate duties at Washington.

May

Another futile attempt was made to conquer Canada. General Wilkinson moved his army from Sackett's Harbor, toward Montreal ; in the mean time General Hampton was advancing up from Lake Champlain. The two American armies if united would number twelve thousand men, while the whole British force was about two thousand, and these mostly militia. Wilkinson wrote to Hampton, in Armstrong's name, to join him at St. Regis, but instead of co-operating, Hampton replied that he had given up the expedition and was already on his return to

CHAP.
XLIII.

1813.
Nov.
13.

winter-quarters. Under these circumstances, Wilkinson found it necessary to retreat, as the season would be too far advanced before he could obtain the provisions and aid which Hampton had failed to supply. During the previous summer there had been on the lake, as well as on its shores, several expeditions as unimportant in themselves as they were trifling in their results.

When General Harrison, who soon after resigned his commission, retired, he left a General McClure in command at the head of Lake Ontario. Presently McClure found himself with only a few regular troops, as the militia under his command were returning home; their term of enlistments had expired. Not prepared to resist the advancing British, he was forced to retire across the river to the American side. Before leaving he destroyed Fort George, and set on fire the village of Newark, lest the enemy, as he said, should find comfortable winter-quarters. McClure gave as his excuse for thus burning the homes, and turning four hundred inoffensive people, men, women, and children, out into the winter's storms, that he thought he was justified by the orders of the War Department. In truth there was no excuse for the cruel and wanton act. Evil begets evil. Ten days after, the enemy passed over to the American side, surprised Fort Niagara, and put the garrison to the sword. Then commenced the retaliation for the burning of Newark. They burned Lewistown, Youngstown, Manchester, Black Rock, and Buffalo, and indeed every house that could be reached from Lake Ontario to Erie. Prevost issued immediately after a proclamation, in which he stated that these ravages were provoked by the burning of Newark, and if the Americans would hereafter refrain from such outrages, he should conduct the war on humane and civilized principles.

Dec.
20.

June.

During the summer the whole American coast was blockaded by the overwhelming force of the British fleet. The *Hornet*, the frigates *United States* and *Macedonian*,

were shut up in the harbor of New London. The harbor of New York, the Delaware and Chesapeake bays, the harbors of Charleston and Savannah, the mouth of the Mississippi, were all blockaded. In the Chesapeake alone there were more than twenty British armed vessels, on board of which were three or four thousand land troops. These frequently landed and pillaged the towns, and in some instances committed outrages upon the inhabitants, especially at Hampton, a small village on James river. The infamy of conducting these marauding expeditions belongs to Vice-Admiral Cockburn, whose conduct was more in accordance with the brutality of a savage, than with the humanity of an officer of a Christian nation. These marauders were well characterized by the term, "Water Winnebagoes."

CHAP.
XLIII.
1813.

The war was not confined to the northern frontier. The untiring Tecumseh had visited the Creeks the previous year, and inspired them, especially their young warriors, with his views. The Creeks occupied the greater portion of what is now the State of Alabama, and a portion of south-western Georgia. Numbers of the tribe had become partially civilized, living upon the products of their fields and their herds. The nation was divided in opinion. The intelligent and wealthy portion were in favor of peace, while the ignorant and poor were in favor of war. The one party saw in a war with the United States, the utter ruin of their nation; the other a return to their ancient customs, and a perfect independence of the white man. The settlers blindly neglected the repeated warnings given of these hostile intentions. When suddenly Wetherford, a celebrated half-breed chief, surrounded Fort Mimms, on the lower Alabama, and put to death nearly three hundred persons, men, women, and children. The South was speedily roused, and soon about seven thousand volunteers were on their march in four

CHAP. divisions, to penetrate the enemy's country, from as many
XLIII. points, and to meet in the centre.

1813. General Jackson, with his recent Natchez volunteers,
Dec. moved from Nashville ; from East Tennessee, another division, under General Cocke ; one from Georgia, and
1814. one from the Mississippi Territory. In addition the lower Creeks took up arms against their brethren ; and also Cherokees and Choctaws joined in the expedition. A series of attacks commenced upon the savage enemy. The Creeks were defeated in every conflict ; cut down without mercy, their warriors disdaining to ask for their lives. The divisions penetrated the country from different points, and drove them from place to place. In this last struggle for their homes they were overwhelmed, but not conquered. Thus the war continued for some months, when the greater portion of the volunteers returned home. Jackson was compelled to suspend offensive operations till reinforcements should arrive. At length they came, and he went in pursuit of the enemy. On a peninsula formed by a peculiar bend in the Tallapoosa river, known as Emuchfau, or the Horse-shoe, the Indians made their last stand. They fortified the neck of the peninsula, as much as their rude materials would permit. Thither they transferred their wives and children, in whose defence they resolved to die, and there in gloomy silence they awaited the attack.

Mar. The assault was made on the breastwork, which, after
28. five hours' fighting, was carried. Nearly six hundred of the warriors perished, and the women and children were taken prisoners. Thus, after a campaign of six months, the power of the Creeks was broken, and with it their spirit was crushed. The warriors who were yet living, began to give themselves up to the conquerors. A noble-looking chief suddenly, at the hour of midnight, presented himself to Jackson. "I fought at Fort Mimms ; I fought the army of Georgia," said he ; "I did you all

the harm I could. Had I been supported as I was promised, I would have done more. But my warriors are killed, and I can fight no longer ; I look back with sorrow that I have brought ruin upon my nation. I am now in your power, do with me as you please ; I too am a warrior." Such were the words of Wetherford, the destroyer of Fort Mimms. Jackson could appreciate the man who would fight for his country ; though the volunteers murmured, he spared the life of the chief. The General, so stern in the performance of duty, was not devoid of humane sympathy. When walking on the field of battle his attention was arrested by the wail of an Indian babe. He himself was a childless man, yet his heart was touched. Ordering the infant to be brought to the camp, he asked the Indian women to take care of it. "Its mother is dead, let it die too," was their reply. The General took the child himself, carried it to his home, and reared it in his own family.

CHAP.
XLIII.

1814

The *Essex*, Captain Porter, passed round Cape Horn, 1818 expecting to meet the *Constitution* in the Pacific ; but she, as has already been noted, returned home after the capture of the *Java*. When he arrived at Valparaiso, Porter was gratified to be received as a friend. Chili had thrown off her allegiance to Spain, and was no longer an ally of England. Learning there that the viceroy of Peru had, in expectation of war between Spain and the United States, authorized cruisers against American whalers, he put to sea in order to chastise these cruisers, one of whom he captured and disarmed. He then went in pursuit of the British whalers, who were all armed, and carried commissions from their own government to capture American whaling vessels. In a few months he captured twelve of these whalers. Hearing that the British frigate *Phoebe* had been sent in pursuit of him, he returned early in the year to Valparaiso, in search of the enemy. Soon the

- CHAP. Phœbe appeared, accompanied by the sloop-of-war Cherub.
 XLIII. In guns and men the Phœbe was a full match for the Essex.
 1814. The two hostile vessels took their position off the harbor. Porter determined to avoid the unequal contest by escaping to sea; but when passing out of the harbor a sudden squall carried away his main-topmast, and, as he could not return to port, he was at the mercy of the Phœbe and Cherub. After an encounter, perhaps the most desperate of any naval engagement during the war, he was forced to surrender; but he did not strike his flag until he had lost the unusual number of fifty-eight killed and sixty-six wounded. In giving an account of the affair to the Secretary of the Navy, he wrote: "We have been unfortunate, but not disgraced."
- March.

Efforts had been made by local societies, small and limited in their influence, to circulate the Bible, but not until the formation of a large association, with more means and greater facilities, could much be accomplished in publishing and distributing the Scriptures. Sixty delegates, men of influence and representing thirty-five of these local associations, met in New York City and formed the American Bible Society. During the first year eighty-four local societies became auxiliary to it; now the auxiliaries, directly or indirectly connected with the Institution, number over seven thousand. During the first year of its existence the members of the British Bible Society sent it their congratulations and a donation of twenty-five hundred dollars. The Society publishes the Bible without note or comment, and has the confidence of all the Protestant denominations. It publishes more than two hundred varieties of the English Bible, and more than one hundred and forty varieties in other languages. Three several times (1829, 1856, and 1866) the Society, as far as possible, has supplied every family in the Union destitute of the Bible with a copy.

1816.
 May 8.

1890.

CHAPTER XLIV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—CONTINUED.

The Thirteenth Congress; its Members.—Daniel Webster.—Manifesto of the British Government.—Embarrassments.—Commissioners of Peace appointed.—Britain offers to negotiate.—Jacob Brown.—Winfield Scott.—E. W. Ripley.—Wilkinson unsuccessful; his Misfortunes.—Capture of Fort Erie.—Battle of Lundy's Lane.—Its effect.—British repulsed at Fort Erie; their Batteries captured.—Battle on Lake Champlain.—British marauding Expeditions on the Shores of the Chesapeake.—Bladensburg.—Capture of Washington.—The Public Buildings burned.—Defence of Fort McHenry.—Death of General Ross.—Bombardment of Stonington.—Distress in New England.—Debates in Congress.—Embargo and Non-importation Act repealed.—Hartford Convention.

THE thirteenth Congress, in obedience to the call of the President, met in special session, some months before the usual time. The last census had increased the number of Representatives in the House to 182. Of the present members a greater proportion than in the last Congress were opposed to the war, and, indeed, its own advocates on that subject were by no means harmonious among themselves.

In this Congress, as well as in the last, appeared many new men, whose influence was afterward greatly felt, not only in their respective States, but in moulding the future policy of the nation itself. Among these were John Forsyth of Georgia, William Gaston of North Carolina, John McLean of Ohio, and Daniel Webster of New Hampshire, who now commenced that career so marked in our

CHAP.
XLIV

1813
May
24.

CHAP. national councils. Born on the frontiers of that State, his
XLIV. privileges were limited. The quiet, thoughtful boy, fond
1813. of books, read all within his reach. His father, a man of strong sense and sterling integrity; his mother, a woman of more than ordinary intellect and force of character; to their judicious guidance may be traced the best elements of his education. The father noticed his expanding intellect, the calm power of mind that intuitively grasped thoughts far beyond his years. His resolution was taken; though very limited in means, he must educate his son. At length he informed Daniel of his determination to send him to college. At this first intimation that the dreams which had been floating before his imagination were to be realized, the boy's emotions were too deep for utterance; he threw himself upon his father's neck and wept for joy.

In Congress stirring debates ensued. Not only was the policy of the war severely criticized, but the manner in which it had been conducted. Its advocates were surrounded with difficulties; the means to carry it on were exhausted; the revenue derived from commerce had dwindled to one million, with a prospect of still greater reduction; enormous bounties were offered to obtain recruits for the army, but very few enlisted. The clashing of opinions on the subject had arrayed the people definitely on one side or the other.

Jan. The British government issued to the world a manifesto, in which certain charges industriously circulated in the United States were utterly denied—such as that they had instigated the Indians to hostilities, or that they had endeavored to seduce the people of the Eastern States from the Union; but on the contrary, they protested that the English people were actuated by a spirit of forbearance, and were truly desirous to be at peace and amity with the people of the United States. As to the question of search, they were unwilling to give up the



Daniel Webster

right to recover their deserting seamen, unless the United States would remove the necessity for impressments, by enacting laws forbidding British sailors to enlist in the American service. This document had a great effect in influencing the minds of the people in England, as well as upon those in the United States.

CHAP.
XLIV.

1813

The disasters of the last campaign, and the want of money, a sufficiency of which could not be obtained by loans, were not as embarrassing to the government, as the opposition to the war which prevailed in the New England States. The Legislature of Massachusetts sent a remonstrance to Congress. They denounced the war as unreasonable, for Great Britain had repealed the obnoxious Orders in Council, and also offered to negotiate in relation to impressments. Undue influences in the councils of the nation had led to measures opposed to their interests, and had brought ruin upon them by war. It was a duty to their constituents to make this remonstrance. They appealed to the Searcher of hearts for the purity of their motives, and their devotion to their country.

The people of New England complained that for the last twelve years, their influence in the national government had not been in proportion to their population, intelligence and wealth,—that their best and ablest men had been designedly excluded from positions of influence in the councils of the nation.

In less than a year after the declaration of war, President Madison, influenced by an offer of mediation on the part of Russia, appointed Albert Gallatin, his Secretary of the Treasury, and James A. Bayard, commissioners to negotiate a peace. They were to act in concert with John Quincy Adams, then minister at the court of St. Petersburg. The offered mediation by Russia was declined by England; and nothing was accomplished by the commissioners. Nearly a year afterward, the British government made a direct overture to treat of peace, either at

Mar

CHAP. London or at Gottenburg in Sweden. This offer was
XLIV. made in the face of the ultimate downfall of Bonaparte,
1814. who had just been defeated at the battle of Leipsic. The
Jan. President gladly accepted the offer, though he complained
14. that the English government had rejected the mediation
of Russia, which had been offered three several times.
Accordingly, Henry Clay and Jonathan Russell, recently
minister to England, were appointed additional commis-
sioners of peace. In a month's time, they had received
their instructions, and were on their way to Europe.

These instructions took decided ground on the impressment question. "That degrading practice must cease," said they. "Our flag must protect the crew, or the United States cannot consider themselves an independent nation." Yet the promise was quietly made to enact a law forbidding the enlistment of British sailors, either in the United States navy or in the mercantile service. Still more, the commissioners were privately authorized "to go further, to prevent a possibility of failure." It will be remembered that this was the very law or assurance in effect, that Britain asked of Congress, at the commencement of the war.

Engrossed with the affairs of Europe, England as yet could spare but few men or ships for the American war. Bonaparte having abdicated and retired to Elba, she had on her hands a large veteran army unemployed. Of this army, fourteen thousand soldiers were sent to Canada, while other portions were sent to different places in the United States. This acquisition changed the face of affairs on the northern frontier.

The failures in that quarter, had thrown the administration at Washington into despair. The soldiers had but little confidence in officers, who were continually quarrelling with each other, and never acting in concert, and this favorite measure was about to be given up, from sheer want of proper persons to lead the enterprise. New

men were coming on the stage. The most promising of these was Colonel Jacob Brown, a Pennsylvanian by birth, a Quaker by descent, who, when a school teacher in the city of New York, attracted the attention of Hamilton, who made him his military secretary in the army of 1798. Brown subsequently removed to the northern part of New York State, and there, in his defence of Ogdensburg, as well as on other occasions, exhibited military talents of a high order. There was another youthful hero, destined to fill an honorable space in the military annals of his country. Winfield Scott, a native of Virginia, originally bred for the bar; he also belonged to the army of '98. At the commencement of the war he raised and commanded a company of volunteers. To these may be added Eleazar W. Ripley, of Maine, who possessed talents of a high order.

CHAP.
XLIV.
1814.

These young and enthusiastic officers believed that if the Americans were drilled, and led by commanders in whom they had confidence, they would meet the British regulars without fear for the result. Owing to their solicitations, another invasion of Canada was planned. Nothing, however, was gained by the effort, except the verification of their theory.

Early in the spring, Wilkinson, who had been ill for months, moved with four thousand men, from winter quarters, to repel a British detachment. His progress was arrested near La Colle, at a stone mill, held as an outpost. The single heavy cannon brought to batter down the mill, sunk in the mire. An unusual thaw commencing, flooded the whole country, and opened Lake Champlain, of which the British had control. The Americans were fain to retire from the danger as soon as possible. Wilkinson was so much abused and ridiculed on account of this failure, that he indignantly resigned, and demanded an inquiry into his conduct by a court-martial.

Mar.

One year from that time, he was honorably acquitted by the court. But the government, which he had faith-

CHAP.
XLIV.

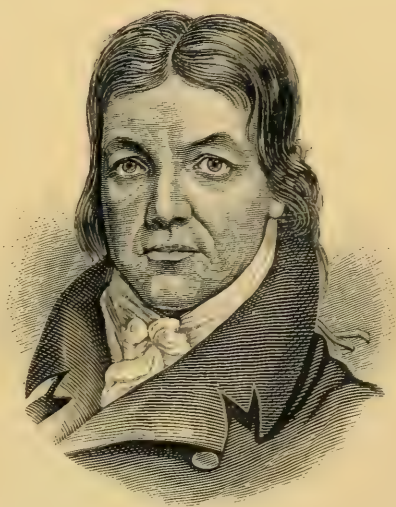
1814. fully served for forty years, on the reduction of the army after the war, dismissed him from its service. Thus in his old age he experienced the hardship of being turned upon the world without a competency. The State of Maryland came forward, and generously granted him a pension.

When spring further opened, a concentration of forces on both sides resulted in a series of movements and counter-movements accomplishing nothing of importance. The first point resolved upon, was to seize Burlington Heights, at the head of Lake Ontario, before aid could come from York. In the mean time, Commodore Chauncey was to get the command of the lake.

Having obtained permission from the government, General Brown, with thirty-five hundred men, some regulars and some volunteers, passed in the night from Buffalo to Canada, presented himself in the morning before Fort Erie, and summoned the garrison to surrender. In the course of the day, the fort complied.

July
2.

The British General Riall, with an army equal in number to that of Brown, was stationed behind the Chippewa, distant fifteen miles. Colonel Scott, the next day, led the advance against the enemy, whose outposts he drove in ; the remainder of the army came up at midnight. Brown here gave an indication of what he expected of his officers ; he cashiered one of their number for untimely retreating in a skirmish. On the following day, Riall left his intrenchments and crossed the Chippewa. The volunteers could not resist the attack, but fled, leaving Scott's brigade exposed. The latter charged the advancing enemy with the bayonet, and forced them to retreat ; as they passed the bridge they destroyed it. Riall immediately abandoned his camp and Queenstown, and leaving a strong force in Fort George, retreated to a favorable position twelve miles distant. The British loss in these engagements was about five hundred, the American about three hundred



John Randolph

This first victory, after a fair trial of strength, was very gratifying to the Americans, privates as well as officers. Brown took possession of Queenstown, but found he had not the proper cannon to successfully attack Fort George, and that the fleet could not co-operate. After maintaining his position three weeks, he fell back to the Chippewa.

CHAP.
XLIV.

1814.

July
24

The British were not idle. On the very day that Brown reached the Chippewa, General Drummond arrived from York at Fort George, with large reinforcements. To prevent them from sending a detachment to destroy his stores at Schlosser, Brown made an advance upon the enemy. Scott led his brigade, accompanied by the artillery commanded by Towson. General Riall was advancing in force in an opposite direction, intending on the following morning to attack the Americans. About sunset, when directly opposite the falls of Niagara, these parties unexpectedly met. The British took position on a rising ground, and there placed their artillery, consisting of seven pieces. These began to play upon Scott's brigade, while, because of their position on the hill, balls from Towson's guns could scarcely reach them. The loss of the Americans was great, yet they maintained their position, expecting Brown with the main army. When it was quite dark, he arrived. One of Scott's regiments under Major Jessup drove the Canadian militia before them, and, gaining the rear of the enemy, captured a number of prisoners, among whom was General Riall himself, who having been wounded, was retiring. It was seen that the key of the position was the park of artillery on the hill. Said Ripley to Colonel James Miller: "Can you take that battery?" "I'll try, sir," was the prompt reply. Then silently leading his regiment, which was partially concealed by the fence of a churchyard, along which they passed, Miller rushed upon the artillerists, and drove them from their guns at the point of the bayonet. Presently General Drummond advanced in the darkness to recover the

CHAP. guns ; but his men quailed before the terrible fire which
XLIV. they encountered. He rallied them again ; and again
1814. they were forced from the hill. With the energy of desperation, for the third time they advanced, and were again met with a resistance equally obstinate,—the opposing forces fighting hand to hand with the bayonet. It was now midnight. The British sullenly retired. The
July Americans had maintained their ground, supplying their
25. own exhausted ammunition from the cartridge-boxes of their slain foes. The men were almost perishing with hunger, thirst and fatigue. They had marched during the day fifteen miles, and contended with the enemy five hours. Exhausted, they sank upon the ground. The silence was broken only by the groans of the wounded and dying, and the roar of the mighty cataract, whose moaning tones was a fit requiem for the dead on that field of blood.

The Americans at length retired to their camp, not having horses or any means to carry off the guns which they had captured. The scouts of the enemy soon discovered that they had retired, and a strong detachment was sent to reoccupy the hill and recover their artillery.

Such was the midnight battle of Bridgewater, or Lundy's Lane. The Americans lost nearly seven hundred and fifty men—and the British nearly nine hundred ; an unprecedented loss, when compared with the number engaged. Brown and Scott were both wounded ; as well as nearly all the regimental officers. The next morning there were but sixteen hundred effective men in the American camp. It was now seen that the Americans, when properly led, could and would fight. They had met the veterans who fought under Wellington in Spain, and repulsed them in three desperate encounters. This battle stood out in bold relief, when compared with the imbecility hitherto so characteristic of the campaigns on the northern fron-

tier. It acquired a national interest, as important in its effect as the first naval victories. CHAP.
XLIV.

The American army fell back to Fort Erie, the command of which Brown intrusted to Colonel Edmund P. Gaines. In the course of a fortnight, Drummond advanced with four thousand men, and after bombarding the fort, attempted at midnight to carry it by assault. The British, in the face of a destructive fire, charged again and again, even within a few feet of the intrenchments. They were finally forced to retire, after sustaining a loss of nearly a thousand men—the Americans not losing a hundred. In a few weeks the energetic Brown, now partially recovered from his wounds, assumed the command. He determined to make a dash at the enemy's batteries, which were two miles in advance of their camp. The time, mid-day, was well chosen. Rushing out from the fort, before assistance could come from the British camp, he stormed the batteries, fired the magazines, spiked the guns, captured four hundred prisoners, and returned to the fort, leaving six hundred of the enemy killed and wounded. But this brilliant exploit cost him nearly three hundred men. Drummond immediately raised the siege and retreated beyond the Chippewa. 1814.

Aug.
15.

Sept.
17.

Stirring events occurred on another part of the frontier. The little navy on Lake Champlain emulated the deeds of the one on Lake Erie just a year before. General Prevost, himself, marched from Canada with twelve thousand veteran troops to invade the State of New York—the town of Plattsburg was the special object of attack. There on the south bank of the Saranac, General Macomb was intrenched with an army of three thousand men, many of whom were invalids. The main body of the American forces was under General Izard, at Sackett's Harbor. Macomb called upon the militia of Vermont and New York for aid; three thousand of whom nobly responded, as did their fathers thirty-seven years before, Sept.
7

CHAP.
XLIV.

1814.

when Burgoyne was moving in the same direction, and for the same purpose. Commodore Macdonough, after laboring incessantly, had at last equipped a fleet. It consisted of a ship, the *Saratoga*, of twenty-six guns, a brig of twenty guns, an armed schooner, and a sloop, besides some gun-boats, in all eighty-six guns and eight hundred and fifty-six men. The British soon appeared, and began to prepare batteries in order to assault Macomb's position. It was useless to force the *Saranac*, unless the command of the lake was secured. Captain Downie had a fleet of one ship of thirty-seven guns, a brig of twenty-four, two sloops each of eleven, and a number of gun-boats, in all ninety-five guns and one thousand men. Macdonough moored his fleet across the entrance of Plattsburg Bay. A strange scene was witnessed on board the *Saratoga*. As the British fleet drew near, Macdonough knelt in prayer in the presence of his men, and implored the blessing of Heaven upon his country, and especially upon those about to engage with him in the coming conflict.

Sept.
11.

Downie stood directly into the harbor, reserving his fire for a close action, but his largest vessel became so disabled that he was obliged to cast anchor a quarter of a mile from the American line. During this time one of his sloops was so cut up as to become unmanageable, and drifting within reach, was secured, while the other sloop for a similar cause drifted ashore. All the guns on one side of Macdonough's largest ship were disabled, but he managed to wind her round, and presented a whole side and guns to her antagonist. Downie attempted the same manœuvre, but failing he struck his flag; the entire fleet was captured with the exception of a few gun-boats.

When the battle began on the lake, Prevost advanced to storm Macomb's position; he delayed the main attack till a detachment could cross the river above, but before that was accomplished, the fleet had surrendered. The following night, in the midst of a raging storm, the enemy,

stricken with a sudden panic, commenced their retreat, abandoned their sick and wounded, and the greater part of their stores. Thus again the navy of the lake had given a decisive blow.

CHAP.
XLIV.
—
1814.

Their great number of vessels enabled the British still to blockade the ports of the United States, and effectually prevent their ships of war from getting to sea. The Wasp was their only one afloat. She was known to have lately captured the British sloop-of-war Avon, and subsequently three other prizes. All trace of her was now lost; she had gone down, carrying with her the only American flag which waved on the ocean from a national vessel. Chesapeake Bay became the favorite rendezvous for the British fleet; its shores affording great facilities for marauding expeditions. As a defence, the gun-boats were of no service, except to make a bold front till the enemy came near, and then to run up the creeks, out of harm's way.

In the waters of the Chesapeake and its tributaries, there were now sixty ships of war under the command of Admirals Cockburn and Cochrane. On board this fleet was a land force of five thousand troops, under General Robert Ross. The greatest alarm prevailed in that region in consequence of a proclamation, signed by Cochrane, which promised to persons desirous of emigrating from the United States, employment in the British army and navy, or transportation as "*free settlers*" to the West India Islands, or to Canada. Still more alarming was the rumor, based on the proposition of some British officers, that the enemy were about to seize the peninsula between the Chesapeake and Delaware Bays, and there form and drill an army of runaway slaves.

July
9.

General Winder, who was appointed to the command in the emergency, was authorized to call out fifteen thousand militia from the neighboring States. This he proposed to do some weeks before the enemy appeared, and

CHAP.
XLIV.

1814.

to place them in a central position, that they might be able to march to the defence of either Washington, Baltimore, or Annapolis, as the case might require. This judicious plan was not adopted. Armstrong, the Secretary of War, opposed it on the ground that with an empty treasury it would be unjustifiable to incur the expense; and, moreover, he was of the opinion that Washington would not be attacked by an enemy who were without horses or cannon, and that Baltimore could defend itself. President Madison seems to have been at a loss what to do or advise. In the midst of these discussions the enemy appeared, one portion of their fleet coming up the bay, and another up the Potomac.

Aug.
20.

At this late hour word was sent, not by express, but by the tardy mail, to the authorities of Pennsylvania and Virginia, asking them to forward their requisition of militia. It was now impossible for them to reach the scene of action. In the mean time at Benedict, on the Patuxent, about fifty miles from Washington, General Ross landed five thousand troops, without meeting the least opposition from the militia of the neighborhood. He commenced his march toward the capital, moving very slowly, not more than ten miles a day, the marines, for want of horses, dragging their field-pieces, only three or four. The soldiers were enervated from the effects of their voyage, and from the excessive heat of the weather. A few spirited troops could have easily checked them. A company of armed and trained negroes marched in front, cautiously exploring the country, and receiving from runaway slaves information of the Americans. The soul of the enterprise was the notorious Cockburn, who had been for a year engaged in pillaging that region. The planters were so much alarmed for their own safety, lest the slaves, much more numerous than their masters, should rise in insurrection and join the enemy, that they permitted the invaders to advance for four days without making the least

opposition. They might have been delayed on their march much longer, if trees had been felled at certain points where the roads crossed swamps, or if the numerous bridges on the route had been broken down. CHAP.
XLIV
1814.

Commodore Barney, who was in command of the flotilla of gun-boats, ran them up the Patuxent as far as possible, then set them on fire, and marched with five hundred marines to join the militia concentrating in the vicinity of Bladensburg. Here he was put in command of some heavy guns brought from the navy yard. The President himself, accompanied by his cabinet, visited the camp, where all was in confusion. The divisions of militia were stationed by General Winder in such positions as to support each other, but these had been changed by self-constituted officers, who accompanied the President. It was ascertained that the enemy was moving toward Bladensburg. Rumor had magnified their number to ten thousand ; all veterans. The discreet militia began to retreat, some with permission and some without. On learning this General Winder sent orders for them to make a stand at the bridge and fight. The village was abandoned, and on the other side of the east branch of the Potomac the marines and militia were arranged. Barney had placed his men in a position to sweep the road with the guns. About the middle of the afternoon the enemy appeared, but so excessive had been the heat, that they were completely exhausted. When Ross reconnoitred the militia stationed on the rising ground, he was somewhat alarmed at their formidable appearance. But he had gone too far to retreat ; the order was given to move forward. His alarm was of short continuance. A few Congreve rockets put the Maryland militia to flight ; the riflemen followed ; the artillery, after firing not more than twice, rapidly retreated ; then the Baltimore regiment, on which some hopes were placed, fled also, carrying with them the President and his cabinet. The

Aug.
22.

Aug
24.

CHAP. British now moved slowly on until they were checked by
 XLIV. the guns manned by the marines under Barney. Find-
 1814. ing it impossible to force the position of the marines and
 sailors in front, detachments filed by the right and left
 and passed up ravines. At the head of one was stationed
 the Annapolis regiment, which fled at the first fire. At
 the head of the other ravine were placed some regulars
 and militia ; they also showed their discretion by getting
 out of harm's way as soon as possible. The sailors and
 marines, thus deserted, and in danger of being surrounded,
 retired, their guns and wounded companions falling into
 the hands of the enemy. Owing to the vigorous fire of
 the marines, the British lost a large number of men, and
 others died from fatigue and heat, and it was absolutely
 necessary to wait some hours before they could march on
 Washington. Thus ended the battle of Bladensburg,—
 in one respect the most famous in American annals.

In the cool of the evening the British advanced into
 Washington, which they found almost entirely deserted
 by its male inhabitants. The enemy proceeded to dis-
 grace themselves by fulfilling the instructions which Ad-
 miral Cochrane had previously officially announced,
 which were “to destroy and lay waste all towns and dis-
 tricts of the United States found accessible to the attack
 of British armaments.” They burned the capitol, and with
 it the Congressional Library, and the buildings used for
 the Treasury and State Departments, in revenge, as it was
 said, for the Parliament House at York. Many important
 papers were lost, but the most valuable had been removed
 some days before. Mrs. Madison had left the President's
 mansion, taking with her the plate and valuables, and also a
 portrait of Washington—which was taken from the frame
 and rolled up. The mansion was pillaged and set on fire,
 as were some private dwellings, and stores were also plun-
 dered. A complete destruction followed at the navy
 yard.

Aug.
25.

In the midst of a hostile country, General Ross, with a handful of exhausted men, was ill at ease. Perhaps he had read of Concord and Lexington, and was alarmed lest "the indignant citizen soldiery" would turn out and harass him on his retreat. Early the following night he kindled the camp fires, and leaving behind him the sick and wounded, he commenced a stealthy retreat to his ships. His alarm was needless; in a march of four days not the least opposition did he experience. Four days after the taking of the capital, the British frigates, passing by Fort Washington, which offered but little resistance, came up the Potomac and anchored opposite Alexandria, which town saved itself from a bombardment by paying an enormous tribute.

CHAP.
XLIV.

1814.

Aug
29.

When his men were refreshed, General Ross moved with the fleet up the Chesapeake, toward Baltimore. The militia of Maryland by this time had assembled for the defence of the city, and also several companies of volunteers had arrived from Pennsylvania. The enemy, eight thousand strong, landed at North Point, at the mouth of the Patapsco. The land forces commenced their march, and the fleet to ascend the river, intending to capture Fort McHenry, situated two miles below the city. An advance party of Americans were thrown forward. In a skirmish with this party, General Ross was killed, yet the invaders pressed on; the militia, after a spirited encounter, retired in good order. The next morning the enemy advanced, yet hesitatingly, as the neighboring hills were covered with soldiers, field works and artillery, which altogether made a formidable appearance. They were under the veteran General Samuel Smith, the same who so gallantly defended Fort Mifflin in the Revolution. The British hesitated to commence the attack without the co-operation of the fleet, which was then busily engaged in bombarding Fort McHenry, but without much success, as the fort was replying with great spirit. When it was

Sept
12

CHAP. XLIV. ascertained that the fleet could not pass the fort, the invaders silently retired in the night and re-embarked.

1814. It was amid the excitement of this cannonade that Francis Key composed the popular song of the "Star Spangled Banner." He had gone to ask the release of certain prisoners, and had been detained during the attack on board the British fleet.

From Eastport in Maine to Sandy Hook, the whole Eastern coast was liable to these marauding expeditions. One of the most serious of these, was the bombardment of Stonington in Connecticut, which continued for four days, but after throwing shells and rockets, and several attempts to land, the enemy retired. They were repelled in every instance by the sturdy militia. Field works, garrisoned by the yeomanry of the country, were thrown up at all points along the coast likely to be an object of attack. This was done by the State authorities, the national government being so completely enfeebled, as to be unable to afford the least aid to any of the States.

The people of New England, with very few exceptions, continued to complain of their grievances. Their distress was great; the embargo, enforced by severe penalties, ruined their fisheries and their coasting trade, and had deprived them of many of the necessities of life. They looked upon these restrictions as "more odious and unfeeling than the Boston Port Bill, which roused the colonies to independence; a gross and palpable violation of the principles of the Constitution, not to be submitted to without a pusillanimous surrender of their rights and liberties."

Petitions poured in to the legislature of Massachusetts, asking it to take measures to redress these grievances. A committee to whom these petitions were referred, reported in terms expressive of the general sentiment of the petitioners. They believed that the war, so fertile in failures, and so threatening as to its results, was uncalled for and

wrong in principle. They saw in the future the people impoverished, deprived of their comforts, and their hopes blasted. And the committee recommended a convention of delegates from the commercial States, to obtain amendments to the constitution that would secure them against such evils.

CHAP.
XLIV.
1814.

These manifestations of discontent had their effect, and the President himself proposed the abandonment of the restrictive system, not only the embargo, but the non-importation act. In order to encourage domestic manufactures, instead of the latter he recommended that for three years after the close of the war double duties be imposed upon imported goods, and that the exportation of specie be prohibited.

Mar
81.

The advocates of the war in Congress, annoyed at the failures of the last two years, attributed their want of success to the influence of those opposed to the war; instead of acknowledging their own imprudence, in thus rushing, without preparation, into hostilities, or ceasing to be infatuated with the idea of conquering Canada. In the discussion on a bill to procure enlistments for the army, Daniel Webster in reply to these charges, no doubt expressed the general sentiment of those opposed to the war. In those sections of the country where the population was most numerous, the war was unpopular because of its impolicy;—it was no detraction from their patriotism that they did not join heart and hand in measures which they deemed the extreme of folly. He continued,—“Give up your futile projects of invasion. Extinguish the fires which blaze on your inland frontiers. Establish perfect safety and defence there by adequate force. Let every man that sleeps on your soil sleep in security. Having performed this work of beneficence and mercy on your inland border, turn and look with the eye of justice and compassion on your vast population along the coast. Uncle the iron grasp of your embargo. Take

CHAP. XLIV. measures for that end before another sun sets upon you
 1814. With all the war of the enemy upon your commerce, if you would cease to make war upon it yourselves, you would still have some commerce. That commerce would give you some revenue. Apply that revenue to the augmentation of your navy. Let it no longer be said, that not one ship of force, built by your hands since the war, yet floats upon the ocean. If the war must continue, go to the ocean. If you are seriously contending for maritime rights, go to the theatre where alone those rights can be defended. Thither every indication of your fortune points you. There the united wishes and exertions of the nation will go with you. Even our party divisions, acrimonious as they are, cease at the water's edge. They are lost in attachment to the national character, on the element where that character is made respectable. In time you may be able to redress injuries in the place where they may be offered ; and, if need be, to accompany your own flag throughout the world with the protection of your own cannon."

The embargo and non-importation act were repealed, while action on the other recommendations of the President was postponed.

Dec. 15. The delegates to the convention recommended by the legislature of Massachusetts, met upon the appointed day at Hartford. In accordance with the sentiments expressed in the call for the convention, the members were enjoined not to propose measures "repugnant to their obligations, as members of the Union." They met in a time of trial and distress to confer with each other on the best means to relieve the country of a ruinous war, and secure the blessings of a permanent peace. The Convention, consisting of but twenty-six members, sat with closed doors. After a session of twenty days it adjourned, and, as the result of their deliberations, published an address to the people. The address disappointed the more violent

opponents of the war, who thought the occasion demanded more decided measures. The President and his cabinet had been much alarmed ; in the Convention, they imagined lurked some terrible plot of treason ; they breathed more freely when they read this address and the resolutions

CHAP.
XLIV.

1814.

After recapitulating the evils which the war had brought upon the people whom they represented, they expressed their sentiments upon other wrongs ; such as the enlistment of minors and apprentices ; the national government assuming to command the State militia ; and especially the proposed system of conscription for both army and navy. " Strange propositions for a government professedly waging war to protect its seamen from impressment ! " " The conscription of the father with the seduction of the son, renders complete the power of the national executive over the male population of the country, thus destroying the most important relations of society."

" A free constitution administered by great and incomparable statesmen realized the fondest hopes of liberty and independence, under Washington and his measures. The arts flourished, the comforts of life were universally diffused, nothing remained but to reap the advantages and cherish the resources flowing from this policy."

" Our object is to strengthen and perpetuate the union of these States, by removing the causes of jealousies."

In furtherance of these views they proposed amendments to the Constitution ; among others, to equalize the representation in the lower House of Congress, by basing it on free population ; against embargoes and non-intercourse laws ; to make the President ineligible for a second term. These amendments were never adopted by the States. The existence of the Convention showed the intense feeling on the subject of the war and its consequences, and its deliberations exhibit no other spirit than that of wishing to redress grievances by constitutional means.

**CHAP.
XLIV.**

1814. Shortly after the adjournment of the Convention, the legislatures of Massachusetts and Connecticut, viewing the law of Congress which authorized the enlistment of minors and apprentices, as a violation of their rights and unconstitutional, passed laws that subjected the recruiting officers to fine and imprisonment ; and required the State judges to release any such minor or apprentice on application of the parent or guardian. Fortunately the war was soon after brought to a close, and the necessity for enlistments under this oppressive and demoralizing law, was removed.

CHAPTER XLV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—CONCLUDED.

Jackson enters Pensacola.—New Orleans defenceless.—The British land.—Jackson's Measures of Defence.—Battle of New Orleans.—The Distress of the Country and Embarrassment of the Government.—The Relief.—Treaty of Peace.—The Frigate President captured.—Successes at Sea.—War with Algiers.—Treaty with that Power.—Treaty with the Indians.—Financial Disorders.—State of Indiana.—John Fitch.—Robert Fulton.—First Steamboat.

WHEN arranging affairs with the Creeks, General Jackson learned that the Spaniards at Pensacola had welcomed the hostile Indians, and also that a British man-of-war had furnished them with arms. Intelligence of this was sent to Washington, whence orders were transmitted to Jackson to seize Pensacola. That these orders were six months on the way, may illustrate the efficiency with which the War Department was conducted. Meantime some British men-of-war arrived in the harbor, from which a Colonel Nichols landed men and began to enlist the Creeks. Jackson now sent urgent appeals to his favorite Tennessee mounted men to hasten to his aid. The British soon after attacked Fort Bowyer on the east shore of Mobile Bay. The fort was defended by one hundred and thirty men, under Major Lawrence. The vigorous defence soon repulsed the enemy, one of whose ships blew up and the rest were fain to depart. This success encouraged the people of Louisiana and Mississippi in their efforts to defend New Orleans themselves,

CHAP
XLV.

1814.

CHAP. XLV. without depending upon the General Government. Jackson wrote repeatedly to Washington for orders and received none, but when the three thousand Tennesseans, under General Coffee, arrived, he took the responsibility to enter Pensacola and demand that the British should leave the place. He also intimated in emphatic terms to the Spanish governor, that he would hold him responsible for permitting the British to occupy his territory, for the purpose of encouraging the Creeks in their hostility. The British immediately blew up a fort which they had erected seven miles below the town, and took to their ships.

Nov.
6.

8. Confident that the enemy designed to direct their efforts against New Orleans, Jackson sent in advance General Coffee to some point on the Mississippi, with the mounted men, while he himself followed, as soon as circumstances would permit. The defences of New Orleans were in a deplorable condition ; since Wilkinson left, nothing further had been done to repair them. The city contained nearly twenty thousand inhabitants, not one-half of whom were whites. These were principally of French origin, and others of foreign birth, none of whom were ardently attached to the United States. Jackson hastened to the point of danger. He availed himself of every possible aid ; he released the convicts in the prisons, and enrolled them for the occasion ; accepted the offered services of Lafitte, the head of the Baratarian buccaneers. He also issued an address to "the noble-hearted, generous, free men of color," to enroll themselves for the defence of their country. To this call, under an act of the Louisiana Legislature, they heartily responded.

While he was thus unprepared, the British fleet cast anchor off the entrance of Lake Borgne. It had on board twelve thousand land troops, besides four thousand sailors and marines. These troops had recently been under the Duke of Wellington, in the Peninsular war, and were commanded by able and experienced generals ; Sir Ed-

ward Packingham, a brother-in-law of the Duke of Wellington, Gibbs, Keene, and Lambert. Three days later, after a severe contest, they captured the entire American flotilla on Lake Borgne. 1814

CHAP.
XLV.

The Louisiana militia were immediately called out, but they were ill supplied with arms. Some months previous, Jackson, anticipating this very emergency, had urged upon the War Department at Washington to send a supply of arms from the arsenal at Pittsburg. The government agent, unwilling to pay the usual freight on the only steamboat then running to New Orleans, shipped the arms on board keel boats. Thus twenty-five cents on a hundred pounds of freight were saved by the government, and Jackson received the muskets after the battle!

General Coffee had reached Baton Rouge, at which place he received orders to hasten with all speed to the scene of action. With eight hundred of his best mounted men—all unerring marksmen, armed with rifles and tomahawks—he made the extraordinary march of one hundred and fifty miles in two days. Thus, by similar exertions, in the space of a fortnight, Jackson had five thousand men, four-fifths of whom were militia. Other difficulties presented themselves. Owing to the want of co-operation on the part of the legislature, and the necessities of the times, he proclaimed martial law.

Dec
20.

The enemy landed two thousand light armed troops, under General Keene. Jackson marched to meet them with the regulars, and Coffee's men dismounted. Soon after dark the battle began; the enemy were driven from one point to another, till finally they found protection behind a levee. Good service was done in this conflict by the armed schooner *Carolina*, which ran in near the shore, and with her guns swept their ranks. This successful repulse of the invaders greatly encouraged the Americans.

Dec
23.

The next day Jackson took a position on solid ground

CHAP.
XLV.

nearly a mile in breadth ; the river protecting one flank, and a swamp the other. Though strongly reinforced, the British made no attempt the following day to retrieve what they had lost, being deterred by the reports of prisoners, who greatly exaggerated the strength of Jackson's force. This delay was profitably occupied in strengthening the defences ; bales of cotton were used as a rampart, and the ditch was extended to the swamp. Five days after the enemy advanced and drove in the American outposts, and when within half a mile of the ramparts opened with artillery and Congreve rockets. Yet Jackson replied with so much vigor, with his five heavy guns, that after a cannonade of seven hours the enemy withdrew, having suffered considerable loss.

Within three days after this repulse, they made another attack with much heavier artillery. Their movements were concealed by a dense fog, and the intimation of their approach was given only by their cannon balls crashing through the American camp, but Jackson had so strengthened his works, that the British—their guns dismounted and silenced—were again compelled to retire ; but it was to make preparations for a grand assault.

Presently twenty-two hundred Kentucky riflemen arrived ; of whom unfortunately one-half were without arms, and could not be supplied. These Jackson placed to throw up a second line of intrenchments in the rear of the first line.

When prepared, the British moved to the assault, under the cover of a battery of six eighteen-pounders, which had been erected the previous night. The main column was led by Pakenham in person, intending to storm the centre, one column moved along the river and carried a redoubt, another, led by Gibbs and Keene, advanced along the edge of the swamp.

As the advancing columns came within range, the American artillery opened upon them with deadly effect,

yet they filled up their ranks and moved steadily on. Presently they reached the range of the Kentucky and Tennessee rifles, which poured in a continuous stream of unerring bullets. The heads of the columns faltered. While endeavoring to rally them, Packenham fell; Keene and Gibbs were both wounded, the latter mortally. The command then devolved on General Lambert, who made two more unsuccessful attempts to storm the works, but was forced to retire, leaving on the field two thousand men killed and wounded. Jackson had taken the precaution to send General Morgan across the river to throw up intrenchments directly opposite his own. The night previous to the battle, Packenham sent a detachment under Colonel Thornton, who drove Morgan from his position, but when the main body was defeated he took to his boats and hastily retreated.

CHAP.
XLV.
—
1815.

In this battle the Americans lost seven men killed and as many wounded.

Taking every precaution to guard against surprise, Lambert gradually fell back to the first landing place, and then, in the course of twenty days, re-embarked.

Thus virtually ended the war of 1812. The only battles well fought on land, were those directed by new men called into active service by the war itself. The victories at Lundy's Lane and New Orleans were gained by soldiers who had been trained but a short time, but they were under commanders in whom they had implicit confidence.

Though these successful events were transpiring in that distant region, yet on the Atlantic coast, and at Washington, it was the gloomiest period of the war. Affairs were almost desperate. The treasury exhausted, the national credit gone, the terrible law of conscription, like an ominous cloud hanging over the people, civil discord seemingly ready to spring up between the States;

CHAP.
XLV.

1815. the coasts of South Carolina and Georgia yet subject to the marauding expeditions of the infamous Cockburn, while the inhabitants were crying in vain to the General Government for assistance. Nothing favorable had yet been heard from the commissioners of peace at Ghent, nor even from New Orleans. It was known that a very large force of British veterans was in the vicinity of that place, and that Jackson was very ill-prepared to meet them.

As a gleam of sunshine in intense darkness, a rumor, by way of Canada, proclaimed that peace had been concluded ; at the same time came another from the southwest that the enemy had been defeated. While all were tremblingly anxious for the truth of these rumors, late of a Saturday night, a British sloop-of-war, the Favorite, commissioned for the purpose, arrived at New York, bringing the treaty of peace, already ratified by the British government. The cry of PEACE ! PEACE ! ran through the city. As if by one impulse the houses were illuminated, and the citizens, without distinction of party, thronged the streets to congratulate each other. In the midst of their own rejoicings they did not forget their brethren who were yet ignorant of the welcome news, and messengers were sent in every direction. In thirty-two hours, the express with the tidings reached Boston. There the excitement was almost unbounded. The people assembled in crowds to hear the news, which had so unexpectedly brought relief to their distresses. The bells rang their merriest peal, and the schools received a holiday. Flags and streamers were soon displayed on the vessels which had lain so long idle at the wharf. Before night, carpenters and riggers were at work, sailors were engaged, cargoes were passing on board ; Boston was herself again in commercial activity. The reception of the news was followed by similar rejoicings all along the coast, and throughout the country. To add still more to the happiness, as well as the gratification of the nation, in a

Feb.
11.



THE CONSTITUTION FIGHTING THE CYANE AND THE LEVANT

few days was confirmed the rumor of the total defeat of the British before New Orleans.

CHAP.
XLV.

The Senate unanimously ratified the treaty within thirty hours after it was laid before them. The President speedily issued a proclamation, announcing the fact, that once more peace reigned throughout the land. A day for thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessing, was observed by the nation.

1815.

Feb.
18.

The treaty provided for the mutual restoration of all places taken during the war ; also for determining the northern boundary, and other matters of minor importance were amicably arranged. But not a word was said on the impressment question, for the settlement of which the war had ostensibly been continued after the first two months. Both parties seem to have been heartily tired of fighting ; though Great Britain wished to restrain what she thought an alarming grasping spirit in the New Republic, as evidenced in the acquisition of Louisiana and the attempts on Canada.

A few days after the ratification of the treaty, the President recommended to Congress the passage of a law to guard against incidents which, during the periods of war in Europe, might tend to interrupt peace, enjoining that "American vessels be navigated exclusively by American seamen, either natives or such as are already naturalized," thus endeavoring to gain by legislation what could not be obtained by war. Yet one object had been secured—we hear no more of the impressment of American seamen.

Previous to the announcement of peace, the commanders of some of the national vessels determined to evade the blockading enemy and escape to sea. Commodore Decatur, on board the frigate President, commanding the sloops Hornet and Peacock to follow, attempted to evade the blockade of the port of New York. Passing out in the night, after being unfortunately aground for some

Jan.
18.

CHAP. hours, in the morning he fell in with the British squadron,
 XLV. by whom he was chased. One of the enemy, the frigate
 1815. *Endymion*, commenced an engagement, but after a running fight, she was effectually disabled, and fain to haul off. The President unfortunately was also crippled, and the other British vessels coming up, *Decatur* was compelled to strike his colors.

A few days after, the *Hornet* and *Peacock* avoided the blockade, and proceeded to their rendezvous, off the Cape of Good Hope. On her way the *Hornet*, Captain Biddle,
 Mar. fell in with and captured the British brig *Penguin*. The latter was made a complete wreck, and as such was set on fire. The *Peacock* joined her consort, and in company they sailed to the Indian Ocean. The *Hornet* was soon after chased by a British seventy-four, and in order to escape, she was compelled to throw her guns and nearly all her armament overboard, in which condition she returned to New York. The *Peacock*, Captain Warrington, continued on to the East Indies, where she captured
 June 30. the cruiser *Nautilus*.

The *Constitution*, Captain Stewart, also evaded the blockade off Boston harbor. On a moonlight night she fell in with two war vessels off the port of Lisbon. They prepared to engage, but the *Constitution* manœuvred to keep the wind at about an equal distance from her antagonists. Captain Stewart, seizing a favorable opportunity, directed all his force upon the vessel nearest,
 Feb. 20. which almost immediately struck; then he captured the other in a similar manner. The prizes proved to be the British sloops-of-war *Cyane* and *Levant*. These captures were all made after the articles of peace were signed.

Soon after the commencement of the war with Britain, the Dey of Algiers, thinking the Americans would have no means of punishing him, renewed his old practice of piracy. Pretending to be dissatisfied with the presents he had received from the American government, he dis-

missed Lear, the consul, threatening to reduce him and his family, and all the Americans in Algiers, to slavery, a fate which Lear escaped by paying a large ransom. Some American vessels were afterward seized by the pirates, and their crews reduced to slavery.

CHAP.
XLV.
1815.

Two months after the conclusion of peace, an American squadron, under Decatur, consisting of three large frigates and seven other vessels of war, sailed for the Mediterranean. Six weeks later, Bainbridge followed with the Independence, the new seventy-four, accompanied by other war vessels ; on the way he was also joined by the Congress frigate. But before his arrival in the Mediterranean, the energetic Decatur had brought the Dey to terms. On the second day after passing through the Straits of Gibraltar, he fell in with the largest frigate of the Dey under his high Admiral, on a cruise for American merchantmen. After a fight of less than thirty minutes the Algerine was captured ; two days after another cruiser shared a similar fate. When the squadron appeared before Algiers, the intelligence of these disasters, by which he had lost his best ship, and six hundred men, had greatly humbled the Dey. To escape a worse punishment, he gladly submitted to the indignity of signing, on Decatur's quarter-deck, a humiliating treaty. He bound himself to make indemnities for his extortions ; to surrender all his prisoners without ransom, and to renounce all claim for tribute from the American government, as well as his barbarous practice of piracy and reducing prisoners to slavery.

May.

Decatur proceeded immediately to Tunis and Tripoli, where he demanded and received indemnity for some American vessels, at whose captures, in their harbors, by the English, they had connived. Thus, in a few weeks, these barbarians were taught a lesson which they have not yet forgotten. When Bainbridge arrived, he found all the difficulties arranged. The united navy, consisting of

CHAP. fourteen vessels, visited the principal ports of the Medi-
XLV. terranean. Their victories over the mistress of the ocean,
1815. secured them treatment manifesting high respect.

The autumn following the close of the war, a great council of the North-western Indian tribes was held, at which they made peace with each other. Afterward they all made peace with the United States. Thus apprehensions of future Indian hostilities were removed.

Sept.

The war left the finances of the country in a very confused state. The banks in existence, except those in New England, were unable to redeem their notes in specie, and confidence in their promises to pay was wanting. The national debt, in consequence of the war, was known to be more than one hundred millions of dollars. In order to remove some of the burdens resting upon the people, the Secretary of the Treasury, A. J. Dallas, proposed to remit some of the internal taxes, which had been levied during the last few years. Instead of which he advised the imposition of duties on imports, not merely to secure a revenue, but also to protect the manufactures which had sprung into existence during the war. The President likewise, in his annual message, urged the adoption of such a policy.

1817.
Mar.
4.

To aid in rectifying the financial disorders in the country, Congress chartered, for twenty years, a National Bank, with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars. It commenced operations at Philadelphia, and, in connection with its branches in other States, afforded the people a uniform currency redeemable at all times with gold and silver.

A bill designed to compel the local banks to pay specie was passed, ordering that all dues to the government should be paid in gold and silver, or "in treasury notes, notes of the Bank of the United States, or in notes of banks payable and paid on demand in specie."

Sept.

The Territory of Indiana having adopted a constitution, presented herself for admission into the Union, and was received.



Rob^t Fulton

John Fitch, an uneducated watchmaker of Philadelphia, conceived the design of propelling boats by steam. He applied to Congress for assistance, but, unfortunately, was refused ; then, with a similar result, he applied to the Spanish authorities of Louisiana. Some years later he found means to construct a boat, and to make a trial trip on the Delaware. The boat went at the rate of eight miles an hour, but unfortunately the boiler exploded. One disaster followed another, and poor John Fitch died, the victim of disappointment, but full of faith that others would yet perfect his invention : he desired to be buried on the banks of the Ohio, that boats propelled by steam might pass near his last resting place. In less than twenty years after his death the steamer Clermont passed up the Hudson from New York to Albany.

CHAP.
XLV.
1785.

1807

The Clermont was the work of Robert Fulton, a native of Pennsylvania, once a pupil of West, the painter. He had a decided turn for mechanics, and had studied the subject many years in Europe, where he received pecuniary aid and encouragement from Robert R. Livingston, then American minister at Paris.

To American enterprise is due the honor of launching the first steamboat and the first Ocean steamer—the Savannah—that crossed the Atlantic. She left New York, went to Savannah, and thence to Europe, where she was an object of great interest. Twenty years later the British steamer Great Western came to New York in fourteen days.

1818

April
1838

Madison's Administration, so full of important events, drew to a close. James Monroe, also from Virginia, had been elected his successor, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President. The latter had been Governor of that State, and in that capacity been most efficient in aiding the country in the war just closed. At one time he sustained the garrison of the city by his own private credit.

CHAPTER XLVI.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

A Return to the earlier Policy of the Government.—The President's Tour in the Eastern States.—The Colonization Society.—Revolutions in the Spanish Colonies.—Indian War; the Seminoles.—General Jackson in the Field.—Purchase of Florida.—The Missouri Compromise.—Manufactures.—Increase of Tariff.—Visit of Lafayette.

CHAP.
XLVI.

1817.

SINCE the close of the war, party distinctions were fast losing their influence. In the minds of the great majority of the people, names were giving place to ideas. The nation was prepared for the quiet revival of the leading principles of Washington's administration. The people had not in so many words thus formally decided;—but to return to the policy of the earlier days of the Government seemed the only means to remedy existing evils, and to guard against their recurrence in the future. This may be said in relation to the revenue as arising from commerce, the finances, the policy toward foreign nations, and in the means of national defence both by sea and land.

Mar.
4.

The new President in his inaugural fully indorsed these doctrines, and they were echoed and re-echoed throughout the land as the true policy, while some of the old Republicans characterized them as being veritable Federalism under another name. The President pointed to the experience of the nation in the last struggle, and unhesitatingly advised not only fortifications on the coast with garrisons, but a navy strong enough to maintain the dig-

nity and neutrality of the United States, as well as protect commerce; he also recommended that a knowledge of naval and military science should be kept up. In addition, that domestic manufactures be protected by imposts on foreign merchandise, and also, internal improvements be aided by the national government, if such expenditure was in accordance with the spirit of the Constitution.

CHAP.
XLVI.
—
1817

Though professing to be much gratified that the party spirit lately so rampant was allayed, the President took good care to appoint none but his most devoted adherents to the offices within his gift. John Quincy Adams was recalled from the court of St. James to become Secretary of State. The other members of his cabinet were William H. Crawford of Georgia, Secretary of the Treasury; Crowningshield of Massachusetts, Secretary of the Navy; John C. Calhoun, Secretary of War, and William Wirt, Attorney-General.

The President, some months after his inauguration, made a tour through the Eastern States. The sentiments of his address had become diffused, and prepared the way for his receiving a warm reception in the Federal town of Boston, and throughout New England generally. It was enthusiastically proclaimed that the people were once more to be harmonious in their views of national policy.

During the following session of Congress the American Colonization Society was formed at Washington. It was designed to provide a home beyond the limits of the United States for the free people of color who should desire to emigrate. The condition of these people in the slaveholding States, as well as the laws in some of the others, that forbade their settling within their borders, led to the formation of the Society. The enterprise was ardently advocated by Henry Clay, Judge Washington, John Randolph, and other southern statesmen. This So-

CHAP
XLVI.

1817

ciety established the now flourishing Colony of Liberia on the west coast of Africa.

The influence of the Revolution had not been without effect upon other nations. The Spanish colonies of South America threw off their allegiance to the mother country, and declared themselves independent. Under the pretence of having commissions from these new Republics, a company of adventurers, principally drawn from Charleston and Savannah, seized Amelia Island, off the harbor of St. Augustine. These worthies soon began to smuggle merchandise and slaves into the United States. Yet, as a cloak to their deeds, they proclaimed they were blockading the port of St. Augustine. A similar haunt for buccaneers had existed for some time at Galveston in Texas. Both these establishments were broken up by order of the United States Government.

The condition of the South American republics excited great sympathy in the minds of the people. Some were advocates for giving them aid, while others were anxious that Congress should, at least, acknowledge their independence. In defiance of the President's proclamation to the contrary, cruisers, bearing the flag of these Republics, were fitted out in some of the ports of the United States to prey upon Spanish commerce.

These difficulties, combined with other causes, led to a new Indian war in the South. Numbers of Seminoles, refugee Creeks, and runaway negroes, living in the Spanish Territory, south of Flint river, began to pillage the Georgia settlements north of that river. General Gaines, who was in command at the nearest fort, demanded that these murderers and robbers should be given up. The Indians refused, on the ground that they were not the aggressors. Soon after a collision occurred, in which several Indians were killed. Their death was terribly revenged upon the people on board a boat ascending the Apalachi-

Nov.
30.

cola, with supplies for Fort Scott. More than forty persons, consisting of men, women, and children, were massacred. The War Department ordered General Jackson to invade the Indian Territory, and "bring the war to a speedy and effectual close." In three months he was on the ground, with an army composed of Georgians and Tennesseans. He moved to the vicinity of where Tallahassee now stands; the savages made little resistance, but abandoned their towns, and their cattle and grain. With his usual energy, Jackson pressed on, and, without ceremony, seized St. Mark's, on Appalachee Bay, the only Spanish fort in that part of Florida, on the ground that its officers were aiding and abetting the Indians in their hostilities to the United States. One of the American armed vessels on the coast hoisted British colors, and two of the hostile Creek chiefs were decoyed on board. These chiefs Jackson unceremoniously hanged. On one of the incursions against the enemy, two British subjects, Robert C. Ambrister and Alexander Arbuthnot, traders among the Indians, were taken prisoners. These two men were put on trial for their lives before a court-martial, on the charge of aiding the Indians. They were found guilty and sentenced to death, and immediately executed. The measure was much censured as unnecessary and unwarranted. Notwithstanding the protest of the Spanish governor against his invasion of Florida, Jackson soon appeared before Pensacola, which place surrendered. The governor in the mean time fled to a fort further down the bay, and finally to Havana.

These arbitrary proceedings were protested against by Don Onís, the Spanish Minister at Washington. The matter however was not pressed, as negotiations were soon after entered upon to purchase the territory in dispute.

American citizens had claims amounting to five millions of dollars against the Spanish government. Don Onís received instructions from home, that authorized

CHAP
XLVI

1817

Mar.

April

May

- CHAP. XLVI. him to cede Florida to the United States for these claims
 1821. The purchase was thus made, the American Government assuming the debt. Two years later Spain ratified the Treaty. Florida was then organized as a Territory, and General Jackson was appointed its first Governor.

The American people have never been indifferent to the political as well as the moral aspects of slavery. From the adoption of the Constitution till the time of which we write, the conscience and the sympathy of the religious portion of the nation, both North and South, found their expression on the subject in memorials addressed to their ecclesiastical assemblies, whose resolutions in reply condemned the system.

1787. The Continental Congress legislated specially on the subject in adopting the ordinance by which the region north of the Ohio and east of the Mississippi was consecrated to freedom. During the second session of the First Congress, petitions were presented to that body, praying it to take measures to free the nation of the system. The committee to whom these memorials were referred, reported that Congress was not authorized by the Constitution to interfere with slavery as existing in the individual States. In accordance with this view, that body has ever acted, when disposing of the numerous memorials on the subject that have, from time to time, been presented to it.

The Northern States, for a quarter of a century, had been gradually freeing themselves of the institution, or making provision to that effect, while in the Southern States a different sentiment had been on the increase. The acquisition of Louisiana had given to them a vast region in which slave labor was profitable, especially in the cultivation of cotton. These antagonist opinions were suddenly brought into collision, and a strong sectional feeling was elicited.

1819
 Feb.
 16.

The territory of Missouri asked permission to form a

constitution, preparatory to her admission into the Union as a State. When the question was before the House of Representatives, James W. Tallmadge, a member from New York, proposed to insert a clause, prohibiting the further introduction of slaves into the territory, and also another clause granting freedom to the children of slaves already there, when they should attain the age of twenty-five years.

CHAP.
XLVI.
1819

After a spirited debate both these propositions were adopted. The day following the passage of this bill came up a similar one to organize the Territory of Arkansas. This bill, after a strenuous effort to insert similar clauses, was finally passed without any restriction as to slavery.

The States admitted into the Union, since the adoption of the Constitution, had happened to come in alternately as non-slaveholding, and as slaveholding—Vermont and Kentucky ; Tennessee and Ohio ; Louisiana and Indiana ; Mississippi and Illinois. As Alabama had applied for admission as a slave State, it was urged that Missouri should be admitted as free. This proposition soon lost its force by the application of Maine, the north-eastern part of Massachusetts, presenting herself to be admitted as a free State. Here was an offset to Alabama, leaving Missouri to make the next slave State.

In the consideration of these bills the subject of slavery restriction in the territories came up for discussion. The members from the Southern States insisted that any restriction upon Missouri would violate the pledge given to the inhabitants of Louisiana, at the time of its purchase, that they should enjoy "all the privileges of citizens of the United States ;" that such a restriction would eventually interfere with State rights ; that the citizens of slaveholding States had the right to take their property into the territories of the Union. It was urged that it would be an act of humanity and a blessing to the poor slave, whose lot was so hard in the old exhausted

CHAP.
XLVI.

1819.

States, to transfer him to the fertile plains of the west ; that this would only be the diffusion of the system, but not its extension, as the number of slaves would not be increased thereby ; and that the prohibition of slavery would diminish emigration from the South into the territories.

To these arguments it was replied : it was true that Congress was forbidden by the Constitution to interfere with slavery in the original thirteen States, but that this did not apply to the territories. They were the property of the Union, and Congress had the control of their organization. Would Congress be justified in spreading over them an institution which even its advocates on the floor of the house had again and again deplored as an evil ?

It was contended that slave labor and free labor could not coexist on the same soil ; and should the introduction of a few thousands of slaves exclude millions of freemen from the territories ? ¹

The debate was conducted with great animation, mingled with much bitterness, and threats to dissolve the Union. The intense excitement was not limited to the National Legislature ; it extended throughout the country, and it was by no means diminished by the speeches made on the subject on the floor of Congress, nor by the fact, which the discussion revealed, that during the previous year more than fourteen thousand slaves had been smuggled into the United States, from Africa and the West Indies.

The legislatures of some of the Northern States expressed their wish that slavery should not go beyond the Mississippi, while the people held conventions and memorialized Congress. Opposite views were as strongly expressed by some of the Southern States. Thus the country was agitated for nearly two years, and the diffi-

¹ The Debates in Congress, Niles's Register, Vols 16, 17, and 18.

culty was still unsettled. When the bill came before the Senate, Jesse B. Thomas of Illinois moved as an amendment, a clause forbidding the introduction of slavery into the Louisiana Territory north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude, and west of the proposed State of Missouri. This was the line of the famous Missouri Compromise. The House, however, would not at first agree to this arrangement; but finally, through means of a committee of conference, Maine was admitted, and Missouri, on these conditions, after she should adopt a constitution.

The following year, when the constitution of Missouri was presented to Congress, it was found to contain a clause that prohibited free people of color from settling in the State. Though this clause "was adopted for the sake of peace—for the sake of internal tranquillity—and to prevent the agitation of the slave question,"¹ yet it was viewed far differently in Congress, and was the occasion of opening the restriction question with all its bitterness. The insertion of the offensive clause, under the circumstances, seemed to manifest as little regard for the Constitution of the United States, as respect for the opinions of those opposed to the extension of slavery. The citizens of any one State were, by the Constitution, entitled to the privileges of citizens in the other States. Free people of color were thus recognized in some of the States, but by this clause they were deprived of their rights. Another committee of conference, of which Henry Clay was the prime mover, was appointed by the Senate and House of Representatives. The difficulty was again compromised by which Missouri was to be admitted on the express condition that she would expunge the obnoxious clause, and then the President was authorized to admit her by proclamation. The Missouri Legislature complied, and the fact

CHAP.
XLVI.

1820

¹ Benton's Thirty Years' View, Vol. I. p. 2.

CHAP.
XLVI.

1821.

Aug

was communicated to the President, who proclaimed his admission to the family of States. Thus the slavery agitation was allayed for a time, but the same question, under different phases, has returned again and again, and will no doubt continue thus to do till the conscience of the nation is fully satisfied on the subject—for questions involving the moral and political relations of so many millions cannot be lightly passed over.

Mar.

1822.

A new interest was awakened in behalf of the South American Republics. Great efforts had been made by Henry Clay, during their struggle, to induce Congress to acknowledge their independence, but it was then thought premature ; now the bill was passed. The next year the President declared in his message that “ as a principle the American Continents, by the free and independent position which they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power.” This has since been known as the Monroe Doctrine, though its authorship, it would seem, belongs rather to his Secretary of State, John Quincy Adams.

Great financial distress prevailed during this period throughout the land. The immense amount of foreign, especially English, merchandise sent, at reduced prices, into the country, paralyzed its industry. These goods were thus sent for the express purpose of ruining the American manufactures, called into existence by the necessities of the war—an object which they effectually accomplished. The distress of the people, reacted upon the general government. When they refused to buy, because unable to pay, the importations fell off, and as a consequence, the revenue was so diminished that the government, from necessity, resorted to loans in order to obtain means of defraying its current expenses. The general distress was not a little increased by the measures of the National Bank. Indeed no confidence could be

placed in the banks except those of New England, which redeemed their notes in specie when presented, while those in other parts of the Union became bankrupt. The density of the population of the New England States enabled them to engage with advantage in manufactures, and also in shipping, and the coasting trade, which was especially profitable. For these reasons they withstood the financial crisis, while the agricultural and manufacturing interests of the other States were overwhelmed.

CHAP.
XLVI.

1824.

The country, by its own innate energy, began to recover from these financial difficulties. As a means to accomplish that desirable object, an increase of tariff was imposed on imported merchandise, thus to protect domestic industry from undue foreign competition, to create a diversity of pursuits, and develop the resources of the nation.

Congress also manifested its sense of justice by making provision for the wants of the surviving officers and soldiers of the Revolution, and for the widows and orphans of those deceased.

1818

The last year of Monroe's administration was signalized by an event highly gratifying to the people, an event linking the past with the present, the days of conflict and trial with the days of peace and prosperity. The venerable Lafayette came to the United States, the invited guest of the nation. Around every fireside tradition had fondly cherished his memory, and the people loved him as the noble and generous stranger who, in the days of their fathers, had sacrificed his fortune and shed his blood in their country's cause. They vied with each other in doing him honor. His journey from State to State was one continued triumphal procession; compared with this spontaneous expression of a nation's gratitude, how insignificant the proudest triumph of Roman consul or emperor! The vessel designated to carry him home was the new frigate *Brandywine*, a name—given by the new President, John

Mar

CHAP.
XLVI.

1825. Quincy Adams—that conveyed a delicate compliment, as on the banks of that little stream he was wounded in his first battle in the cause of American freedom. The American people wished to manifest still further their sense of obligation, and Congress conferred upon him two hundred thousand dollars and a township of land.

When the time came to choose a successor to Monroe—now in his second term—four candidates were put in nomination ; John Quincy Adams, Henry Clay, General Jackson, and William H. Crawford. No one of the candidates received a majority of the popular vote, and the election devolved upon the House of Representatives, by whom Adams was chosen. John C. Calhoun had been chosen Vice-President by the popular vote.

This election gave the death-blow to the custom of nominating candidates for the Presidency by a caucus held by certain members of Congress. Previous to this, for twenty-four successive years, the candidates had been thus nominated, and consequently chosen from a single State.

CHAPTER XLVII.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

Manufactures and Internal Improvements.—Indian Lands in Georgia.—
Death of the ex-Presidents Thomas Jefferson and John Adams.—Free
Masonry.—Protection to American Industry.—Debates in Congress.—
Presidential Contest.

THE new President invited able and experienced men to form his cabinet, at the head of which was Henry Clay, as Secretary of State. This administration was one of remarkable prosperity ; the nation was gradually advancing in wealth and happiness, gaining strength at home, and securing more and more of the respect of nations abroad. Every branch of industry was increasing in prosperity ; agriculture, commerce, and manufactures.

Numerous companies had been formed for the purpose of making iron nails, and also for the manufacture of broadcloths, though the latter were soon involved in ruin by "a deluge of English cloths." In those days fine wool was worth a dollar and a half a pound, while badly made broadcloth cost from eight to twelve dollars a yard.

The wars of Europe opened a wide field for enterprise in the carrying trade. American genius and art produced the style of ship known as the clipper. These far outstripped all others in sailing ; they made rapid voyages, and, what was important in those days, they were able very often to evade the French and English cruisers. At first, the United States had but little of their own products

CHAP.
XLVII

1825.

1815

CHAP.
XLVII.

to send to the old world, but presently Eli Whitney invented the cotton-gin, by which the seed was separated from the cotton, and that gradually became the most important article of export.

The great National Road—the work of the General Government—extending across the Alleghany Mountains, from Cumberland, Maryland, to Wheeling, on the Ohio, and to be continued to the Mississippi, had just been completed, at an expense of one million seven hundred thousand dollars. It was commenced in Jefferson's administration, and had been fourteen years in building. Its beneficial effects upon the country were very great, in thus connecting the valley of the Ohio with the seaboard.

A still more important work was also finished—the Erie Canal, uniting the Hudson and the waters of the great lakes. It was the work of the State of New York, and was completed after a labor of eight years. The project was at first deemed visionary and impracticable; but owing principally to the energy of De Witt Clinton, privately, as well as a member of the Legislature and as Governor, the work was carried through. The completion and success of these improvements encouraged the construction of others in various parts of the Union—one, the Ohio Canal, from Lake Erie to the Ohio river. The first railway was the Quincy, in Massachusetts, designed to transport granite to the sea-shore. The first locomotive used in the United States was on the Hudson and Mohawk Railroad.

A difficult question arose in relation to the removal of the Creeks and the Cherokees, from their lands in Georgia and Alabama, to the region beyond the Mississippi. Georgia claimed jurisdiction over the Indians within her territory. Originally claiming the region west of her boundary, she ceded it to the United States, on condition that the latter should, by purchase, extinguish the title



Eli Whitney

of the Indian lands reserved within her own limits. The national government promised to fulfil its part of the agreement "as early as the same could be peaceably obtained on reasonable terms." Twenty-five years had passed, and these titles had not been purchased. The Indians were not willing to sell their territory. However, a treaty had been recently made by some of the chiefs, who ceded the lands, but the great majority of the Indians declared these chiefs had no authority to sell the property of the nation. Thus, according to the original contract, the national government could not extinguish the Indian titles.

CHAP
XLVII
1825

The government cancelled this treaty, but the State of Georgia determined to enforce it. The latter sent surveyors into the Indian country, to divide the lands into portions suitable for farms, before distributing them by lottery to the citizens of the State. The Federal government took the part of the poor Indians, and the President proclaimed that he would enforce the laws committed to his trust, while Troup, the bellicose Governor of Georgia, wrote to the Secretary of War: "From the first decisive act of hostility, you will be considered and treated as a public enemy." The matter for the present was adjusted by the Creeks consenting to dispose of their lands, and to emigrate. Rather than be thus harassed they were willing to remove from their happy homes, and give up their hopes of civilization.

This year was marked by the deaths of two distinguished men, whose names are identified with the history of the government—John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. Both were men of liberal education, and both chose the profession of the law; both had been consistent and strenuous advocates of national independence, and were upon the committee which proposed that famous declaration. The one drew it up, and the other was its most efficient supporter; both signed it; both had been

CHAP.
XLVII.

1826.

on foreign missions ; both were first Vice-Presidents, and then became Presidents. "They ended their earthly career at the same time and in the same way ; in the regular course of nature, in the repose and tranquillity of retirement, in the bosoms of their families, on the soil which their labors had contributed to make free," and within a few hours of each other, on the fiftieth anniversary of American independence.

Sept.

A certain William Morgan, of Western New York, a member of the society of Free Masons, suddenly disappeared, he having been seized and forcibly carried off. He had proposed to publish a book revealing the secrets of the order, some of whose members were charged with his murder. The affair created a great excitement, which led to the formation of a political party, whose avowed object was to exclude Free Masons from office. In several of the States the party polled a large number of votes, but in a year or two it disappeared.

July,
1827

The manufacturing interests were still laboring to sustain themselves against foreign competition. The sentiment prevailed, especially in the northern States and in some of the southern, that measures should be taken to protect the industry of the nation. In accordance with this view, a convention of delegates from twenty-two States of the Union assembled at Harrisburg, in Pennsylvania. Four of the slave States did not send delegates.

The Convention memorialized Congress to grant protection to American industry ; to impose a tariff on imported goods, sufficiently high to shield American producers of the same articles from the ruinous effects of foreign competition ; and they also asked that this policy should be fixed, and thus give stability to the enterprise of the country. Capital would not be invested in domestic manufactures, if they were liable at any time to be ruined either by the combination of foreign competitors

or by change of policy at home. The people of New England had complained of these changes. Their climate and soil forbade their becoming rivals of their sister States in agriculture, and their industry had been turned into other channels, especially those of commerce and the fisheries. Upon them had fallen nearly all the losses inflicted by the cruisers of France and England, and yet they had been more discouraged and had suffered more loss by the embargoes and other restrictions of their own government. During this period, the central position of New York had been gradually drawing to herself much of the commerce and shipping that once belonged to Boston. A territory so extensive, and climates so diverse, brought into existence many kinds of industry that were liable to be injured or ruined by foreign competition. At first New England was opposed to the policy of protection, and the Middle and Southern States were in its favor. Now this was reversed. New England had been forced to adapt her industry to the change of national policy, while the South had changed her views.

Said Webster, when this bill was under discussion in Congress: "New England held back and labored to restrain the General Government from the adoption of this policy, but when it was adopted she then adapted herself to it, and turned herself to manufactures, but now just as she is successful, another change is to be brought about, and she set adrift in another direction."

The South, on the other hand, expected to reap the harvest, not merely from the exports of the raw material, but also a due share of the profits arising from manufactures. She was disappointed in seeing northern towns becoming cities, and southern cities decaying; the North a money lender, the South a borrower. Before the Revolution she was pre-eminently the richest part of the colonies, a position which she fully expected to retain after that period. Hers were the only exports from the

CHAP
XLVII

1828

CHAP.
XLVII

1828.

May
15.

land ; the North was dependent upon commerce and fisheries ; both precarious. Since the Revolution, the South had exported more in value than three times all that the mines of Mexico had produced for the same period, yet she did not prosper. This effect she attributed to the protective tariffs of the National Government. She failed to notice that this decline began before these tariffs were imposed. Other causes aided in the result.¹ A bill passed Congress, imposing higher duties upon cottons and woollens, and also other foreign articles, which would come into competition with those of domestic origin. The dissatisfaction felt in South Carolina led, two years after, to the open avowal on her part, of the doctrine of nullification and secession, based upon the ground that the act was unconstitutional.

The contest for the office of President was between Adams and General Jackson. The "era of good feeling" had passed away, and party lines were stringently drawn. The spirit of the contest was more violent than ever before ; and the whole nation seemed moved to its very centre. The denunciation of the candidates and their principles was, on both sides, unjust, unreasonable and disgraceful. The choice fell upon Jackson as President, and Calhoun as Vice-President. The election over, the excitement calmed down. This fact, as usual, was adduced as an evidence of the stability of our institutions, and of the willingness of the people to submit to the will of the majority. Yet who does not lament such exhibitions of party strife, or their demoralizing effects ?

The nation had never been in a condition so prosperous as at this time. The national debt was much diminished, and a surplus of more than five millions of dollars was in the public treasury. The blessings of peace had been showered upon the land, and it was rejoicing in prosperity and abundance—the rewards of active industry.

¹ Benton's Thirty Years' View, Chap. xxxiv.. Vol. I.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Appointments to Office.—Removal of the Indians from Georgia.—Bank of the United States.—Hayne and Webster's Debate.—Nullification.—The Compromise Bill ; its final Passage.—Removal of the Deposits.—Effect upon the Country.—Indian Wars.—Black Hawk ; Osceola.—Indemnity for French Spoliations.

THE new President nominated the members of his cabinet, at the head of which he placed Martin Van Buren as Secretary of State. The Postmaster-General was now for the first time admitted as a Cabinet Officer.

CHAP.
XLVIII

1829.

The President professed to take the Constitution as the chart by which he should be governed in fulfilling the duties of his office ; rather, it would seem, as he himself understood it, than as expounded by the Supreme Court of the United States. His vigorous arm was immediately exerted in favor of his political friends, and this gave to his administration a decided partisan character. The former Presidents, during a period of forty-four years, had removed sixty-four persons from office ; during his rule of eight years, Jackson removed six hundred and ninety, and put in their places his political friends. These sweeping removals secured ardent partisans, as well as produced bitter opponents ; but regardless of either friend or foe, the President pursued the course he had marked out, with his wonted determination.

CHAP.
XLVIII

1829.

During his administration, an unusual number of exciting questions came up for consideration, and the many interests thus involved affected the people in every State in the Union. The first important measure, was the removal of the Cherokee Indians from the State of Georgia. They had been protected by the General Government, under Adams. The Supreme Court of the United States had decided in their favor, and against the action of the State ; but that decision had little influence with the President. He did not rebuke the State, when she began to drive them from their homes, and to distribute their lands, many of them cultivated farms, among her own citizens. He sent General Scott with troops to remove them, and his kindness and persuasions induced them to migrate peacefully ; yet with lamentations, they took leave of "the beloved land."

1833

Their sacrifices as a people were very great, not only in the loss of property, but in the check given to their industrial and moral progress. The self-denying labors of missionaries and teachers had enabled them to advance rapidly toward a Christianized civilization. They derived their sustenance from their own cultivated fields ; they clothed themselves almost entirely with the fabrics which their women spun and wove ; they lived in settled habitations, some of wood and some of brick ; they made provision for the education of their children—five hundred of whom were in schools—besides endowing a National Academy for the youth further advanced. They also established a newspaper, printed partly in English, and partly in their own language. "We hope," said they, "that with God's blessing the time will soon come when the words war-whoop and scalping-knife will be heard no more."

Two of their missionaries, the Rev. S. A. Worcester and Dr. Elisur Butler, were ruthlessly imprisoned in the penitentiary by the authority of the State of Georgia,

though they acted in accordance with the law of the land, as interpreted by the Supreme Court of the United States, in refusing to take the oath of allegiance to the State. CHAP.
XLVIII.
1829.

Chief Justice Marshall, in pronouncing the opinion of the court, declared the act of the State to be "repugnant to the Constitution, treaties and laws of the United States; and therefore void, and ought to be reversed and annulled," and the prisoners discharged. Yet these men obtained no redress on their appeal to the General Government, either for themselves or the Indians.

When at length liberated from prison, the missionaries accompanied the Indians to their distant homes beyond the Mississippi, there to labor for their good.

The President, in his first message to Congress, intimated his hostility to the Bank of the United States, and his design of refusing his signature to any bill renewing its charter.

However, when the stockholders of the Bank applied to Congress, a bill to renew its charter passed both Houses, and the President refused to sign it. He gave as a reason his opinion that Congress had no constitutional authority to charter such an institution, and moreover he deemed it inexpedient to continue the Bank.

As the bill could not obtain the requisite two-thirds vote to become a law, the Bank was forced to close its affairs, when its charter should expire. 1836.

To understand the causes which led to the attempt at Nullification by South Carolina it is necessary, for the reader's convenience, to notice in a consecutive form certain influences that had been at work from the commencement of the government under the Presidency of George Washington. When the Constitution of the United States was submitted to the people for their approval or rejection, objections were made to it by a small minority, principally on the ground that its powers 1788.

CHAP. XLVIII.
1787. were too great over the States. This minority consisted mostly of statesmen belonging to Virginia, two of whose delegates to the convention to frame the Constitution refused to sign it when finished. These were Edmund Randolph and George Mason, with only one other, Elbridge Gerry of Massachusetts. These gentlemen, and those who sympathized with them in their views, made strenuous efforts in several of the States to prevent the acceptance of the Constitution by the people, nor even after it was adopted and the Government inaugurated did they cease in their opposition, though they were unable to have the organic law of the nation changed to suit their views. They were now joined by the most efficient opponent of certain principles of the Constitution—Thomas Jefferson—who had been in France on official duties while the Constitution was being framed and acted upon by the votes of the people; but he had since returned, having been invited by President Washington to enter his Cabinet as Secretary for Foreign Affairs or of State, which office he was now holding.

The Constitution says (Article VI.): "This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, shall be the supreme law of the land." Some of the States, in order to establish a National Government, were unwilling to give up scarcely any portion of the sovereignty which they had hitherto exercised.¹ This was especially the case in the Southern States—Virginia, the principal one, taking the lead. This opposition in later times developed into *extreme views* in relation to State Rights or Sovereignty, whose insidious influence has wrought so much harm to the Nation, in assuming that in some way, though indefinable, the General Government would injure the individual States. The advocates of this theory—"strict construc-

¹ Hist., pp. 564, 565.



J. Fenimore Cooper



CHAP.
XLVIII.
1832.

tionists" they called themselves—were morbidly suspicious of the National Government, and were continually deprecating its influence upon the States. In accordance with their interpretation, the Constitution would be as inflexible as a cast-iron frame; no permission was given for that instrument—so comprehensive in its principles—to adapt itself to the exigencies of a nation industrious and progressive in its development. Hence the habit of these theorists to exclaim "Unconstitutional!" whenever measures were proposed in Congress that would in their influence extend to the States; for that body to charter a bank was deemed unconstitutional, because, perhaps, in being useful to the general commerce and the industries of the country, it must have branches at commercial centers within the States. Their views were similar in respect to internal improvements made by the National Government.

On the subject of the United States Bank the opposition in this respect came principally from Virginia and those States further south; they being nearly altogether agricultural, there was not so much necessity for a medium of mercantile exchange as in the more commercial and manufacturing free States.

We have already seen Thomas Jefferson¹ secretly exerting his influence against the policy of Washington's administration, and to which he was presumed to be friendly, at least, while holding the most important position in the Cabinet—that of Secretary of State. Instead, he encouraged opposition to its most important measures, which, from their intrinsic merits, have since become the fixed policy of the nation. He stimulated this antagonism in various ways, but principally by diffusing his sentiments privately in letters to his friends, under pledges of secrecy, and by means of the Democratic clubs, whose

¹ Hist., pp. 581, 584.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1801.

origin has been noted.¹ Though Vice-President at the time, Jefferson was not in perfect accord with the policy of John Adams's administration, in its efforts to defend the country against the machinations of foreign refugees,² who, with the clubs, wished to embroil the country in the wars then in progress in Europe. Says Albert Gallatin, when writing of this period, "I know that nothing can be more injurious to an administration than to have in that office [Vice-Presidency] a man in hostility to that administration, as he will always become the most formidable rallying-point for the opposition."³

At one time Jefferson was greatly exercised lest the Government should become a monarchy; and some of his friends professed to be alarmed because the people *honored* Washington's birthday, but he soothingly suggested the *theory* that, perhaps, the day was celebrated as that of "a General and not of a President." Yet he was desponding; in one of his letters he says, "The State governments are the best in the world," but that of the United States "has become so arbitrary in the rapid course of nine or ten years, and has swallowed up more of the public liberty than even that of England itself." This paragraph alludes to what is known as the "Sedition Law," which was enacted to punish libel on the Government, or the exciting of "unlawful combinations against the laws." This law, which expired in two years by limitation, was directed in self-defense against a class of foreign adventurers, who as writers in the newspapers were most abusive in denunciation of the administration of John Adams,⁴ which, in respect to the policy of neutrality, followed that of Washington. The law itself, perhaps, was injudicious, and in its brief existence could do little harm, but the political furor—bordering on the

¹ Hist., p. 583.² Hist., p. 594.³ Life of Gallatin, p. 606.⁴ Hist., pp. 592, 593.

ridiculous—which it occasioned among its opponents is not paralleled in American history.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1798.

To remedy these supposed evils, Jefferson drew up a series of resolutions embodying sentiments that have been often alluded to in our history ; these are familiarly known as the “Resolutions of '98.” He managed to have them introduced into the Legislature of Virginia, and passed by that body, though their most objectionable features were modified through the influence of James Madison. In the same secret manner he had similar resolutions passed by the Legislature of the recently admitted State of Kentucky. This was accomplished by one of his friends, a Mr. Nicholas, a native of Virginia, but who at this time was a citizen of the new State and a member of its Legislature. It was not known for twenty years that Jefferson was the author of these resolutions, as he had the “solemn assurance that it should not be known from what quarter the resolutions came.”¹ These resolutions were sent to the Legislatures of several of the States, and the political principles they endeavored to disseminate elicited much discussion, but little favor from these bodies. Their influence was to show itself in future years. John C. Calhoun was consistent when he characterized Jefferson as “the Apostle of State Rights;”² that is of the *extreme view*, since all advocate the legitimate rights of the States under the Constitution, just as municipal rights of cities chartered by State authority ; but that does not imply that these municipalities should dominate the State itself.

1799.

The eighth of these resolutions announces the theory that “where powers are assumed” (alluding to the United States Government) “which have not been delegated, a nullification of the act is the rightful remedy ; that every

¹ Randall's Life of Jefferson, vol. ii., p. 448.

² Works, vol. ii., p. 268.

CHAP. State has a natural right, in cases not within the compact,
XLVIII. to nullify of their [its] own authority all assumptions of
1832. power of others within their [its] limits."¹ On the principles thus enunciated South Carolina determined to "nullify" a United States law, because she of her own authority decided that a tariff, said to be protective to American industry, was "unconstitutional," and thirty years later in a more serious effort to "nullify" the union of the States.

There seems to have been an impression on the minds of great numbers of the American people that the operatives in large factories in Europe were peculiarly degraded as to their morals, and that the temptations to vice were very great in such establishments. It was also added that this was specially the case in the mills for manufacturing cotton and wool, as in these, the work being comparatively light, females and boys were much employed. This was given as one reason why the system of such manufacturing should not be introduced into the United States. Measures, however, were taken to prevent such evils, and when mills were founded at Lowell and afterward at Lawrence, Mass., special efforts were made to secure the influence of pure morals among those employed.

In Lowell the corporation or owners, to prevent evil influences in their mills, provided comfortable boarding-places for the young women, usually farmers' daughters, who were in their employ. These boarding-houses were under the control of worthy and judicious matrons selected for the purpose, and to whose protection the parents in the vicinity were willing to intrust their daughters. These young people had been educated in the public schools, and had acquired a taste for reading;

¹ Randall's *Life of Jefferson*, vol. ii., p. 450.

to meet this demand the owners provided libraries and reading-rooms; to the latter the operatives also contributed to cover incidental expenses. At one time the young women who worked in the mills issued a periodical, "The Lowell Offering." These facts show the moral tone and mental requirements of a community that would demand proper guaranties before the parents would permit their young people, especially their daughters, to labor in the cotton and woolen mills of the day. In nearly all of the earlier mills founded in New England similar efforts were made to protect and elevate those whom they employed. A change has been in progress, and the reading-rooms and libraries are not so well attended as formerly; the native employees have given way to foreigners, who, unfortunately, care not so much for reading and mental improvement.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1822.

1881.

A great advancement was made in the process of manufacturing cotton by the energy of Francis C. Lowell of Boston, who conceived the idea of using water-power in the various operations. He visited Europe and examined the machinery used there, especially that in the mills of England, but to obtain models of which he found impossible, as their machinery was carefully watched lest it should be copied, and he was compelled to depend upon his memory and his own inventive genius. The policy of England in that day, in relation to preserving the secrets of her machinery, was virtually the same as it was forty years before.¹ With the aid of a practical mechanic, Mr. Lowell constructed machinery according to his own designs. This was crude indeed, but he contrived to put in motion 1,700 spindles in a small mill at Waltham, Mass. Here under the same roof cotton was carded, spun, and woven; and it is said to

1813

¹ Hist., p. 578.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1822.

have been the first mill in the world in which all the operations of that manufacture were performed.

Mr. Lowell, from time to time, made improvements in his machinery, and so great was his success that a few enterprising gentlemen formed a company, and at a certain point purchased the land along the banks of the Merrimac, thus securing its entire water-power. On this purchase now stands the flourishing city of Lowell—thus named in honor of its indefatigable projector. Here was inaugurated on a firm basis the American system of manufacturing cotton. Within a dozen years from that time there were nearly 800 cotton factories—some of these were very small—in the Union; 738 were in the Free States, and of these 508 were in New England alone.¹ From that time forward the increase has been enormous.

1816
to
1826.

During this period the industry of printing calicoes was carried on but in a crude form; since then it has grown to large proportions under the influence of American inventions and improvements. At that time four colors was the highest number impressed at one movement; this has since been increased to twenty.

The war of 1812 threw the American people upon their own mechanical resources to furnish themselves the needed manufactured articles, which for the greater part had hitherto been supplied by the workshops of England. During this period of about three years the native ingenuity in the invention and application of machinery to manufacturing purposes of various kinds developed rapidly. The war itself afforded sufficient protection from the skill of England and the low wages paid her operatives. In less than two years after the restoration of peace and the renewal of trade the American manufacturers found themselves utterly ruined by the immense

¹ Industrial Hist. U. S., p. 412.

influx of English merchandise, which had been accumulating for years, and was now thrown upon the American market at prices sometimes even below their original cost. The English merchants had two objects in view: one to stifle the manufacturing industries that had received an impulse during the war, and the other to keep permanent control of the American market. This they hoped to accomplish by means of English skill and the low wages paid their workmen. The latter item gave the foreigner an immense advantage, as the American must pay higher wages because of the much fewer number willing to be thus employed.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1816
to
1826.

The statesmen of that day, who had far-reaching views, saw that the alternative was either to abandon the policy of advancing the mechanical industries of the people altogether, or counterbalance the advantages of the European manufacturer in his skill and the low wages paid his operatives. They chose the latter policy. This was to impose a tariff sufficiently high to equalize the cost of production and enable the American manufacturer to compete with the European on equal terms, and at the same time to afford an opportunity for employment to those of our own people who worked for wages; to introduce diversities of industry, and develop the natural resources of the country, even then supposed to be enormous.¹

When the question of revising the tariff came before Congress some of the "strict constructionists" suggested that the Constitution authorized a tariff for "revenue alone;" that is an imposition of duty in such a manner as to produce the most revenue to the Government, and it would seem without reference to the industrial interests of the people. A question arose which has puzzled Congress ever since: "Where does the rate of a tariff for

1816

¹ Natural Resources of the United States, by J. Harris Patton.

CHAP.
XLVIII

1816.

‘revenue alone’ terminate, and that for ‘protection’ begin?” On this occasion John C. Calhoun of South Carolina argued that a tariff sufficiently high to protect the industries of the people was constitutional, saying, “manufactures ought to be countenanced by the Government,” and “they will arrive at a certain perfection under its fostering care;” and he urged Congress to “afford to ingenuity and industry immediate and ample protection.”

1832.

Afterward in the days of Nullification he said, “I, in common with the almost entire South, gave my support to the tariff of 1816.”¹ Senator George McDuffie of the same State, in speaking of this tariff, says, “I most perfectly accord in the policy which dictated that measure.” James Madison wished the commercial laws revised to “protect and foster the several branches of manufactures.” “The *constitutionality* of the procedure is not at all thought of, the *expediency* of it is warmly recommended.”² With this understanding a tariff was imposed upon coarse cottons, woollens, and many other manufactured articles, which tariff was amended from time to time during twelve years. This had ever been the national policy; the first tariff imposed by Congress and signed by Washington in its preamble says it was required, “for the support of the Government, and for the encouragement and protection of domestic manufactures.”

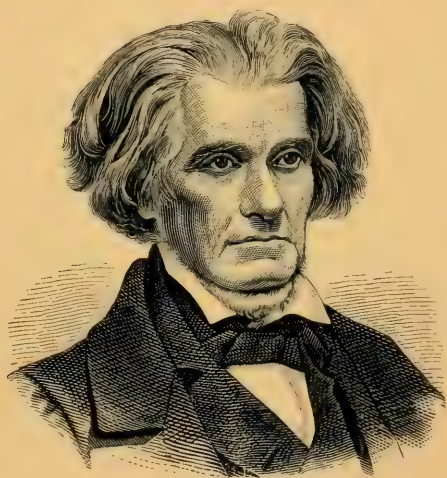
1789.

During the war of 1812, to cover the unusual expense, and to supply the deficiency caused by the falling off of import duties which had nearly ceased altogether, taxes were imposed on many home-made articles. It was now proposed to relieve the people of these burdensome taxes on their own manufactures, and supply the deficiency by increasing the duties on the corresponding foreign-made articles. Thus the object was twofold: to raise the

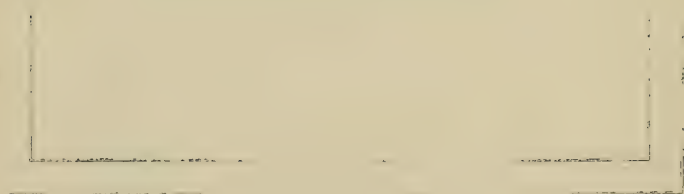
1816.

During the war of 1812, to cover the unusual expense, and to supply the deficiency caused by the falling off of import duties which had nearly ceased altogether, taxes were imposed on many home-made articles. It was now proposed to relieve the people of these burdensome taxes on their own manufactures, and supply the deficiency by increasing the duties on the corresponding foreign-made articles. Thus the object was twofold: to raise the

¹ Works, vol. ii., pp. 166-170.² Niles Reg., vol. xxxvi., p. 82.



J. C. Calhoun



needed revenue, and to encourage domestic industry; of this policy Henry Clay was the ardent advocate. In accordance with this a tariff was imposed on certain classes of articles; "1st, those of which a full domestic supply could be produced; 2d, those of which only partial domestic supply could be afforded; and 3d, those produced at home very slightly, or not at all."¹

The cotton-growing States "at that time had a particular interest in encouraging the domestic manufacture of cotton." Such were the views of Calhoun and Lowndes, of South Carolina—the latter reporting the bill to Congress. A heavy duty was imposed on woolen and cotton cloths of various grades; also on iron in all its forms, on spirits, on sugars—the latter to encourage the Louisiana sugar-planter; on hemp and lead to aid the Kentucky farmer and the Illinois miner. The proposed duty on indigo unfortunately failed, as that article was a valuable product of the low lands of South Carolina and Georgia.² Neither the cereals nor raw cotton needed protection—the latter staple having virtually the monopoly of the world, both as to quantity and quality. After the acquisition of Louisiana the southern portion of the country was deemed by many the richest portion of the Union in its agricultural products—cotton, tobacco, and sugar; the first especially, since the invention of the cotton-gin, had become greatly enhanced in value as a most important export. This theory seemed to pervade the minds of some of the leading men of that section.³ So little did these statesmen know or even suspect of the inherent though thus far latent power of intelligent and industrious communities as those in the Free States, where labor as such was reckoned respectable. This power was wonderfully developed, when manufactures

CHAP.
XLVIII
1816.

¹ Hildreth, vol. vi., p. 585. ² Benton's Thirty Years' View, vol. i., p. 97.

³ Hist., p. 624.

CHAP. were introduced into these States under the "fostering
XLVIII. care" of the legislation of 1816 and onward.

1816.

It was then supposed the slaves could be taught to manufacture the coarser grades of cotton cloth, with which they themselves were for the most part clothed. It was therefore important to the masters to introduce that manufacture among the employments of their slaves, who could thus have work through the entire year. But after a few years of trial it was found that from their ignorance, want of perseverance, and lack of interest in their work they were inefficient in manufacturing cotton; they could only hoe and pick it, and that under the harsh supervision of overseers. Similar measures failed to succeed in the factory, where more intelligence and skill were required. Hence the complaints made against the tariff (in Nullification times), that it ruined the South or cotton-producing States.¹ This statement does not seem correct in the light of facts, for the decline commenced many years before.² It is also inconsistent with statistics which show that in 1815 the coarse cotton sheetings, with which the slaves were mostly clothed, cost *forty* cents a yard—being made chiefly on hand looms—while a better material in 1829 cost but *eight and one-half* cents, thus cheapened by the advance made in manufacturing by machinery.³ Meanwhile the fall in the price of raw cotton was only about two-fifths as much as that of the woven material—this advantage accruing to the planter. A writer⁴ states that at this time (1829) "The cost of a good cotton summer suit for a field hand, taking six yards, was seventy-five cents, and that a winter suit of negro cloth cost three dollars;" other expenses were at an equally low rate. Yet the Nullifiers proclaimed

1829.

¹ See Hist., p. 723, for opinions of McDuffie and Hayne.

² Benton's *Thirty Years' View*, vol. i., p. 101.

³ *Industrial Hist. U. S.*, p. 414.

⁴ *Niles Register*.

that their section was ruined by tariffs, and they entered upon a crusade against any policy that aided the mechanical industries of the country. This was on the ground that such aid was unconstitutional.¹ The protest of South Carolina pronounced protective duties “*Unconstitutional, oppressive, and unjust.*” As the tariff, however low, is to that extent a protection to the American manufacturer of the same kind of article, it would follow from this that *Free Trade* alone was *constitutional*. By a similar process of reasoning, extremists among the slave-owning statesmen argued that the best social condition was for the capitalist to own those whom he employed; in other words, that “all laborers should be slaves.” Such were the views of John C. Calhoun and George McDuffie, and others. The motives that influenced the minds of these legislators were radically different. The statesmen of the Slave States, from the nature of the case, had reference alone to the advantages that would accrue to the masters; while those of the Free States had reference as much to that large class who obtained their support from wages as to the capitalist who invested his money in manufacturing industries.

At the commencement of the war of 1812 England was buying our raw cotton and sending it back in the form of cloth made by machines driven by steam, while at that time in the United States were very few, perhaps no factories for weaving cotton-cloth,—the mill at Beverly having failed. There were in the country a few small mills for spinning cotton yarn, and the weaving was done by hand on domestic looms; hence this product was termed “domestics.”

Our statesmen then desired to encourage the manufacture of cottons and woollens in all their forms; but to do so the people must contend with the acquired skill

¹ Debates in Congress, vol. x., pp. 243-245.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1816.

and machinery of England, and the low wages paid her operatives. The same causes gave an impulse to the manufacture of woollens, though this industry remained for a long time in the hands of the household. Not till 1816 and onward was a definite impetus given to the manufacture of woolen goods in its varied forms. The supply of native wool was not sufficient, and to obtain which great exertions were made to induce the farmers to raise sheep for its production. To secure the finest quality merino sheep were imported from Spain, and wool-growing became an important industry. The pioneer woolen mills only wove the yarn spun in the household in the vicinity. Carding and fulling mills came into existence to aid and complete the domestic

1820.

manufacture, and finally in the course of years the work was performed, or nearly so, under the same roof by means of machinery. The advance, however, was not so rapid in the woolen as in the cotton manufacture. The States of Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Connecticut took energetic measures to advance the manufacture of wool. Vermont became the producer of the finest wool in New England, yet it remained for another State—Tennessee—to exhibit the finest specimen wool at the first World's Fair at London.

1851.

Our manufacture of wool has come oftener than any other of our industries in competition with the skill and the low wages paid operatives in England, Belgium, and France, and in consequence has had unusual difficulties to overcome.

1816

to
1820.

The depression in the industrial interests of the country after the war of 1812 was very great. Henry Clay estimated the property of the United States to have sunk in value one-half in the course of four years. This estimate was no doubt in respect to the States outside New England. The people of that section by their industrial enterprise and economy had secured success in many

respects, especially in their shipping interest, including the carrying trade between foreign nations during the wars of Napoleon, the coasting trade of their own country, the fisheries along their coasts, and for whales in the Arctic seas. In consequence of this accumulation of capital their finances were in a good condition, and their banks were sound and able to redeem their notes in specie when presented at their counters, while in the rest of the Union financial distress more or less prevailed.

CHAP.
XLVIII.
1820.

The term protection is unfortunate, inasmuch that many are led astray, thinking that those who manufacture were protected or aided by the Government at the expense of the other portion of the people. The term is a misnomer; it should be designated an *equalizing measure*, designed to put our own workmen and those who employ them on equal terms as manufacturers with the foreigners, who have the advantage in acquired skill, low rate of interest on capital, and more than all, in the small amount of wages paid their operatives. Making the terms thus equal to the manufacturers of both lands, if the American, by means of his energy and mechanical inventions, and the better education of his workmen in industrious habits, is more successful, he and the people have a right to the advantages thus acquired. The "strict constructionists" thought Congress had no authority to levy a tariff so as to equalize the expense of manufacturing in the United States with that in Europe.

Senator Foote of Connecticut submitted a resolution of inquiry as to the disposal of the public lands. The debate on the resolution took a wide range, in the course of which the young and brilliant Senator, Robert Y. Hayne, of South Carolina, avowed the opinion that any State had a right, as a sovereign power, to declare null and void any act of Congress which that State deemed unconstitutional. This was the first time that the doctrine of *nullification*

1830.

CHAP.
XLVIII.

1832.

had been openly maintained in the councils of the nation—the sentiments rather of Calhoun the Vice-President than of the speaker himself: a doctrine based upon the assumption that the National Government was a compact between the States, and that any of them could at pleasure recede from the Union.

Daniel Webster at once pointed out the injurious results to the Union if these principles were acted upon.

This debate, continued for several days, and not only from the masterly manner in which it was conducted, but from the influence it exerted upon the minds of the American people, was one of the most important that ever occurred in the Halls of Congress. Webster clearly exposed the fallacy of the argument adduced to prove that the National Government was a compact of sovereign, independent States; or that any of them were at liberty to withdraw from the Union, without the consent of the others. On the contrary, he urged that the Constitution was the work of the people themselves, not as members of each independent State, but as members of all the States; and that the Supreme Court was the tribunal authorized to decide in cases of conflict between the States and the General Government. Says the venerable Chancellor Kent in reference to the discussion, and especially Webster's speech: "It turned the attention of the public to the great doctrines of national rights and national union. Constitutional law was rescued from the archives of our tribunals and the libraries of our lawyers, placed under the eye, and submitted to the judgment of the American people." And heartily did they respond to the sentiment that the "Union must be preserved." The importance of the subject awakened an intense interest in the nation, and the reports of the discussion were read and commented upon by millions. This debate really settled the question of nullification; and its influence upon the public mind

created a moral power which gave a death-blow to the dangerous design then in existence.

CHAP.
XLVIII

1832.

Congress, in revising the tariff, instead of diminishing, increased the duties on many articles. This gave still greater offence to the cotton-growing States, who complained, that they in consequence paid exorbitant prices, especially for cottons and woollens. The question became in some respects a sectional one. The North on the one hand had accommodated her industry to manufactures ; she had acquired skill, and was unwilling to sacrifice this and also an immense amount of invested capital. She thought it unjust that her interests should be injured, if not ruined, by a change of the policy under which she had been compelled to turn her attention to that particular sphere of industry. On the other hand, the South, pointing to her exhausted fields, especially in the Atlantic States, and their diminution of population, exclaimed : See what the tariff has done ! Says McDuffie of South Carolina, on the floor of Congress : “ Look, sir, at the present aspect of the Southern States. In no part of Europe will you see the same indications of decay. Deserted villages, houses falling to ruin, impoverished lands thrown out of cultivation.” The reason that the South did not derive benefit from the imposition of a tariff was admitted by Hayne himself. “ The slaves,” said he in the Senate, “ are too improvident, too incapable of minute, constant, delicate attention, and the persevering industry which is essential to the success of manufacturing establishments.” Similar sentiments were expressed by other members of Congress.

July.

The States of Virginia, Georgia and South Carolina were the most opposed to the measure, but only the latter took the responsibility of openly resisting the collection of duties imposed by this law of Congress. She published an ordinance to that effect, and denied the authority of

CHAP.
XLVIII

the General Government to enforce what she deemed an unconstitutional law.

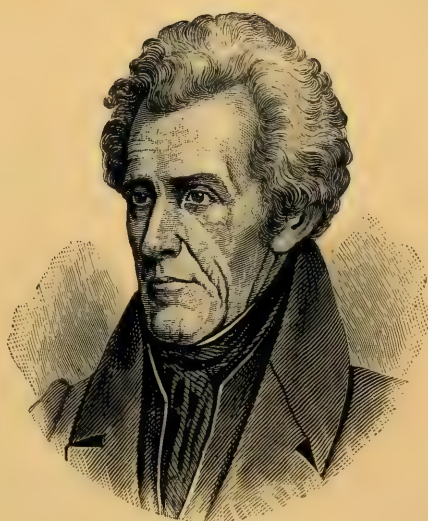
1863.

The President immediately issued a proclamation, moderate in its language but determined in tone. In plain terms he expressed his views upon the subject, and intimated that he would vindicate the power intrusted to his hands. He appealed "to the understanding and patriotism of the people of the State, and warned them of the consequences that must inevitably result from obeying the dictates of the convention," which had advised resistance to the law.

Feb.
11.

Previous to this, Calhoun had resigned the vice-presidency, and now appeared in the Senate in the place of Hayne, who had retired to take the office of Governor of South Carolina, and who now replied to the President by a counter proclamation. He warned the people of the State against "the dangerous and pernicious doctrines" in that document, and called upon them to disregard "those vain menaces" of military force, "to be fully prepared to sustain the dignity and protect the liberties of the State, if need be, with their lives and fortunes."

Nothing daunted, South Carolina proclaimed herself hostile to the Union, and resolved to maintain her rights as a Sovereign State, by organizing troops and providing munitions of war. Meantime her Legislature passed laws which forbade the collection of United States revenue within her boundaries; and intimated that if an attempt was made by the General Government to enforce the collection of such duties, she would exercise her right to secede from the Union, and "forthwith proceed to organize a separate government." The attitude of the State was imposing and resolute. But the President was equally as decided in his measures to enforce the laws. Soon a national vessel, with troops on board, appeared in the harbor of Charleston; they came to aid the officers in the collection of the revenue. The State receded from



Andrew Jackson

ber defiant position, and the storm calmed down ; the famous Tariff Compromise, just passed by Congress, furnished a convenient reason for that act of prudence.

CHAP.
XLVIII

1833.

Henry Clay was the principal author of the measure, and to him belongs the honor of introducing it into the Senate. The Compromise consisted in gradually diminishing for ten years the imposts, till they should arrive at a uniform rate of twenty per cent.—the revenue standard for which the opponents of the tariff contended.

Mar
8.

The secret history of the final passage of that Compromise bill in the Senate is singular. Its opponents had denounced the principle of protection to American industry, as unconstitutional. In order to prevent opposition to the bill on that ground, after it had become a law, it was necessary that those opposing it should be induced to vote for it ; to vote, not only for the bill as a whole, but for its separate articles. The crisis was near. The President had determined to enforce the law ; he scouted the idea of compromise, and stood ready to arrest the leaders, especially Calhoun, and bring him to trial for treason. John M. Clayton, of Delaware, privately gave the parties to understand that he should move to lay the bill on the table, where it should lie, unless the nullifiers should one and all give it their individual support. He assured them that there was a sufficient number of senators (whose names he refused to give), to prevent its passage, if this condition was not complied with. The amendments to the bill had all passed but the last ; the one which embodied the principle of home valuation. This Calhoun and his friends opposed with great vehemence. Clayton moved to lay the bill on the table, and no persuasion could induce him to withdraw the motion. The opponents of the measure withdrew from the hall for a few minutes, to consult. One of their number presently returned and requested Clayton to withdraw his motion, to give time to consider the amendment. He consented,

CHAP.
XLVIII

1833.

Mar.
8.

with the understanding that, if necessary, he would re-
new it. That night, consultations were held by the
Southern members. The next day, when the bill was
under consideration, it was intimated that it could be
passed without the aid of Calhoun's vote. But Clayton
was inflexible—his vote must be given for the bill, or
nothing would be secured by it. It was the last day of
the session—another Congress would not meet for months.
It was a solemn hour. If the impending collision be-
tween the State and the Government should occur, who
could tell what would be the result? How could South
Carolina be extricated from the difficulties of her position?
Calhoun remained to the last, his friends one by one
voting for the amendment. After making a few remarks
on the conditions upon which he should act, he also voted
for the amendment, and afterward for the bill as a whole.¹

On the fourth of March, General Jackson entered
upon his second term of office, with Martin Van Buren, of
New York, as Vice-President. The principal opposing
candidate was Henry Clay.

According to its charter, the Bank of the United
States was the legal depository of the public funds. The
Secretary of the Treasury only, with the sanction of
Congress, had authority to remove them. By resolution,
Congress had expressed the opinion that the public
moneys were safe in the keeping of the Bank. The
President thought differently. When Congress was not
in session, he made known to the Cabinet his intention to
remove the public funds from the custody of the Bank,
and to transfer them to certain State Banks. The
majority of the Cabinet were opposed to the measure.
As he could not reach the money except through the
Secretary of the Treasury, William J. Duane, he directed

¹ Thirty Years' View, Vol. i. Chap. lxxxv.

him to remove the deposits ; but the Secretary viewing the measure as “unnecessary, unwise, arbitrary, and unjust,” refused. The President immediately dismissed him from office, and appointed Roger B. Taney, afterward Chief Justice, in his place, who hastened to issue an order to the collectors, forbidding them to deposit the public moneys in the Bank of the United States. The intention being to withdraw the funds already in its possession, as they should be needed in defraying the current expenses of the government.

CHAP.
XLVIII
1833.

Oct.

The measure spread distrust through the whole mercantile community, and destroyed that confidence which is essential to the success of business transactions. The notes of the Bank were at par throughout the Union, but now the whole system of exchange was thrown into confusion. Universal distress prevailed. The wages of daily laborers were especially depressed. Memorials from all parts of the country poured into Congress, asking it to adopt measures that would give relief. After a time, the State banks endeavored to relieve the monetary distress by liberal loans. These loans, in turn, were the occasion of exciting a spirit of speculation that produced still greater evils.

The Administration was not exempt from Indian troubles. Some of the north-western tribes, led by Black Hawk, a chief of the Sac nation, made incursions against the frontier settlements of Illinois. The government sent troops, under General Atkinson, who soon, with the aid of the militia, drove the savages beyond the Mississippi. In one of the skirmishes, Black Hawk himself was captured. To impress him with the greatness of the nation, he was first taken to Washington, and then to visit the principal eastern cities.

1832

Two years afterward an attempt was made by the government to remove the Seminole Indians beyond the

CHAP. XLVIII. Mississippi River. They refused to emigrate, and another Indian war was the consequence. Skulking through the

- 1884.** swamps and woods of Florida, the savages would suddenly dash into the settlements to murder and destroy. Many valuable lives were thus lost. Among these were Major Dade, and more than a hundred men, who all perished by falling into an ambuscade. On the same day, the United States' agent, Mr. Wiley Thompson, and five of his friends were killed and scalped by Osceola, the leading chief of the Seminoles. The year before, Thompson had injudiciously offended the savage, by confining him in irons for a day. Though he feigned friendship, his proud spirit thirsted to revenge the insult. The Creeks joined the Seminoles, and attacked several villages, both in Georgia and Alabama. The unhealthy vapors of the swamps, the bites of poisonous snakes and insects, inflicted intense sufferings upon the troops. It was impossible to subdue the Indians, who, after their attacks upon the Whites, would retreat to their hiding-places in the swamps. Led by Osceola, the war, or rather skirmishing, continued for years; the troops were baffled again and again. At length his own policy, of making treaties only to break them, was practised upon himself. One day he appeared under a flag of truce at the American camp. General **1837.** Jessup, who was in command, immediately made him prisoner, with all his followers. Osceola was sent to Charleston, and while there confined in Fort Moultrie, a fever terminated his eventful life.

- Colonel Zachary Taylor, afterward President of the **1842.** United States, was sent to succeed Jessup. Taylor, by great exertions, brought the war to a close, but not till it had lasted altogether seven years, and cost the nation **1836.** many lives, and thirty millions of dollars.

During this administration, died John Marshall, one of the most remarkable men of the time, at the age of four-score. He had served in the army of the Revolution,

and won the esteem of Washington ; had been a member of the House of Representatives, Secretary of State, Secretary of War, and Minister to France. President John Adams nominated him Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, over which for thirty-five years he presided "with native dignity and unpretending grace." His solidity of judgment, his reasoning powers, his acute and penetrating mind, were remarkable, and none the less striking were the purity of his Christian life and his simplicity of manner.

CHAP.
XLVIII.
1836.

The maxim of foreign policy acted upon by the President was "to ask nothing but what was right, and to submit to nothing that was wrong." American merchants had claims, amounting to five millions of dollars, against the French government. They had remained unsettled for twenty years. These indemnities were for "unlawful seizures, captures, and destruction of vessels and cargoes," during the wars of Napoleon. The government of Louis Philippe acknowledged their justice, and by treaty engaged to pay them. But the Chamber of Deputies, at different times during three years, refused to appropriate the money. The President sent a message to Congress, recommending reprisals upon French property if the treaty was not complied with. The French Chambers took offence at the tone of the message, and although Congress had not acted upon its suggestions, they refused to pay the money unless the obnoxious proposal was withdrawn. This brought another message, in which the President reviewed the difficulties existing between the governments. Said he : "Come what may, the explanation which France demands can never be accorded ; and no armament (alluding to a French fleet then on our coast), however powerful and imposing, will, I trust, deter us from discharging the high duties which we owe to our constituents, to our national character, and to the world." He suggested to Congress to prohibit the entrance of

CHAP. French imports into our ports, and the interdiction of
XLVIII. all commercial intercourse.

1836.

The Chamber of Deputies soon after paid the money to satisfy the claims and fulfill the treaty.

Equally successful was the President in arranging other difficulties of long standing; claims for similar seizures and spoliations against Spain, Naples, and Denmark. Also treaties of commerce and friendship were negotiated with Russia and the Ottoman Empire—the first American treaty with the latter power.

Two States, Arkansas and Michigan, were added to the Union; the original thirteen had now doubled.

Nov. After a spirited contest Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected President by the people, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, Vice-President, not by the electoral vote, but by the Senate.

General Jackson's administration will ever be memorable for its measures and for its influence. The nation was greatly agitated by conflicts of opinion in relation to his official acts, since he professed to be governed by the Constitution, *not* as interpreted by the United States Supreme Court, but as he *himself* understood it—a disrespect for constituted law which in after years was not without malign influence. He introduced extensively¹ the vicious system of removing persons from minor offices for political purposes alone, filling their places with partisans. From that day this custom has been a corrupting element in the nation's politics. Arbitrary in the extreme, he had quarrels with his Cabinet for reasons unworthy the record of history. Though intensely patriotic, and not famed for legal acquirements, he had little respect for law or decisions of courts if they did not coincide with his own notions and prejudices; but his energy and determined will enabled him to carry his points in defiance of opposition and established usages.

¹ Hist., p. 705.

CHAPTER XLIX.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Apparent Prosperity.—The Specie Circular.—The Surplus Funds.—Suspension of Specie Payments.—Speculation.—Special Session of Congress.—The Sub-Treasury.—State Indebtedness.

THE last year of Jackson's administration appeared to be one of very great national prosperity. The public debt had been cancelled two years before, and there were nearly forty millions of dollars of surplus. This prosperity was fallacious in the extreme.

CHAP.
XLIX.

1837.

The State Banks, called in derision the "Pets," with whom the deposits had been placed, loaned money freely, with the expectation that they should continue to have the use of the public funds until they were called for by the Government. That time seemed to be distant, as its revenue was greater than its current expenses.

Other banks sprang into existence, until the number amounted, throughout the land, to seven hundred and fifty. These institutions had very little gold or silver in their vaults, as a means to redeem the notes with which they flooded the country, giving a fictitious value to every thing that was bought or sold. They rivalled each other in affording facilities for the wildest schemes of speculation.

The public lands became an object of this speculation, until the sales amounted to millions in a month. Two acts—the one of the late President; the other of Con-

- CHAP**
XLIX

1837. gress—combined to hasten the crisis. President Jackson, in order to restrain the undue sales of the public lands, had issued, through the Treasury Department, an order known as the Specie Circular, requiring the collectors at the offices to receive only gold and silver in payments for land. Six months later, Congress passed a law to distribute among the States the government funds, on deposit in the banks. They were thus forced to call in their loans to meet this demand, while the Specie Circular arrested the circulation of their notes, and brought them back to their counters, to be exchanged for gold and silver. Within six months after this distribution was ordered, the business of the whole country was prostrated : all improvements ceased, and twenty thousand laboring men were, within a few weeks, thrown out of employment in New York City alone, where the failures amounted to one hundred millions of dollars, while those of New Orleans were as great in proportion, being twenty-seven millions.
- July,
1836.
- May. A few weeks later, the banks of New York City suspended specie payment ; an example which the other banks of the country hastened to follow.

Previous to the suspension of payments, a large and respectable committee of merchants of New York visited Washington, to lay before the new President the state of the country. Similar representations went from almost every section of the land. The President denied the request of the committee to rescind the Specie Circular, but proposed to call a Special Session of Congress, on the first Monday of the following September.

The extent to which speculation raged seems almost fabulous. The compromise tariff had nearly run its course, and the duty arrived at its minimum ; foreign merchandise was imported in unheard-of quantities, thus ruining domestic industry ; internal improvements, because of the facility in obtaining loans, were projected to an extent almost without limit ; the public lands were bought by

the millions of acres, and cities and villages were multiplied on *paper* by hundreds ; and stranger still, the sites of these prospective cities, divided into lots, were frequently made the basis of money transactions.

CHAP.
XLIX.

1837.

A few months before, the General Government was free from debt, and had a surplus of forty millions. Now the surplus had been given to the States ; the importers had neither gold nor silver to pay duties, and the Government itself was deprived of the means to defray its current expenses.

When Congress assembled, the President made no suggestion as to the manner in which the commercial embarrassments of the country might be relieved, on the ground that the General Government was unauthorized by the Constitution to afford such relief. He was therefore in favor of the people taking care of themselves. The message contained, however, two recommendations ; one the issue of Treasury notes, to relieve the Government's own embarrassments, the other an Independent Treasury for the public funds. The object of the latter was to avoid the liability of loss by depositing the public moneys in banks. These treasuries were to be located at suitable places ; the sub-treasurers to be appointed by the President, and to give bonds for the proper fulfilment of their duties.

Sept
4.

The measure was opposed, lest the withdrawal of so much gold and silver from circulation would injure commercial operations. The bill failed in the House, though it passed the Senate. Three years later it was established ; the next year repealed—then re-enacted, five years after, and is still the law of the land.

The Legislatures of many of the States became imbued with the spirit of speculation, and as a means to obtain loans, issued State stocks to the amount of one hundred millions. This was done under the laudable pretext of developing their resources, by internal improvements.

CHAP. XLIX. Eight of the States failed to pay the interest on these loans or stocks. In time they recovered from the shock, and but one of them, Mississippi, and one territory, Florida, repudiated their debt and defied their creditors. These loans were principally obtained in Europe, where, on the subject of these failures to pay, great indignation was expressed. The whole nation was dishonored ;—two years later, when the National Government wished to obtain a loan, her agents could not induce a capitalist in all Europe to risk a dollar in such investment.

As the administration of Van Buren drew to a close, the financial condition of the country did not much improve. However, his party nominated him, as well as Vice-President Johnson, for a second term. The opposing candidate was William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, whom we have seen as a popular general of the north-west during the last war, as well as filling many civil offices with honor to himself and profit to the country. On the same ticket was John Tyler of Virginia, as the candidate for Vice-President. Harrison was elected by a very large majority. The commercial disasters of the country were generally attributed to the interference of the Government with the currency ; this belief had caused a great revolution in the public mind.

CHAPTER L.

HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.

The Inauguration.—Death of Harrison.—Tyler President.—Sub-Treasury Act repealed.—Bankrupt Law.—The Bank Charters; their Vetoes.—Proposition to treat with Great Britain.—Insurrection in Canada.—The Caroline.—Trial of McLeod.—Boundary Disputes in Maine.—Lord Ashburton.—Treaty of Washington.—Questions of Visit and Impressment.—Exploring Expedition.—Texas Colonization; struggles.—Independence.—Siege of Goliad and the Alamo.—Davy Crocket.—Massacre of Prisoners.—Battle of San Jacinto.—Houston President.—Question of Annexation in Congress.—Texas Annexed.—Disturbances in Rhode Island.—Iowa and Florida become States.

AN immense concourse of people, many of them from distant parts of the Union, assembled at Washington to witness the inauguration of General Harrison. His address on that occasion was replete with wisdom; liberal and generous, and patriotic in its tone; a transcript of the sincerity of his own heart. His selection of officers to compose his Cabinet was unanimously confirmed by the Senate; at its head was Daniel Webster, as Secretary of State.

The certainty of a change of policy in the measures of the General Government inspired confidence in the commercial world, and the nation, made wiser by adversity, began to hope. But the expectations of the President's friends were doomed to be sadly disappointed. His first official act was to issue a proclamation, calling a special session of Congress, to meet on the 31st of the

CHAP
L.

1841
Mar.
4.

CHAP.
L.

1841.
April.

following May, to take into consideration the condition of the country. Before that day arrived, the President was no more. Suddenly taken ill, all human remedies failed to give relief, and he expired, just one month after his inauguration, in his sixty-ninth year. For the first time, death had removed the Chief Magistrate of the Union when in office. The loss came home to the hearts of the people. Throughout the length and breadth of the land they vied with each other in doing honor to his memory. Since the death of Washington, the nation had not mourned a loss with such imposing ceremonies. This deep and pervading sentiment of sorrow was the tribute due the memory of a good man; one who had served his country with most scrupulous integrity for more than forty years; whose whole life, public and private, was without reproach. Though in public office the greater part of his life, his salaries had passed away in charities and hospitalities; to his house the humblest of the land as well as the most exalted, had been welcomed; the poor man's friend, he himself died poor. At its very first session after his death, Congress, "out of consideration of his expenses in removing to the seat of government, and the limited means which he had left behind," granted his widow one year's presidential salary—twenty-five thousand dollars.

JOHN TYLER.

May
31.

The Vice-President became the President, according to the provisions of the Constitution. He retained the Cabinet of his predecessor, giving them assurances of his respect. Congress convened for the extra session at the time designated. One of its first measures was to repeal the Sub-Treasury act of the last administration. To this regulation for the keeping of the public funds much of the pressure in the money market was attributed.

The failures in the mercantile world had brought ruin



Thomas B. Denton.

upon thousands of upright and enterprising men. They had become hopelessly bankrupt, in many instances, by circumstances beyond their control ; involved in debts, which would forever crush their energies without benefitting their creditors, themselves, or the country. To relieve persons thus insolvent, Congress passed a general bankrupt law. The effect of the measure was beneficial, and when the necessity for its existence had passed away, it was repealed.

CHAP.
L
—
1842

One of the issues involved in the last presidential election, was the policy of establishing a United States Bank or "Financial Agent," which should facilitate mercantile exchanges throughout the Union. The result of the election had shown that the majority of the people were in favor of such an institution. In compliance with this expression of the popular will, both Houses of Congress passed a bill chartering such a National Bank. Contrary to expectation, the President refused to give it his signature. Another bill was passed, modified in its provisions to accord with his own suggestions. This he also refused to sign. These successive vetoes raised a terrible storm of indignation against their author, though when nominated he was known to be opposed to the United States Bank. The great party, by whose votes he held his high position, charged him with double dealing ; with betraying the trust they had committed to his hands. The members of his cabinet immediately resigned their places, and gave to the country their reasons for so doing. Daniel Webster alone remained, lest the public interests would suffer by his withdrawal before the completion of certain negotiations upon which he was then engaged.

Between the United States government and that of Great Britain two important questions of controversy remained unadjusted. One growing out of certain revolu-

CHAP. tionary disturbances along the Canada borders ; and the
L. other in relation to the north-eastern boundary between
1842. the State of Maine and the British province of New Brunswick. The former of these had been pending during the previous administration, the latter for fifty years.

Soon after entering upon his duties as Secretary of State, Mr. Webster, with the sanction of the President, intimated to the British Minister at Washington, that the Government of the United States was desirous to arrange the boundary dispute by agreeing on a line by compromise, or convention. The proposition was received in the friendly spirit in which it had been given, and the British ministry deputed Lord Ashburton, as special minister to the United States, with full powers to settle all points of controversy between the two governments.

1837 During the first year of Van Buren's administration the people of both the Canadas endeavored to throw off their allegiance to England, and to declare themselves independent. This movement enlisted the sympathies of great numbers in the neighboring States. In northern New York associations were formed, called "Hunters' Lodges," whose object was to aid the patriots. These illegal combinations flourished in spite of the efforts made by the President and the Governor of New York to suppress them.

About seven hundred of these "sympathizers," with some of the patriots, took possession of Navy Island, in Niagara river, near the Canada shore, to which province it belonged. Thither the steamboat *Caroline* was employed in transporting men, arms, and provisions from Schlosser, on the American shore. The British authorities determined to destroy this boat. Accordingly a detachment was sent on a dark night in December for that purpose ; the officer in command not finding the boat at Navy Island, as expected, passed over to Schlosser, where she was moored at the dock. He captured the boat, and in

the short struggle which ensued, an American was killed. The Caroline was taken out into the middle of the stream, there set on fire, and left to pass over the falls in a blaze. The British Minister at Washington, Mr. Fox, immediately avowed the act, and justified it on the ground that it was done in self-defence. This avowal changed the aspect of the controversy—it was now between the governments. The excitement was by no means allayed, nor the activity of the “lodges” diminished. Three years afterward a still stronger feeling of hostility sprang up between the two countries. A certain Alexander McLeod, a British subject, living in Canada, it was rumored, had boasted of being at the taking of the Caroline, and also that he himself had killed the American. McLeod visited the State of New York at the time just mentioned, the authorities of which immediately arrested him on the charge of murder. The British government demanded his release, unconditionally, on the ground that he was obeying the orders of his government, which alone was responsible. The State refused to relinquish, either to the National Government or to Great Britain, her right to bring the prisoner to trial, for the crime it was alleged he had committed on her soil. The trial came on, and McLeod was acquitted, he having proved that he was not present at the affray at all. In order to prevent, for the future, clashings of State jurisdiction with that of the National Government, Congress passed a law requiring similar cases to be transferred to the United States courts.

While these events were in progress in the State of New York, difficulties, equally ominous, were brewing on the north-eastern boundary. The inhabitants on either side undertook to say where the line should be; as they could not agree, the more belligerent were in favor of fighting, and consequently some trifling collisions took place. The Legislature of Maine even appropriated money for the defence of her territorial rights—and further

CHAP
L
1837.

1840.

CHAP. collisions were prevented only by the conciliatory and judicious policy of General Scott, who was sent by the President to maintain the peace.

L

1840.

These disputes so long unsettled, very greatly disturbed the harmony existing between the two nations. The correspondence between their governments shows that at this time the controversy had assumed a serious and delicate character, and that it required the exercise of great wisdom, and a mutual conciliatory spirit to prevent actual war.

When negotiations commenced, commissioners from the States of Maine and Massachusetts were invited to Washington, that they might be consulted on the subject. The treaty was soon concluded. The United States obtained the navigation of the river St. John's to its mouth, and the very important military position—Rouse's Point, at the outlet of Lake Champlain. In exchange for these were given a small territory of swamps, heath, and rocks, and barren mountains, covered with snow the greater part of the year. A territory valuable to Great Britain only because it enabled her to make a direct road from the province of New Brunswick to the St. Lawrence. Both nations were benefited by the arrangement, and the vexatious question of more than half a century's standing was amicably settled.

Another article provided for the mutual rendition of fugitives from justice ; but only those who had committed acts which would be deemed criminal in the country where they had taken refuge. This important measure has given general satisfaction to both the contracting parties, and has served since as a model for similar treaties between some of the European powers. The two governments also agreed to maintain each a certain number of armed vessels on the coast of Africa to aid in suppressing the slave-trade.

After the treaty was concluded two important sub-

jects unexpectedly came up for discussion. One was the right assumed by British cruisers to visit, and if necessary search, merchant vessels belonging to other nations. In a letter to the American minister at London, and designed for the English secretary of Foreign Affairs, Webster denied the "right," and sustained his opinions against its exercise by arguments that have not yet been invalidated.

CHAP.
L.
1842.

The other subject was the impressment of seamen by British cruisers from American merchant vessels. In a letter to Lord Ashburton the Secretary of State assumed that it did not comport with the self-respect of the United States to enter into stipulations in relation to the right of impressment ; as if for a moment the existence of such a right could be admitted. On the contrary—that the exercise of impressment should be deemed an aggression and repelled as such. In an able and conciliatory discussion he pointed out the inconsistency of such a right with the laws of nations. Yet in the happiest language expressed the desire that for the welfare of both countries, all occasions of irritation should be removed. He announced as the basis of the policy of the United States: "Every merchant-vessel on the high seas is rightfully considered as a part of the territory of the country to which it belongs ;" that "in every regularly documented American merchant-vessel the crew who navigate it will find their protection in the flag which is over them," and that "the American Government, then, is prepared to say that the practice of impressing seamen from American vessels cannot hereafter be allowed to take place."¹ In the same just and conciliatory spirit was the reply of Lord Ashburton.

An apology was impliedly given for the invasion of the territory of the United States in the "affair of the Caroline." The negotiators conferred informally upon the subject of the northern boundary of Oregon, but for the

¹ The Works of Daniel Webster, vol. vi. p. 325.

CHAP. I. present agreed to postpone its settlement. The treaty of Washington marks an important era in our history :—the
 1842. time when the United States took that position among the nations, to which they were entitled by their power and influence. Four years after, Webster said on the floor of the Senate :—“ I am willing to appeal to the public men of the age, whether, in 1842, and in the city of Washington, something was not done for the suppression of crime, for the true exposition of public law, for the freedom and security of commerce on the ocean, and for the peace of the world ? ”

The government had not been forgetful of the advancement of science. It sent out an exploring expedition, under Lieutenant Charles Wilkes of the United States navy, accompanied by a corps of scientific men, to make discoveries in the Antarctic and Pacific oceans. After four years it returned bringing the results of investigations in Natural History, not valuable to our own country alone, but to the world. It sailed ninety thousand miles, seventeen hundred of which were along the coast of a great Antarctic Continent never seen before by civilized man.

The four years of this administration was a period fruitful in measures, destined, in their remote consequences, to have a varied and almost unlimited influence upon the nation. A more important question never came before the Houses of Congress, than when the young Republic of Texas presented herself at their doors, and asked to be annexed to the Union. She came offering a fertile territory almost sufficient in extent to make five such States as Pennsylvania or New York. The “ annexation,” led to the Mexican war, and that in turn to the acquisition of California.

The region known as Texas had been claimed, but on doubtful grounds, as a part of the already purchased ter-

ritory of Louisiana. This claim was, however, waived, and when Florida was obtained Texas was tacitly admitted to belong to Spain, and when Mexico revolted from the mother country, she became one of the confederated States which formed the Mexican republic. CHAP.
L.
1842.

The American who originated the plan of colonizing Texas, was Moses Austin, a native of Durham, Connecticut. He was engaged in working the lead mines in upper Louisiana, when, in his explorations, he became acquainted with the fertile soil and delightful climate of Texas. The Spanish Government encouraged immigration to that part of the Mexican territory, and it gave Austin large grants of land, on condition that he would introduce as colonists three hundred Catholic families from Louisiana. Within a month after these arrangements were completed, Austin himself died, but appointed his son Stephen F. Austin to superintend the planting of the colony according to the agreement with the Spanish government. To his energy and perseverance may be attributed the success of the enterprise. 1813

Little was known at Mexico of what was in progress in that remote region. The Americans, attracted by the liberal grants of land and the fine climate, were pouring in. In a few years they numbered twenty thousand, very few of whom were Catholics, nor did they all come from Louisiana, but from the other Southern and Western States. 1830

Meantime in Mexico other great changes were in progress. First came the revolution by which she declared herself no longer under the jurisdiction of Spain. This was succeeded by a confederation of States. In that unhappy country one revolution succeeded another in rapid succession, till finally, Santa Anna, overthrowing the existing republic, made himself dictator and tyrant of the people. During this time the Texans did not revolt, nor 1821

CHAP
L.

1835. did they acquiesce. They formed a constitution, and sent Austin to Mexico to ask admission into the confederacy of the republic as a State. This request was denied, and their messenger thrown into prison. Still Texas retained her State officers, and asked that her rights might be respected; when an armed Mexican vessel appeared off the coast, and proclaimed that her ports were blockaded; near the same time a Mexican army appeared on her western borders, with the intention of arresting her State officers, and disarming the inhabitants. It was much easier to demand the Texan rifles than to get them. Sept. 28. The attempt was made at a place named Gonzales, where the Mexicans met with a severe repulse. The Texans, though few in number, flew to arms throughout the entire country, and in a few months drove the invaders from their soil, and captured and garrisoned the strong forts of the Goliad and the mission house of Alamo. Thus they manfully resisted the designs of Santa Anna to make them submit to his usurped authority, and the struggle commenced for their rights, their liberties and their lives.

There were no bonds of sympathy between the Texans and Mexicans: neither in religion nor in customs, nor in form of government. The Texan despised the Mexican, and the Mexican hated and feared the Texan.

1836. Six months after these reverses Santa Anna invaded Texas with a numerous army. The character of the war he intended to wage may be inferred from his cruel orders to shoot every prisoner taken. The Alamo was invested by Santa Anna himself. The garrison numbered only one hundred and eighty men, while their enemies were as sixteen to their one. When summoned to surrender, they, knowing the treacherous character of the Mexican Chief, refused. The latter immediately raised the blood-red flag, to indicate that he would give no quarter. After repulsing the besiegers several times, the Texans, worn out with Mar. 8. watchings and labors, were overcome, and when calling for

quarter the survivors—only seven—were mercilessly butch-
ered.

CHAP.
L

Here, surrounded by the bodies of Mexicans who had fallen by his hand, perished the eccentric Davy Crockett. Born on the frontiers of Tennessee, his only education was that received during two months in a common school. Though singular in his mental characteristics, his strong common sense and undaunted spirit, won him the respect of his fellow-citizens, and they sent him several times to represent them in Congress. When he heard of the struggle in which the people of Texas were engaged, he hastened to their aid, and with untiring energy devoted himself to their cause.

1836.

At Goliad the little garrison defended themselves with unexampled bravery; not until their resources failed, their ammunition exhausted, and famine was staring them in the face, did they accept the terms offered by the Mexican in command, and surrendered. Their lives were to be spared, and they aided to leave the country. Other small parties of Texans in different places had been surprised and taken prisoners. The following night a courier arrived from Santa Anna, bringing orders to put the prisoners to death the next morning.

They were marched in little companies outside the town, and there shot; those attempting to escape were cut down by the cavalry. The wounded prisoners were then murdered in the same cruel manner; among the wounded who thus suffered, was Colonel Fanning, their commander. Thus perished three hundred and thirty men, the last words of some of whom were cheers for the liberty of Texas.

A Texan physician, Dr. Grant, was among the prisoners, but his life was spared on condition that he would attend the wounded Mexican soldiers. He was also promised that he should have a passport to leave the country as soon as they needed his services no more. He

CHAP. faithfully performed his part, but when the soldiers were
L
cured, he was tied upon a wild horse, and told to take "his
1836. passport and start for home." The cords were cut, and
the frightened animal rushed to the woods, where, some
time after, the mangled body of the poor man was found.

Santa Anna, with an army of seven thousand men, moved on toward the San Jacinto river. General Samuel Houston had only seven hundred and fifty men, their only weapons rifles, pistols and bowie-knives ; in their element when fighting, they were impatient to attack the enemy. The advance division, consisting of fifteen hundred men, under the command of Santa Anna himself, was the flower of the Mexican army. The Mexicans were well posted, and their front, before which was an open grassy space, was carefully fortified. Houston had great difficulty in restraining his men. At three o'clock in the afternoon, when Santa Anna and his officers were enjoying a sleep, and their men engaged in playing cards, Houston passed information along the line that the only bridge by which the enemy could escape was cut down, with the order to move rapidly to the attack. The surprise was complete. In twenty minutes their position was forced, and the panic stricken Mexicans leaving every thing, fled in confusion. More than six hundred were slain, and altogether more than eight hundred taken prisoners. The following day a Mexican was found skulking in the grass. He asked to be led to head-quarters. When brought to the Oak under which were the Texan head-quarters, he made himself known as Santa Anna. He complimented Houston on the renown he had acquired in "conquering the Napoleon of the West." Such was the battle of San Jacinto; the number engaged were comparatively few, yet it virtually ended the contest. Santa Anna, at the request of Houston, ordered the Mexican army to retire from the Territory of Texas. He also ac-

April
21.

knowledge the independence of Texas, but the Mexican Congress refused to ratify his act. CHAP. L.

A month previous to this battle, a convention of delegates met at a place named Washington, and declared themselves independent of Mexico. The convention then proceeded to form a Constitution, which in due time was adopted by the people. Six months later Houston was inaugurated President of the Republic of Texas ; and its first Congress assembled.¹ 1836. April 21. Oct.

When its people threw off their allegiance to Mexico, they naturally turned to more congenial associations ; they desired to annex themselves to the United States.

One of the last official acts of General Jackson had been to sign a bill recognizing their independence, and now the question of their annexation became the absorbing topic of political discussion in the United States, in every section of which many opposed the measure only on the ground that it would incur a war with Mexico, whose government still persisted in fruitless efforts to reduce the Texans to obedience. The interminable question of slavery, as usual, was involved in the controversy. The South was almost unanimously in favor of annexation. The genial climate, the fertile soil, and the varied productions of Texas, were so many pledges that slave labor would there be profitable. A strong party in the North was opposed to the measure, lest it should perpetuate that institution, while one in the South was devising plans to preserve the balance of power existing between the States in the Senate. 1844

The subject of annexation, with its varied consequences, was warmly discussed in both Houses of Congress, in the newspapers, and in the assemblies of the people.

Calhoun gave his views by saying : " There were

¹ Yoakum's Hist. of Texas.

CHAP. powerful reasons why Texas should be a part of this
L Union. The Southern States, owning a slave population,
1844. were deeply interested in preventing that country from having power to annoy them." Said Webster: "That while I hold to all the original arrangements and compromises under which the Constitution under which we now live was adopted, I never could, and never can, persuade myself to be in favor of the admission of other States into the Union, as slave States, with the inequalities which were allowed and accorded by the Constitution to the slaveholding States then in existence."

Under the auspices of Calhoun, who was now Secretary of State, a treaty was secretly made with Texas, by which she was to be admitted into the Union. But the Senate immediately rejected it by a vote more than two to one, on the ground that to carry out its provisions would involve the country in a war with Mexico. This rejection was the signal for raising a great clamor throughout the land. Annexation was made a prominent issue in the pending presidential election—the Democratic party in favor of the measure, and the Whigs opposed. To influence the credulous, it was boldly asserted that England was negotiating with Texas to buy her slaves, free them, and, having quieted Mexico, to take the republic under her special protection. This story General Houston said was a pure fabrication ; yet it served a purpose. In certain portions of the South conventions were held, in which the sentiment "Texas, or Disunion," was openly advocated. The threats of secession and uniting with Texas, unless she was admitted to the Union, had but little effect, however, upon the great mass of the people.

The following year it was proposed to receive Texas by a joint resolution of Congress. The House of Representatives passed a bill to that effect, but the Senate added an amendment, appointing commissioners to nego-

tiate with Mexico on the subject. Thus manifesting a desire to respect the rights of Mexico as a nation with whom we were at peace, and at least make an effort to obtain the annexation with her consent, and also the settlement of boundaries.

CHAP.

L

1844

By a clause in the resolutions the President was authorized to adopt either plan. The joint resolutions were passed on Saturday, the 2d of March; Tyler would leave office two days later. The President elect, James K. Polk, had intimated that if the question came before him he should adopt the Senate's plan, by which it was hoped an amicable arrangement could be made with Mexico.¹ The retiring President, and his Secretary of State, chose to adopt the mode of annexation proposed in the House resolutions. A messenger was sent on Sunday night the 3d, to carry the proposition with all speed to the Legislature of Texas.

The opposition to annexing slaveholding territory to the Union was so great that Texas came in by compromise. Provision was made that four additional States might be formed out of the Territory when it should become sufficiently populous. Those States lying north of the parallel of thirty-six degrees thirty minutes, north latitude—the Missouri Compromise line—were to be free States; those south of the line, to “be admitted into the Union with or without slavery as the people of each State asking admission may desire.” To the original State, the right was accorded to prevent any State being formed out of her territory, by refusing her consent to the measure. Texas acceded to the proposition, and thus became one of the United States. Her population now amounted to two hundred thousand.

1845
July
4.

For nearly two hundred years the people of Rhode Island had lived under the charter granted by Charles II. This instrument was remarkable for the liberal provisions

¹ Benton's Thirty Years' View, Chap. cxlviii. Vol. ii.

CHAP. it contained. The desire to change this charter gave rise
 L. to two parties, the "Suffrage," and "The Law and
 1845. Order;" each determined to secure to their own party
 the administration of affairs, and each elected State offi-
 cers. Thomas W. Dorr, elected governor by the Suf-
 frage party, tried to seize the State arsenal; the militia
 1843. were called out by the other party, and he was compelled
 May to flee. In a second attempt his party was overpowered
 18. by citizen soldiers, and he himself arrested, brought to
 trial, convicted of treason, and sentenced to imprison-
 ment for life; but some time afterward he was pardoned.
 A free constitution was in the mean time adopted by the
 people, under which they are now living.

Almost the last official act of President Tyler was to
 sign the bill for the admission of Iowa and Florida into
 the Union. "Two States which seem to have but few
 things in common to put them together—one the oldest,
 the other the newest territory—one in the extreme north-
 west of the Union, the other in the extreme south-east—
 one the land of evergreens and perpetual flowers, the
 other the climate of long and rigorous winter—one main-
 taining, the other repulsing slavery."

In addition to passing a tariff bill, under whose influ-
 ence the industries of the country greatly revived, this
 progressive Congress conferred a lasting benefit on the
 1842. Nation by cheapening the postage on letters, then a bur-
 densome tax on the social correspondence of the people
 and the business of the country. This measure was per-
 sistently opposed from session to session, especially by
 the members from that section that never paid its own
 postage. When the first bill passed, the letter which
 now costs two cents cost from two to ten times as
 much and even more, according to the distance carried.
 It took twenty-one years of gradual reduction to bring
 the rate of postage down to what it is to-day. This fre-
 quent and cheap intercourse by letters and newspapers is
 of immense value to a nation constituted as we are.

CHAPTER LI

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

The Presidential Canvass.—Difficulties with Mexico.—General Taylor at Corpus Christi.—Oregon Territory ; respective Claims to.—Settlement of Boundary.—Taylor marches to the Rio Grande.—Thornton's Party surprised.—Attack on Fort Brown.—Battle of Palo Alto ; of Resaca de la Palma.—Matamoras occupied.—Measures of Congress.—The Volunteers.—Plan of Operations.—Mexico declares War.—General Wool.—General Worth.—The Capture of Monterey.

ON the 4th of March, James Knox Polk, of Tennessee, was inaugurated President, and George Mifflin Dallas, of Pennsylvania, Vice-President ; James Buchanan was appointed Secretary of State.

CHAP
LI.
—
1845.

The canvass had been one of unusual interest and spirit. The candidates of the Whig party were Henry Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen. The questions involved were the admission of Texas, and the settlement of the boundary line on the north-west, between the British possessions and Oregon. The latter—for the Whigs were also in favor of its settlement—thrown in by the successful party.

The result of the election was assumed to be the expression of the will of the people in relation to the admission of Texas, which measure, as we have seen, the expiring administration had already consummated. We have now to record the events, the consequences in part of that measure.

Though France and England, as well as the United

CHAP.
II.

1845.

States, acknowledged the independence of Texas, Mexico still claimed the territory, and threatened to maintain her claim by force of arms. In accordance with this sentiment, two days after the inauguration of the new President, General Almonte, the Mexican minister at Washington, formally protested against the "joint resolutions" of Congress, then demanded his passports and left the country.

There were other points of dispute between the two governments. American merchants residing in Mexico, complained that their property had been appropriated by that government; that their ships, trading along the shores of the Gulf, had been plundered, and they could obtain no redress. The United States government again and again remonstrated against these outrages. The Mexican government, poverty-stricken and distracted by broils, was almost in a state of anarchy; each party as it came into power repudiated the engagements made by its predecessor.

1831.

A treaty had been signed by which redress for these grievances was promised; the promise was not fulfilled, and the aggressions continued. Nine years later the Mexican government again acknowledged the justness of these demands, which now amounted to six millions of dollars, and pledged itself to pay them in twenty instalments, of three hundred thousand dollars each. Three of these had been paid, when the annexation of Texas took place, and, in consequence of that event, Mexico refused further compliance with the treaty.

Even if Mexico gave her consent for the annexation of Texas, another question arose: What was the western boundary of that territory; the Nueces or the Rio Grande? Both parties claimed the region lying between these two rivers. The Legislature of Texas, alarmed at the warlike attitude assumed by Mexico, requested the United States government to protect their territory. Ac-



Samuel Houston

cordingly the President sent General Zachary Taylor, with fifteen hundred men, called the "Army of Occupation," "to take position in the country between the Nueces and the Rio Grande, and to repel any invasion of the Texan territory." General Taylor formed his camp at Corpus Christi, a small village at the mouth of the Nueces. There he remained till the following spring. Also a portion of the Home squadron, under Commodore Conner, was sent into the Gulf to co-operate with the army. Both "were ordered to commit no act of hostility against Mexico unless she declared war, or was herself the aggressor by striking the first blow." ¹

CHAP
LI.

1845.

Sept.

Though Mexico, in her weakness and distraction, had temporized and recently rejected an American minister, yet it was understood that she was now willing to receive one, and accordingly he had been sent. It was plain that upon the pending negotiations war or peace between the two republics depended. Meanwhile it was known that Mexico was marshalling her forces for a conflict.

The unsettled question in relation to the boundary of Oregon now engaged the attention of the President and his Secretary of State. Great Britain was from the first desirous to arrange the difficulty, though, as has been stated, the subject was passed over in the negotiations of the Washington treaty.

A few months after the ratification of that treaty, Mr. Henry S. Fox, the British minister at Washington, addressed a note to Daniel Webster, Secretary of State under Mr. Tyler, in which note he proposed to take up the subject of the Oregon boundary. The proposal was accepted, but for some reason negotiations were not commenced. Two years later, Sir Richard Packenham, then British minister at Washington, renewed the proposition

1842
Nov

¹ President's Message, Dec. 1845.

CHAP. to Mr. Upshur, Secretary of State. It was accepted, but
LI. a few days after Upshur lost his life by the lamentable
 1844. explosion on board the Princeton. Six months later
 Feb. Packenham again brought the matter to the notice of
 Mr. Calhoun, then Secretary of State. The proposition
 was promptly accepted, and the next day named for
 taking up the subject.

The claims of the respective parties may be briefly
 noticed. The region known as Oregon lay between the par-
 allels of forty-two and fifty-four degrees and forty minutes
 north latitude, the Rocky Mountains on the east, and the
 1819. Pacific Ocean on the west. By the Florida Treaty, Spain
 had ceded to the United States all her territory north of
 the parallel first mentioned ; commencing at the sources of
 the Arkansas and thence to the Pacific, and Mexico, hav-
 ing thrown off the yoke of Spain, since confirmed by treaty
 1828. the validity of the same boundary. The parallel of fifty-
 four degrees forty minutes was agreed upon by the United
 States, Great Britain, and Russia, as the southern bound-
 ary of the possessions of the latter power.
 1824,
 1825.

The American claim was based upon the cession of
 Spain, who was really the first discoverer ; the discovery of
 1792. Captain Gray, already mentioned ; the explorations of Lewis
 and Clarke, sent by the government of the United States ;
 and the settlement established at the mouth of the Colum-
 1811. bia River, by John Jacob Astor of New York. Lewis and
 1805, Clarke, during Jefferson's administration, crossed the
 1806. Rocky Mountains, came upon the southern main branch
 of the Columbia, and explored that river to its mouth.

The British claim was also based on discovery, and
 1806. actual settlement founded by the North-West Company,
 on Fraser's River, and also another on the head-waters of
 the north branch of the Columbia.

1844. Calhoun came directly to the point, and proposed as
 the boundary the continuation of the forty-ninth degree

of north latitude to the Pacific. This line had already been agreed upon between the United States and Great Britain by the treaty made at London, as the boundary of their respective territories from the Lake of the Woods to the summit of the Rocky Mountains. Packenham, unwilling to accept that line, proposed to follow the forty-ninth degree from the mountains—some three hundred miles—until it should strike the north branch of the Columbia river, and thence down that stream to the ocean. The American Secretary declined this, and as the British minister had no further instructions, the consideration of the subject was postponed.

CHAP
LI.

1844.
1818.

Meantime the Presidential canvass was in progress, and "all of Oregon or none" became one of the watchwords of the Democratic party. So long as these sentiments were proclaimed by partisan leaders and newspapers, they were harmless; but when the new President, in his inaugural address, asserted that our title to "Oregon Territory" "was clear and indisputable," and moreover intimated that it was his intention to maintain it by arms, the question assumed a far different aspect.

The position thus officially taken, when the subject of the boundary was under negotiation, took the British Government by surprise, especially since hitherto each party had courteously recognized the other's claim to a portion of the territory. Four months passed. Meantime the good feeling existing between the two governments was seriously disturbed; England did not again offer to negotiate. A mere partisan watchword was in danger of involving both nations in war. At length the President himself, directed the Secretary of State to reopen negotiations by offering as the boundary the forty-ninth parallel; but the proposition was not accepted by the British minister.

To prepare the way for further negotiation, the Presi-

CHAP. dent then recommended that the joint occupation of the
LI. territory should be abrogated, by giving the twelve
1844. months' notice, according to a provision in the treaties of 1818 and 1828. Congress voted to give the notice.

Sir Robert Peel expressed in Parliament his regret that the last offer of the American Secretary had not been accepted, and soon after the British minister, Pakenham, communicated to the Secretary of State the information that his government would accept the parallel of forty-nine, as recently offered.

The case admitted of no delay. The President was anxious to relieve himself of the responsibility of acting on the proposition. On the suggestion of Senator Benton, of Missouri, he, following the example of Washington, consulted the Senate on the propriety of accepting this last proposition, pledging himself to be guided by their decision. That body decided to accept it, "and gave the President a faithful support against himself, against his cabinet, and against his peculiar friends."

Presently the treaty was sent into the Senate, when, after a spirited debate for two days, it was ratified.¹ By this treaty, the parallel of forty-nine degrees North latitude was agreed upon as the boundary to the middle of the channel between Vancouver's Island and the Continent, and thence southerly through the middle of the Straits of Fuca to the ocean :—also the navigation of the Columbia River, and its main northern branch, was left free to both parties.

1846. We left General Taylor at Corpus Christi, on the west bank of the Nueces. He now received orders from Washington, to move to the Rio Grande, and establish a fortified camp and fort on the bank opposite the town of Matamoras, as in the vicinity of that place Mexican troops were assembling in great numbers, with the intention, it

¹ Benton's Thirty Years' View, Vol. ii. Chaps. 156-7-8-9.

was said, of invading Texas. Leaving the main portion of his stores under a guard at Point Isabel, he marched to the Rio Grande, and, within cannon shot of Matamoras, established a camp and built a fort. These movements called forth from Mexico strong protests and threats of war.

CHAP
II.
1846.

When the dispute between the two Republics began, Herrera was President of Mexico. He was desirous of arranging the difficulties by negotiation; but the war spirit prevailed, and at a recent election the Mexican people chose for President, Paredes, an uncompromising enemy of peace. When he assumed office he sent a large force under General Ampudia, to whom he gave orders to drive the Americans beyond the Nueces. That officer soon after sent a communication to General Taylor, in which he warned him of his danger in thus provoking the anger of "the magnanimous Mexican nation," and demanded that he should "break up his camp and retire beyond the Nueces" within twenty-four hours. Taylor replied that he should maintain his position, and carry out the instructions of his government, which alone was responsible for his presence on the Rio Grande. He continued to strengthen his fortification, and to closely watch the movements of the Mexicans. Ampudia was at a loss how to act; both commanders were unwilling to light the flame of war.

Paredes, dissatisfied with Ampudia, sent General Arista to supersede him. The latter immediately ordered detachments of Mexican soldiers to occupy positions between Point Isabel and the American camp, thus cutting off communication with their stores.

General Taylor had sent Captain Thornton with a party of sixty dragoons to reconnoitre; the party was surprised, sixteen of their number killed, the remainder captured. Thornton alone escaped. Here was shed the first blood in the Mexican war.

CHAP.
LI.

1846.

A few days later, Captain Walker, the celebrated Texan ranger, who with a select company was engaged in keeping up the communication with Point Isabel, came into camp with information that a large force of Mexicans was threatening the latter place. Leaving Major Brown with three hundred men to defend the fort, Taylor hastened to the aid of Point Isabel, which place, after a march of twenty-one miles, he reached without opposition.

The Mexicans self-complacently attributed this movement to fear, and they immediately made preparations to attack the fort. Taylor had concerted with Major Brown that if the latter should be surrounded or hard pressed, he should, at certain intervals, fire heavy signal guns.

May
3.

The Mexicans opened with a tremendous cannonade from a battery at Matamoras, while a large force took position in the rear of the fort, and began to throw up intrenchments. The little garrison defended themselves with great bravery, and not until Major Brown fell mortally wounded, did the next in command, Captain Hawkins, begin to fire the signal guns.

May
8.

The cautious Taylor first put Point Isabel in a state of defence, and then set out with a provision train guarded by two thousand two hundred and eighty-eight men to relieve Fort Brown—thus afterward named in honor of its commander. The little army was truly in peril; an overwhelming force of the enemy—three to its one—had taken a strong position to intercept its march. The booming of signal guns still continued, and Taylor ardently pressed on with the determination to cut his way through. Presently he came in sight of the enemy, posted in front of a chaparral—in which were their reserves—near a small stream, the Palo Alto. The train was immediately closed up, and the soldiers refreshed themselves from the stream, and filled their canteens. As soon as the exact position of the Mexicans was ascertained, the American line was formed, Major Ringgold's battery was

placed on the right, and Duncan's on the left, while the eighteen-pounders were in the centre on the main road. CHAP.
LI.
—

The Mexicans commenced the action with their artillery, but at too great distance to reach the American line. The latter moved slowly and silently up till within suitable range, then the artillery opened, and displayed great skill in the rapidity as well as in the accuracy with which each gun was handled. The eighteen-pounders riddled the Mexican centre through and through, while Duncan scarcely noticed their artillery, but poured an incessant stream of balls upon their infantry. Presently the long grass in front was set on fire, by the wadding from the guns, and the smoke obscured the position of the Mexicans. The American batteries groped their way for three-fourths of an hour through the burning grass, and when the smoke cleared away, they found themselves within range of the enemy ; in another moment they opened their guns with renewed vigor. At this crisis night came on ; the contest had continued for five hours, and was a conflict of artillery alone. The only instance when an effort was made to change the form of the battle, was when the Mexican cavalry endeavored to turn the American flank ; but the infantry, with bayonets fixed stood firm and awaited the shock ; as the cavalry hesitated to make the onset, a discharge from the American artillery decided them to wheel and rapidly leave the field.

Such was the first battle in the Mexican war ; a pre-
 sage of those which were to follow. The enemy lost four
 hundred men, while the Americans had only nine killed
 and forty-four wounded ; but among the former was Major
 Ringgold, universally lamented, both as an efficient
 officer and a Christian gentleman. As his officers offered
 him assistance, he said : " Leave me alone, you are wanted
 forward." To him was due much of the credit for that
 perfection of drill and rapidity of movement which the
 American Flying Artillery exhibited on battle-fields

CHAP. during this war. The Mexicans manifested here no want
LI. of courage ; they stood for four or five hours under these
1846. murderous discharges of grape.

The Americans encamped on the spot, and at three o'clock the next morning were on their march toward Fort Brown. Meantime the Mexicans, leaving their dead unburied, had disappeared ; but on the afternoon of that day they were discovered posted in a strong position beyond a ravine, known as the Dry River of Palms or Resaca de la Palma. They had been reinforced during the night, and now numbered seven thousand men. Their right and left were protected by dense brush and chaparral, while their artillery, placed behind a breastwork and beyond the ravine, swept the road for some distance.

May
9.

General Taylor placed his artillery on the road in the centre, and ordered divisions on the right and left to grope their way through the chaparral and ferret out with the bayonet the Mexican sharpshooters, who were swarming in the brush which protected them.

No order could be observed ; the officers became separated from the men ; each soldier acted for himself, as he broke his way through the chaparral and probed for the Mexicans. The sharp twang of the rifle, the dull sound of the musket, the deep mutterings of the cannon, the shrill cries of the Mexicans, so in contrast with the vigorous shouts of the Americans, produced a tremendous uproar. The right and left had gradually forced their way through the chaparral almost to the ravine, but the Mexican battery, handled with great coolness and execution, still swept the road at every discharge, and held the centre in check. That battery, the key of the Mexican position, must be taken. General Taylor turned to Captain May, of the dragoons, and pointing to the battery, said : " You must take it." The captain wheeled his horse and shouted to his troops, " Men, we must take that

battery !" Just then Lieutenant Ridgely suggested to May to wait until he would draw the Mexican fire. The moment a portion of their guns were fired, the bugle was heard high above the din, to sound a charge. The attention of the combatants was arrested, all eyes were turned toward the road, along which dashed the horsemen, led by their gallant leader. A cloud of dust soon hid them from view ; a discharge of the Mexican guns swept away one-third of their number, but in a moment more, the clashing sabres and the trampling of men under the horses' feet, proclaimed that the battery was taken. The Mexican cannoneers were paralyzed at the sudden appearance of the approaching foe, and before they could recover, the dragoons were upon them. May, with his own hands, captured General La Vega, the commander, who was in the act of applying a match to a gun. The dragoons then charged directly through the Mexican centre.

A shout of triumph arose from the American lines, the infantry pressed on and took possession of the guns, from which the dragoons had driven the men. The entire Mexican force, panic-stricken at the sudden onset, broke and fled in confusion to the nearest point of the Rio Grande ; in their haste to pass over which, numbers of them were drowned.

It was a complete victory. General Arista fled, and without a companion, leaving his private papers, as well as his public correspondence. All the Mexican artillery, two thousand stand of arms, and six hundred mules, fell into the hands of the Americans. The latter lost one hundred and twenty-two, and the Mexicans twelve hundred.

We may well imagine the emotions with which the little garrison, exhausted by the exertions of six days' incessant bombardment, listened to the sound of the battle, as it drew nearer and nearer ; first was heard the cannon, then the musketry ; then the smoke could be seen floating

CHAP. above the distant trees ; now Mexicans here and there
LI. appeared in full flight ; presently the victorious American
1846. cavalry came in sight, and the men mounted the ramparts
and shouted a welcome.

May General Taylor advanced to Fort Brown, then in a
18. few days crossed the Rio Grande, and took possession of
Matamoras. The Mexicans had withdrawn the previous
evening and were in full march toward Monterey. The
American commander took pains not to change or interfere
with the municipal laws of the town ; the people
enjoyed their civil and religious privileges. They were
paid good prices for provisions, which they furnished in
abundance ; yet there was evidently in their hearts a
deep-toned feeling of hatred toward the invaders.

Meanwhile intelligence of the capture of Captain
Thornton's reconnoitring party had reached the United
States, and the rumor that Mexican soldiers, in over-
powering numbers, were between the Nueces and the Rio
Grande.

May The President immediately sent a special message to
11. Congress, in which he announced that "war existed by
the act of Mexico ;" but surely it was an "act" of self-
defence on the part of the Mexicans, and made so by the
advance of an American army upon disputed soil, that had
been in their possession and that of their fathers' fathers.

The President called upon Congress to recognize the
war, to appropriate the necessary funds to carry it on, and
to authorize him to call upon the country for volunteers.
Congress, anxious to rescue the army from danger, ap-
propriated ten millions of dollars, and empowered the
President to accept the services of fifty thousand volun-
teers ; one-half of whom to be mustered into the army,
and the other half kept as a reserve. War was not for-
mally declared, yet the war spirit aroused was unprece-
dented. Throughout the land public meetings were held,

and in a few weeks two hundred thousand volunteers had offered their services to rescue the gallant little army from its perils, and, if necessary, to prosecute the war. Notwithstanding these warlike indications, great diversity of opinion prevailed among the people, both as to the justness of the war, or the expediency of appealing to that terrible arbiter, when all the results demanded might be obtained by negotiation.

CHAP.
II.

1846.

On the suggestions of Major-General Scott, a plan of operations, remarkably comprehensive in its outlines, was resolved upon by the government. A powerful fleet was to sail round Cape Horn, and to attack the Mexican ports on the Pacific coast in concert with a force, styled the "Army of the West," which was to assemble at Fort Leavenworth, on the Missouri, then to cross the great plains and the Rocky Mountains, and in its progress reduce the northern provinces of Mexico. Another force, "The Army of the Centre," was to penetrate to the heart of the Republic by way of Texas, and if deemed best, co-operate with the force under Taylor, known, as we have said, as the "Army of Occupation." The latter part of the plan was afterward modified, and the country was penetrated by way of Vera Cruz.

The apprehensions of the people for the safety of their little army, gave way to a feeling of exultation, when the news reached them that it had met and repelled its numerous assailants. The war spirit was not diminished but rather increased by this success. Congress manifested its gratification by conferring upon Taylor the commission of Major-General by brevet.

80.

On the other hand the Mexican people and government were aroused, and on the intelligence of these disasters, war was formally declared against the United States, and the government commenced to prepare for the contest.

May
28.

CHAP.
II.

1846. General John E. Wool, a native of New York, who had seen service in the war of 1812, and distinguished himself at Queenstown Heights, was commissioned to drill the volunteers. By the most untiring diligence he had, in the short space of six weeks, inspected and taken into the service twelve thousand men, nine thousand of whom were hurried off to reinforce General Taylor, while the remainder marched under his own command to San Antonio, in Texas, there to be in readiness to act according to circumstances.

Aug. 20. General Taylor remained three months at Matamoras, his operations restricted for want of men, but as soon as reinforcements reached him, he prepared to advance into the country, in accordance with orders received from Washington. He sent in advance General William J. Worth, with the first division toward Monterey, the capital city of New Leon. Worth took his first lessons in warfare in 1812. From love of military life, when a mere youth he enlisted as a common soldier, but his ready talents attracted the attention of Colonel, now General Scott, and from that day his promotion began. A fortnight later, leaving General Twiggs in command at Matamoras, Taylor himself moved with the main division,—more than six thousand men,—and the entire army encamped within three miles of the doomed city.

Sept.
9.

Monterey was an old city built by the Spaniards nearly three centuries ago. In a fertile valley, hedged in by high mountains, it could be approached only in two directions; from the north-east toward Matamoras, and from the west by a road, which passed through a rocky gorge, toward Saltillo. The city, nearly two miles in length by one in breadth, had three large plazas or squares; the houses, built in the old Spanish style, were one story high, with strong walls of masonry rising three or four

feet above their flat roofs. The city itself was fortified by massive walls, and on its ramparts were forty-two pieces of heavy artillery, while from the mountain tops, north of the town, the Americans could see that the flat roofs of the stone houses were converted into places of defence, and bristled with musketry, and that the streets were rendered impassable by numerous barricades. On the one side, on a hill, stood the Bishop's Palace, a massive stone building, strongly fortified, on the other were redoubts well manned, in the rear was the river San Juan, south of which towered abrupt mountains. Such was the appearance and strength of Monterey, garrisoned as it was by ten thousand troops, nearly all regulars, under the command of General Ampudia. It was now to be assailed by an army of less than seven thousand men.

CHAP
II

1846.

Ten days elapsed before the vicinity of the town could be thoroughly reconnoitred. In the afternoon, General Worth was ordered, with six hundred and fifty men, to find his way around the hill occupied by the Bishop's Palace, gain the Saltillo road, and carry the works in that direction, while a diversion would be made against the centre and left of the town, by batteries erected during the night. The impetuous Worth, by great exertions, accomplished his purpose, by opening a new road over the mountains. In one instance he came to a small stream in a deep gully, the bridge over which had been broken down. A neighboring field furnished the material ; his men soon filled the chasm, and passed over on a corn-stalk-bridge.

Sept.
19.

The next morning the batteries erected the night before opened upon the enemy, who replied with a hearty good will. At length, after hard fighting, one of the Mexican works of great strength, situated in the lower part of the town, was captured. The brigade under General Quitman, of the Mississippi Volunteers, "carried the work

Sept.
20

**CHAP.
II.**

1846. in handsome style, as well as the strong building in its rear." General Butler had also entered the town on the right ; both of these positions were maintained.

While these operations were in progress, General Worth succeeded in gaining the Saltillo road, and thus cut off the enemy's communication with the west. He carried, in succession, the heights south of the river and road, and immediately turned the guns upon the Bishop's Palace.

Sept.
28.

During the night, the Mexicans evacuated their works in the lower town ; but the next day they kept up a vigorous fire from the Citadel. The following morning at dawn of day, in the midst of a fog and drizzling rain, Worth stormed the crest overlooking the Bishop's Palace, and at noon, the Palace itself fell into the hands of the Americans. Yet the city, with its fortified houses, was far from being taken. "Our troops advanced from house to house, and from square to square, until they reached a street but one square in the rear of the principal plaza, in and near which the enemy's force was mostly concentrated."¹ The Americans obtained the plaza, then forced the houses on either side, and, by means of crowbars, tore down the walls, ascended to the roofs, then drew up one or two field-pieces, and drove the enemy from point to point till the city capitulated.

The carnage was terrible. The shouts of the combatants, mingled with the wail of suffering women and children, presented a scene so heart-rending that even the demon of war might be supposed to turn from it in horror.

The Mexicans had effectually barricaded their streets, but these were almost undisturbed, while the invaders burrowed from house to house. The conflict continued for almost four days, in which the Mexicans fought desperately from behind their barricades on the house-

tops, where they did not hesitate to meet the invaders of their hearthstones hand to hand.

The following morning Ampudia surrendered the town and garrison. The Mexican soldiers were permitted to march out with the honors of war.

General Taylor was assured that those in authority at the city of Mexico were desirous of peace. In consequence of these representations, and also of his want of provisions, he agreed to a cessation of hostilities for eight weeks, if his government should sanction the measure.

He now left General Worth in command of the city, and retired with the main force of the army to Walnut Springs, about three miles distant, and there encamped.

CHAP
II

1846.
Sept.
24.

CHAPTER LII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION—CONTINUED.

The President hopes for Peace.—Santa Anna.—Hostilities to be renewed.—Troops withdrawn from General Taylor.—Letter from General Scott.—Volunteers arrive at Monterey.—Despatches intercepted.—Santa Anna's Plans and Preparations.—Taylor advances to Agua Nueva.—Battle of Buena Vista.—Its Consequences.

CHAP. LII.
1846. THOSE in power at Washington had hoped, indeed, it was confidently predicted, that the war would be ended within "ninety" or "one hundred and twenty days" from its commencement, and a peace concluded, that "should give indemnity for the past and security for the future." These desirable ends were to be attained by treaty, through the means of that incomparable patriot, Santa Anna, then an exile in Havana, who promised, for a certain consideration, if restored to authority in Mexico, to exert his influence in favor of peace. A secret messenger from Washington had made to the "illustrious exile" overtures to this effect, about the time that General Taylor was ordered to the Rio Grande; the special act which led to hostilities.¹

Dec. In his next annual message the President gives some information on this subject. "Santa Anna," said that document, "had expressed his regret that he had subverted the Federal Constitution of his country," and "that he

¹ Benton's "Thirty Years' View," Vol. ii. pp. 561 and 681-2.

was now in favor of its restoration." He was also opposed to a monarchy, or "European interference in the affairs of his country." The President cherished the hope that the exiled chief would "see the ruinous consequences to Mexico of a war with the United States, and that it would be his interest to favor peace;" and further the Message said, that Paredes, then President of Mexico, was "a soldier by profession, and a monarchist in principle;" the sworn enemy of the United States, and urgent to prosecute the war. Santa Anna, on the contrary, was in favor of peace, and only wanted a few millions of dollars to bring about that object so dear to his patriotism; hence the hopes that the war would be brought to a close in three or four months. It was with this expectation that the President, in a special message, asked of Congress an appropriation of two millions of dollars "in order to restore peace, and to advance a portion of the consideration money, for any cession of territory" which Mexico might make. It was also in accordance with this arrangement, that, on the very day Congress, at his suggestion, recognized the "existence of the war," he issued an order to Commodore Connor, who was in command of the fleet in the Gulf, to permit Santa Anna and his suite to return to Mexico. The latter availed himself of this passport to land at Vera Cruz.

CHAP.
LII.

1846.

Aug.
4.May
18.Aug
8.

President Polk had been duped. Santa Anna never intended to fulfil his promise, except so far as to forward his own selfish ends. Instead of endeavoring to conciliate the hostile countries and obtain peace, he devoted all his energies to arouse the war spirit of his countrymen; called upon them to rally under his banner and save their nationality; issued flaming manifestos expressing the most intense hatred of the people of the United States, and his righteous indignation at the wrongs imposed on his country by the "perfidious Yankees."

**CHAP.
LII.**

1846. His extravagant professions of patriotism were not without effect; his countrymen deposed Paredes, and elected him President. Though they had been unfortunate in the field, their spirits revived, and in a few months he had an army of twenty thousand men concentrated at San Luis Potosi.

Dec.

Sept. Meanwhile General Wool had marched from San Antonio. His indefatigable labors had converted the volunteers under his care into well-drilled soldiers. Part of their way was through a region but thinly inhabited and without roads, and across a desert in which they suffered much for water. A laborious march of six weeks brought him to Monclova, seventy miles from Monterey—here he learned of the capture of the latter place. It was now arranged that he should take position in a fertile district in the province of Durango, that would enable him to obtain supplies for his own men, and the army under General Taylor. The inhabitants cheerfully furnished provisions, for which they were paid promptly, and in truth received more favor than they had recently experienced at the hands of their own rulers, as General Wool kept his men under strict discipline and scrupulously protected the persons and property of the Mexicans.

The cessation of hostilities, by orders from Washington, ceased on the 13th of November. Two days later Nov. 15. General Worth took possession of Saltillo, the capital of Coahuila, and General Taylor himself, leaving a garrison in Monterey under General Butler, marched toward the coast in order to attack Tampico, but as that place had already surrendered to Commodore Connor, he took possession of Victoria, the capital of Tamaulipas.

Dec. 29.

The United States government now prepared to invade Mexico by way of Vera Cruz. Just as General Taylor was ready to commence active operations, General Scott was about to sail for that place with the

intention of capturing it, and then, if peace could not be obtained, to march upon the city of Mexico itself.

To carry out the plan of operations, it was necessary to increase the force under General Scott's immediate control. Troops in sufficient numbers could not be drawn from the United States, and a portion of Taylor's army was ordered to join him before Vera Cruz. He thus in a private letter expresses his generous sympathies with the latter: "My dear General," says he, "I shall be obliged to take from you most of the gallant officers and men whom you have so long and so nobly commanded. I am afraid that I shall, by imperious necessity—the approach of the yellow fever on the Gulf coast—reduce you, for a time, to remain on the defensive. This will be infinitely painful to you, and, for that reason, distressing to me. But I rely upon your patriotism to submit to the temporary sacrifice with cheerfulness. No man can better afford to do so. Recent victories place you on that high eminence."

General Taylor, though deeply disappointed, at once complied with the orders of the government, and detached Generals Worth and Quitman with their divisions and the greater part of the volunteers brought by General Wool: in truth, the flower of his army. These troops were speedily on their march from Saltillo toward the Gulf coast. Thus Taylor was left with a very small force. During the month of January, and a part of February, reinforcements of volunteers arrived from the United States, increasing his army to about six thousand; but after garrisoning Monterey and Saltillo, he had only four thousand seven hundred effective men, of whom only six hundred were regulars.

General Scott sent Lieutenant Richey and a guard of men with a despatch to General Taylor. The Lieutenant imprudently left his men, went near a Mexican village, was lassoed, dragged from his horse and murdered,

CHAP.
III.

1846.

1847

CHAP. and his despatches sent to Santa Anna. From these the
LII. Mexican chief learned the plan for invading his country.

1847. He promptly decided upon his course of action—a judicious one. Trusting that the strength of Vera Cruz, and of the Castle San Juan d’Ulloa, would long resist the enemy, and even if they both should be captured, that the fortified places along the road would still retard the advance of the Americans upon the capital, he determined to direct all his force against Taylor, who was now weakened by the loss of the greater part of his army.

Santa Anna’s difficulties were almost insurmountable. The city of Mexico was in confusion, torn by factions. He took most extraordinary and illegal measures to enlist men and obtain the means for their support; raised money by forced loans; made the church property contribute its share of the public expense; the Priests protested and appealed to the superstitions of the people; he immediately seized one of their number, the most factious, and threw him into prison, and the rest were intimidated. Thus, for nearly four months, he exercised an arbitrary, energetic, and iron rule. With a well-organized army of twenty-three thousand men, and twenty pieces of artillery, he commenced his march for San Luis Potosi in the direction of Saltillo, and within sixty miles south of that place he halted and prepared for battle.

Jan.
26.

Rumors reached General Wool that Santa Anna was approaching Saltillo. Major Borland was sent with thirty dragoons to reconnoitre; he was joined on his way by Major Gaines and Captain Cassius M. Clay, with another company of thirty-five men. No enemy appeared, and they pushed on during the day, and carelessly encamped for the night, but, in the morning, found themselves surrounded by one thousand horsemen under the Mexican General Minon. They were taken prisoners, and Santa Anna sent them, as the first fruits of the campaign, to be paraded through the streets of the city of Mexico.

General Taylor now advanced from Monterey, and established his head-quarters at Saltillo. Leaving there his stores, he made a rapid march to Agua Nueva, eighteen miles in advance, on the road to San Luis Potosi, thus to secure the southern extremity of the defile through the Sierra Nevada, rather than the northern one at Monterey. At the former point the Mexicans must fight or starve, because of the barrenness of the country in their rear ; while, had he remained at Monterey, Santa Anna could have had his head-quarters at Saltillo, and drawn his supplies from that comparatively fertile district.

CHAP

LII

1847

Feb

4

Scouts reported that General Minon with a large body of cavalry was to the left of Agua Nueva, and that the American position could be turned. Companies of dragoons from time to time were sent in different directions to reconnoitre. They at length learned from a "Mexican, dressed as a peon," that Santa Anna had arrived in the neighborhood with twenty thousand men, and that he intended to attack the Americans the next morning.

The clouds of dust toward the east, and the signal fires that blazed upon the tops of the distant hills, seemed to confirm the report. But that daring Texan ranger, Major McCulloch, was not satisfied ; and, accompanied by some dozen volunteers, he determined to ascertain the truth of the "peon's" story. They pushed on across a desert of thirty-six miles to Encarnacion, where they arrived at midnight, and found the enemy in force. Sending back all his men, save one, McCulloch entered their lines, and, undetected, went from point to point, obtained more correct information of their numbers, then passed out, and escaped to Agua Nueva.

On the reception of this intelligence, Taylor, leaving a small guard as an outpost, retired up the valley in expectation that Santa Anna in hot haste would pursue him, while he himself should await his approach at a point, which, in passing, he had already noticed. The conjecture was correct.

CHAP.
LII.

1847.

Santa Anna knew well the position of the Americans. He thought they would not retreat, and he resolved to surprise them. But between him and Agua Neuva there intervened fifty miles, the last thirty-six of which were across a desert. His soldiers were each supplied with water and provisions; in the morning the march commenced, and at noon they entered the desert; in the night they halted for a while to refresh, and at dawn they were to attack the unsuspecting foe. The march was rapid and secret; the silence of the desert was not disturbed—not a signal was used, not a drum beat. After so much toil he was sadly disappointed; his enemy had disappeared. He firmly believed the Americans were in full flight, in order to avoid a battle. Some days before he had sent General Minon with his cavalry across the mountains, to their rear, and he now hoped that Minon would be able to hold the fugitives in check until he himself could come up with his full force. He halted only to refresh his wearied soldiers, and then pursued with all his vigor.

The ground chosen by General Taylor on which to make a stand, was the pass—since so famous—known among the Mexicans as Las Angosturas, or the Narrows. It was at the north end of a valley, about twelve miles long, and formed by mountains on either side. Here an ascent rises to a plateau, a little more than a mile wide, on each side of which rugged mountains, inaccessible to artillery or cavalry, rise from two to three thousand feet. Numerous ravines or deep gullies, formed by the torrents rushing from the mountains during the rainy season, rendered the surface in front and on the sides very uneven. Neither flank could be turned except by light troops clambering up the mountains. The plateau was somewhat rough, with here and there open and smooth places, as well as clumps of thorny chaparral. The road through

the defile passes much nearer to the west than to the east side of the Narrows. On this plateau, one mile south of the hacienda or plantation known as *Buena Vista*, the American army awaited the approach of the Mexicans.

Early the following morning clouds of dust, extending far down the valley to the south, made known that the Mexican army was near and in motion. Soon after, its cavalry came in sight and halted for the infantry and artillery to come up.

The long roll of the drum called the Americans to arms; they obeyed the call with hearty cheers. It was the anniversary of the birth of Washington, and on the impulse his name was adopted as their watchword. They were placed under peculiar circumstances. A few months before, they were quietly engaged in the avocations of civil life; enthusiasm had induced them to volunteer, and now they were on foreign soil, far from their homes. With the exception of a few hundreds, they were all for the first time going into battle, with the prospect that to them defeat would be certain ruin; they were about to meet an army, in its numbers nearly five to one of their own. In the unequal contest, their only hope was in their own bravery, and in the skill of their commander.

Feb.
22.

The cautious Taylor had gone to Saltillo, six miles distant, to superintend in person the defences designed to secure the stores from capture. General Wool was left in temporary command at the Narrows, and he directed the arrangements of the troops.

Captain Washington's battery was placed to command the road or pass, the key to the position of the army. Colonel Hardin's First Illinois regiment was on a ridge to the left of the pass, and Colonel McKee's Second Kentucky on another ridge in their rear. To the left beyond these was posted the Second Illinois, under Colonel Bissell, while still further in the same direction, under the mountain, were stationed Colonels Yell and Humphrey

CHAP. **Marshall, with the Arkansas and Kentucky volunteers**
LI
1847. The remainder of the army, including Lane's Indiana brigade ; the Mississippi riflemen, Colonel Jefferson Davis ; two squadrons of dragoons, and Sherman and Bragg's batteries of flying artillery, were placed in reserve on the rear of the plateau.

During the morning, and beyond the range of the American artillery, the main body of the Mexicans was also arranged in order of battle. Their right, a battery of sixteen-pounders, rested on the base of the mountains. These guns were manned by the San Patricio regiment, composed of Irish and German deserters from the American army. Two divisions, Pacheco's and Lombardini's, extended in the rear of this battery ; guns, twelve and eight-pounders, were posted to the left, and a battalion occupied a hill in advance of the main line, directly opposite the pass. Their cavalry was stationed in the rear of either flank, and to be unencumbered, the baggage of the whole army was left many miles in the rear.

About noon a Mexican officer brought a note to General Taylor. In pompous terms Santa Anna summoned him to surrender at discretion, and trust himself to be treated "with the consideration belonging to the Mexican character." In a brief and courteous note the American commander declined the proposal.

Santa Anna noticed that the mountains to the east, beyond the American left, were unguarded, and he sent General Ampudia, with light troops, around a spur to ascend them from the south side. The movement was observed, and Colonel Marshall dismounted his own riflemen and those of the Indiana battalion, and commenced to ascend to the crest of the ridge. As the lines gradually approached each other, skirmishing began. The Mexicans kept up a continuous roar of musketry, while the Ameri-

cans lay among the rocks, whence could be heard the sharp crack of their rifles.

The Mexican batteries occasionally threw a shot, but the Americans on the plateau remained silent ; they wished a closer conflict. They were not idle, however, but threw up temporary works to protect Washington's battery in front, and also to the right of the pass close up to the base of the mountain. Thus passed the afternoon, with only severe skirmishing on the mountain sides. When night came on the Americans were recalled to the plain. The Mexicans remained in position, and the night passed without any important demonstration on either side.

General Minon had passed through the defile, Palomas Adentro, and in the afternoon appeared with his numerous cavalry upon the plains north of Saltillo. Here Santa Anna sent him orders to remain, and be in readiness to fall upon the American forces, which he promised to either capture or put to flight the next morning.

The appearance of Minon caused no little anxiety, and General Taylor, after night-fall, hastened to Saltillo with aid, to assure himself that any attack upon the stores would be repelled.

During the night Ampudia was reinforced ; and at dawn he renewed the attack, and stretched his line farther to the right ; but Colonel Marshall, with a portion of the Illinois volunteers, maintained his position, though pressed by superior numbers.

Soon after sunrise, movements in the Mexican ranks indicated that a grand attack was in contemplation. Their strength was nearly all thrown toward the American left, where, owing to the smallness of their number and the extent of the ground, the troops were placed at greater intervals. The San Patricio battery was also brought forward and placed on the ridge in front of the

CHAP
LII.

1847

Feb
23

CHAP.
LII.**1847.**

plateau, while three powerful columns of attack were arranged—columns composed of the best soldiers of the army, and led by its most experienced leaders. As the foremost column advanced, General Lane ordered Captain O'Brien to hold them in check with his guns, and the Second Indiana regiment to support him. O'Brien's shot ploughed through their ranks from front to rear, yet the Mexicans crowded on till the head of the column was literally broken, and thrown into confusion, and refused to advance. Lane now ordered O'Brien to move forward fifty yards nearer the enemy. The Indiana regiment followed, but came within range of a Mexican battery, which opened upon their flank. They were ordered to retreat from the face of such overpowering numbers ; the retreat unfortunately soon became a flight, which extended quite beyond the enemy's guns. Now upon O'Brien's artillery was concentrated the entire fire of the Mexican battery and Pacheco's column. His horses were soon disabled ; not a man of his company but was either killed or wounded ; he was forced to fall back and leave to the enemy one of his guns as a trophy—a trophy which they seemed to appreciate very highly.

These forces now advanced and formed a juncture with the division of Lombardini ; the entire body then moved against the plateau, and opened a heavy fire upon the Second Illinois regiment under Colonel Bissell. Four companies of Arkansas volunteers had been directed to dismount and gain the plateau. They reached it in the midst of this conflict, but they soon became panic-stricken and fled. The Illinoisians, now unsupported, slowly fell back. While this was in progress, a portion of the Kentuckians were forced back, and Ampudia, with his light troops, came down the mountain and completely turned the American left. The third heavy column, under Moray Villamil, pressed on against Washington's battery on the road. He waited till they came within close range, then

poured in his shot with surprising rapidity and terrible effect ; the head of the column melted away before the storm, the whole mass was thrown into confusion, swayed from side to side, then broke and fled, leaving the plain covered with a multitude of slain and wounded.

CHAP
LII

1847.

Just as the three columns of the enemy had failed to force the American centre on the plateau, General Taylor, accompanied by fresh troops, arrived upon the field ; his presence was needed. He brought with him every available man that could be spared from Saltillo. They were Colonel May's dragoons, a portion of the Mississippi riflemen, and of the Arkansas cavalry.

The natural advantages of the position had been lost ; success depended alone upon the bravery of the troops ; many of the officers had fallen, and whole companies of the volunteers, both infantry and horse, had left the field, and were in disastrous retreat toward Buena Vista, in spite of the efforts of General Wool and Colonel Davis, and other officers to restrain them.

The Mexican infantry, supported by their fine cavalry, right and left, which made shock after shock, continued to press on. By great exertions Davis rallied the majority of his regiment, and a part of the Second Indiana ; they advanced at a quick step, but silent until within rifle shot ; then gave the approaching foe a destructive fire. The Mexicans did not slacken their pace till they came almost to the edge of the last ravine between them and their enemy, when they halted. The Americans came up to the opposite edge ; thus for a while the two forces confronted each other and fired across the ravine. Presently a shout along the American line rose high and clear above the din ; they delivered their fire, dashed into the ravine, lingered a moment to reload, then rose upon the opposite crest, in the face of the enemy, and with defiant shouts urged home their fire more fearfully than ever. The

CHAP. LII. **Mexicans, apparently astounded at the apparition which**
1847. was sending death through their ranks, wavered for a few
minutes, and then in utter confusion rolled back upon the
column which was advancing to their support.

Scarcely was Colonel Davis free from this when he was assailed by a force coming in another direction. A thousand lancers who had not been engaged approached along the broad ridge ; they were well supported by infantry. To meet this new enemy Davis, was aided by the Second and Third Indiana regiments. He extended his line across the ridge, stationed Captain Sherman on his left, and placed his men in the form of the letter V, the opening toward the approaching lancers. They commenced to advance at a gallop as if to charge their way through the centre. But as they drew near they gradually slackened their pace ; they expected the Americans would fire, and then they would ride them down before they could reload their pieces. The latter fired not a gun, but awaited their approach. At length the lancers came to a walk at the opening of the angle. The silence seemed to fill them with awe ; they were within eighty yards of a thousand marksmen, every one of whom could take deliberate aim. At the word, every musket and rifle was poised—a moment intervened—then went forth the messengers of death. The entire front ranks of the lancers were riddled, not a ball appeared to have failed of its errand. This was followed by grape and cannister from Sherman's battery. The dead and wounded men and horses made a barricade of struggling life, over which they could not pass. Even at this time, their overpowering numbers, had it not been for this obstruction, might have enabled them to break through the line and gain the road in the rear of the plateau, and thus have modified or changed the fortune of the day. But those in the rear were appalled at the destruction of their companions, and the whole mass fled headlong from the field. As in every

other instance the Americans, for want of numbers and cavalry, could not pursue them, and the fugitives passed south of the plateau to be re-formed for another attack.

CHAP
LII

1847.

Meantime a squadron of cavalry under Torrejon skirted the mountain base to the left, and penetrated to Buena Vista, whither the commands of Marshall and Yell had retired. General Taylor sent all the cavalry he could spare, under Colonel May, to reinforce that point. Torrejon fell back on his approach, and May returned to the plateau. Then Torrejon advanced again: this time the volunteers received him with a scattering fire; but the Mexicans, confident in numbers, rode on rapidly toward the hacienda; there they were held in check by a portion of the two battalions. It was here that Colonel Yell, as he made a charge, was killed at the head of his men. Torrejon himself was wounded, and Colonel May made his appearance again, this time with two field-pieces, and the Mexicans separated into two divisions and retreated out of danger.

On the plateau the battle had raged in one continuous cannonade: the Mexicans had on the ridge in front, a battery of eighteen and twenty-four pounders, principally manned by the San Patricio regiment, yet they could not silence the American guns. At this point there was a temporary lull in the storm.

But on the east side of the valley, to the rear of the plateau, a severe conflict was in progress. One of the Mexican divisions retreating from Buena Vista, had united with a large force sent by Santa Anna to make its way on the extreme left round to the American rear.

Colonel May with his dragoons and a portion of the Illinoisians and Indianians was engaged in the unequal contest. General Taylor sent to his aid a portion of the artillery and the dragoons, with some of the volunteer cavalry.

CHAP.
LII.

1847.

They soon accomplished the object by cutting off the retreat of the Mexicans who had passed so far beyond the American left. They were driven against the base of the mountain and thrown into inextricable confusion. Bragg advanced within close canister range, and with their wonted rapidity his guns played upon them: the shot tore and crashed through the bewildered multitude, and those next the mountain endeavored to escape by clamoring up its sides. The whole force, about five thousand, became utterly helpless, while the wounded and dying were increasing at a fearful rate: the horses frantic with pain and terror added to the confusion. A few minutes more and they must have laid down their arms; at this crisis, as if to stay the arm of death, a white flag was seen approaching from General Taylor's position. When it came near the artillery ceased to fire.

Three Mexican officers had appeared as if for a parley; they professed to bear a message from the Mexican chief. When brought into the presence of General Taylor they wished to know "what he wanted." The reply was the surrender of the Mexican army. They asked time for consideration; the trick was not suspected, and the request was granted. A messenger bearing a white flag was hastened with orders to Captain Bragg to cease firing, as the Mexicans were about to lay down their arms.

General Wool was deputed to accompany the officers to Santa Anna, who took care not to be seen. As Wool perceived that the Mexicans continued to fire, though the Americans had ceased, he declared the conference at an end, and returned to his own army.

Meanwhile, under the protection of the flag of peace, the body of Mexicans in trouble stealthily crept along the base of the mountain out of danger, and joined their main army south of the plateau. Thus, whether designed or not, Santa Anna had extricated his soldiers, and had also learned from his spies—the Mexican officers—the small

number of American troops—only three regiments of infantry and three guns—on the plateau, and that their main portion was far to the left, whither they had driven the Mexican right wing. Shielding his men from sight by ravines and spurs of the mountain, he had for hours been concentrating all his strength for a final assault upon the American central position at the pass. At several points he had met with partial success ; but in the main his plans had been frustrated by the indomitable courage, rapid movements, and hard fighting of his opponents.

CHAP
LII

1847.

Having concentrated his forces, he now brought his reserve into action, aided by the troops of the right wing which had just been rescued from peril. The whole force—twelve thousand strong—the front regiments composed of veterans, with General Perez at their head, moved up the ascent from the valley. The scattered companies (Illinois and Kentucky volunteers) in advance of the line were taken by surprise at the sudden appearance of the enemy in such numbers ; the enemy, which an hour or two before they had seen in utter confusion, retreating from the field. The multitude, pouring in volley after volley of musketry, pressed on and compelled these companies to retire toward the lines. O'Brien was left almost alone with his artillery, yet for a time he maintained his place. His shot buried themselves in the ranks of the approaching enemy ; but the mass closed up the gaps and steadily came nearer and nearer. For round shot he substituted canister, and they were checked for a time ; but it was their last struggle to secure the field. Trusting to numbers and heedless of death, the mass again moved on. Presently there was not an infantry soldier to support the guns, nor a horse to draw them ; still the gunners stood to their places, and retreated only as their pieces recoiled. At length overtaken every officer or gunner either killed

CHAP. or wounded, O'Brien himself among the latter, they aban-
LII doned them to the enemy.

1847. Meanwhile the companies of volunteers took refuge in a deep ravine to the right of the pass. The Mexicans lined its crest and kept upon them a continuous volley of musketry, to which they could scarcely reply, while their cavalry dashed forward to the mouth of the ravine to cut off their retreat. Fortunately the route of the cavalry brought them within range of Washington's battery at the pass. His guns were immediately brought to bear upon them ; they recoiled, relinquished their object, and began to retreat, while, by throwing shot over the heads of the volunteers who were now moving out, he harassed them exceedingly. The Mexican infantry, now unopposed, descended into the ravine, and cruelly murdered every wounded man they could find.

It was in this desperate encounter that Colonels Hardin, McKee, and Henry Clay, junior, (son of the distinguished statesman,) and great numbers of brave and generous men were slain.

The crisis of the conflict was near. O'Brien overcome there was no one to oppose ; and, encouraged by their success, the Mexicans pushed on with unusual vigor. At the commencement of this last attack the Americans were more or less scattered over the plateau and on the extremes of the field ; but the heavy roar of the battle made known that the issue of the day was about to be determined, and they hastened, of their own accord, to the post of danger.

It was an hour of intense anxiety to General Taylor, as he saw this unexpected host advance in such order and with such determination. The battle had already lasted eight hours ; the toil of so many rapid movements over the rough field had wearied his men, while the approaching enemy's force was fresh, and in number four to one



Harve Evely

of his own. Was it possible to hold them in check till his own troops could come up ? He sent messenger after messenger to urge them on. In one direction could be seen Bragg, and in another Sherman, driving with whip and spur the jaded horses attached to their batteries ; while in the distance to the left of the pass, could be seen the Mississippians and Indianians, under their officers Davis and Lane, rapidly advancing, now in sight and now disappearing as they crossed the deep ravines.

CHAP
LII.

1847

Bragg was the first to come up. As he drew near he sent to ask for infantry to support his guns ; but Taylor could only send him word that not a man could be had ; he must fight to the death. The Mexicans were rushing on, and before he could unlimber his guns they were within a few yards of their muzzles ; but his men seemed to be inspired with an energy beyond human, and with a rapidity greater than ever, discharge followed discharge. The enemy faltered, as if waiting for them to cease but for a moment, that they might rush forward and capture them. No such moment was granted ; they still hesitated, and were thrown into confusion. By this time Sherman came up and opened with his wonted effect ; in a few minutes more Washington's battery at the pass moved forward and did the same. Davis and Lane had just closed with the enemy's right flank and commenced to pour in their fire. The Mexicans recoiled on all sides ; they could not carry the pass ; hope seemed to desert every breast, and pell-mell they rushed from the field.

Thus ended the battle of Buena Vista. It had lasted ten hours ; had been a series of encounters, in different parts of the field, each one severe in itself, but indecisive in result. Never before had an American army contended with such odds, and under disadvantages so great. It was won by the superior handling of the flying artillery, which thinned and broke the foremost ranks of the enemy before they could bring their superior numbers to bear.

CHAP.
LII.

1847. When repulsed, they invariably fell back out of danger, to be again re-formed for another attack, while the Americans, for want of cavalry and sufficient numbers, could not pursue and disperse them beyond the power of rallying. On the part of the latter the day was one of unremitting toil ; their fewness of numbers, the extent of the field, the roughness of the ground, and the numerous attacks, forced them to be continually in rapid and laborious motion. General Taylor was in the midst of flying balls for eight hours, only one of which passed through his coat. He was ably seconded by his officers, not one of whom swerved from a post of danger nor neglected a duty—especially could this be said of General Wool, who seemed to be at every point where he was specially needed. The superior skill with which the American guns were handled was due to the exertions of the West Point officers, who spared no effort to infuse into the ranks their own spirit of discipline ; and equal honor is due to the volunteers, who, with but few exceptions, cheerfully submitted to the requisite drudgery of drill.

The Mexicans hoped to win the battle by musketry and charges of cavalry ; their heavy guns they did not bring upon the field, but placed them in battery in front of the pass.

The influence of this battle was more important than any one of the war. It destroyed that fictitious prestige which Santa Anna had obtained over his countrymen by his vain boastings and unsparing censure of their previous commanders, and it greatly increased their dread of the invader's artillery ; henceforth they met them only from behind defences, and avoided them in the open field.

Night closed in. The Americans took every precaution to repel the attack which was expected the next morning. Strong pickets were posted to prevent the enemy from passing round to the right or left. The troops

having been supplied with their rations, remained on the field for the night. Fresh companies were brought from the rear to supply the place of those who took charge of the wounded, who were carried in wagons to Saltillo. The loss of the day had been two hundred and sixty-seven killed, and four hundred and fifty-six wounded.

CHAP
LII.

1847.

Feb.
24.

The morning dawned, but not a Mexican could be seen. Santa Anna had retreated, leaving his wounded to their fate, and his dead unburied. More than two thousand of his men, including many officers of high rank, lay scattered over the field.

Scouts hurried on to reconnoitre ; in an hour or two they returned with information that he was far on his way toward Agua Nueva. General Taylor and his staff immediately moved on in the same direction, but sent in advance Major Bliss, with a proposition to Santa Anna for an exchange of prisoners, and a request that he would send for his wounded, as well as another assurance that the American government was desirous of peace. An exchange of prisoners took place, but as Santa Anna professed to have no means to remove his wounded, he left them to be cared for by the Americans ; as to the proposition for peace he replied, in his usual style of bravado, that he should prosecute the war until the invaders had left his country.

The Mexican soldiers were in a truly deplorable condition ; they were without hospital supplies, and almost literally without food, and no means to obtain it—a desert before them, and a victorious enemy in their rear. Santa Anna urged on his retreat toward San Luis Potosi, whence one month before he had set out sure of victory ; desertions had now reduced his great army to a mere remnant, and that discouraged by defeat, while confidence in his generalship was gone. In addition, signs of another revolution were appearing in the city of Mexico, by which his enemies might triumph.

CHAP.
LII.

1847.
Feb.
27.

General Taylor advanced to Agua Nueva, thence two days later he detached Colonel Belknap, with the dragoons and a regiment of infantry—transported in wagons across the desert—to surprise the rear guard of the Mexican army at Encarnacion. The feat was successfully accomplished. All along the way from the battle-field were found multitudes of poor Mexican soldiers, left by their heartless companions to die of their wounds, hunger, and fatigue. As soon as possible the humane Taylor sent them provisions, and had those that could be removed conveyed to Saltillo and placed under the care of the American surgeons.

While these operations were in progress, the two Mexican generals, Urrea and Romero, with their corps of cavalry, had appeared on the line of communication between Saltillo and the Rio Grande. They had captured some wagons, taken some prisoners, and spread alarm all along the line. A sufficient force was now sent to chastise them, but they rapidly retreated out of danger by the pass of Tula, leaving the valley of the Rio Grande to the Americans.

Mar.
30.

General Taylor, by easy stages, retraced his steps, and encamped once more at the Walnut Springs, near Monterey.

Whilst the line of communication was broken, vague rumors reached the United States, first, that Santa Anna was approaching Monterey with a large army, then, that the American army had been overpowered. These apprehensions were greatly increased by a volunteer Colonel at Camargo, who, in his alarm, sent an urgent appeal for fifty thousand men to be sent immediately to the seat of war. Presently came intelligence of the battle of Buena Vista; and the intense anxiety of the people was changed to admiration for the men who, under such trying circumstances, had maintained the honor of their



J. Taylor-

country. Gen. Taylor, of whom so little had been known before the commencement of this war, rose higher and higher in public estimation. Some months later, when he returned to the United States, he was received with demonstrations of the highest respect.

CHAP
LII.

1847.

It was an era in the education of young women in the United States, when in 1837 Mount Holyoke Seminary, in Massachusetts, began its grand work. This institution was the outgrowth of the untiring and consecrated zeal of Miss Mary Lyon, who was born in the town of Buckland in that State. Miss Lyon was very remarkable for her power of acquiring knowledge, and also for her skill in imparting the same to pupils. Because of limited means, her very hard lot in obtaining an education—which she did by her own exertions—suggested the field of her usefulness and appealed to her generous nature, and she devised a plan by which she hoped that girls situated as she had been could in part support themselves while being educated, by performing a portion of the household work of the institution.

1797.
Feb. 28.

In that day—to their shame be it said—legislatures appropriated funds only to colleges for young men, and Miss Lyon was forced to appeal to private Christian benevolence. After years of her persistent efforts, funds were secured; a substantial building was erected and equipped; and Holyoke opened its first session with eighty pupils. Miss Lyon presided over the institution till her death in 1849; this was after thirty-five years of active teaching and unremitting toil.

1849.

The reasons for founding Holyoke Seminary still remained, and that this fact elicited the practical sympathy of the benevolent, let our Vassars, Wellesleys, Smiths, Pittsburg College, and many other institutions for young women bear witness.

CHAPTER LIII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION—CONTINUED.

Emigration to Oregon.—John C. Fremont; his Explorations; his difficulties with the Mexican Governor.—American Settlers in alarm.—California free from Mexican Rule.—Monterey on the Pacific captured.—Commodores Sloat and Stockton.—Kearney's Expedition.—Santa Fé taken; a Government organized.—Doniphan's Expedition.—Various Conflicts.—Chihuahua occupied.—An Insurrection; its Suppression.—Trial of Fremont.

CHAP. LIII.
1842. THE importance of securing Oregon by settlement had especially attracted the attention of the people of the Western States. The stories of hunters, and the glowing descriptions given in the newspapers of that distant region, imbued the minds of the adventurous with an enthusiasm as ardent as that which glowed in the breasts of the earlier explorers and settlers of this country two and a half centuries before. A thousand emigrants, consisting of men, their wives and children, driving before them their flocks and herds, their only weapon the trusty rifle—alike to protect from savage violence and to procure sustenance from the wandering droves of buffalo and deer—set out from the confines of Missouri. They passed up the long eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains, over them through the South Pass, thence to Lewis' River and down it to the Columbia, on whose shores they found a resting place, after a toilsome journey of six months, through an untrodden mountainous region.

These emigrants were followed the next year by

another company, consisting of two thousand, who passed over the same route. CHAP
LIII.

These enterprising settlers, with the few who had preceded them, labored under many difficulties, as the United States government did not exercise the jurisdiction which it claimed over the territory. A bill introduced into the Senate, granted lands to actual settlers, and made provision to maintain their rights as citizens by extending over them the laws of the territory of Iowa. Though this bill passed only the Senate, it gave encouragement to those persons who desired to emigrate to the banks of the Columbia. A colony thus planted by private enterprise, and thus slightly encouraged by the government, became the germ of another State, (Oregon) now added to the Union. 1848.

It was in connection with this awakened spirit of emigration that Colonel John C. Fremont, then a lieutenant, made his first exploring expedition. He was a young man, once friendless and unknown, but had risen by his own talents and industry, and on the recommendation of Poinsett, then Secretary of War, had been appointed in the Topographical Engineers by President Jackson. Fremont solicited and obtained permission from the government to explore the Rocky Mountains and their passes, but at this time with special reference to the South Pass and its vicinity. In six months he returned; he had accurately determined the location of that Pass, which now became a fixed point in the path of emigration to Oregon. 1859

Soon after his return, Fremont again asked for orders to prosecute still further explorations in that distant region. They were given; but after his preparations were made, and he and his party had reached the frontiers of Missouri, the government countermanded his orders, on

CHAP.
LIII.
1848. the singular plea that he had armed his party, in addition to their rifles, with a small mountain howitzer. But fortunately for science and the country, the letter containing the order came to Mrs. Fremont, whom he had requested to examine his letters and forward only those he ought to receive. She deemed the government countermand one that he ought not to receive, and Fremont knew nothing of its existence until he returned from his eventful tour. On his return he was received with honor, his conduct approved, and on the recommendation of the Secretary of War, William Wilkins, the brevet of captain was conferred upon him by President Tyler.

He had received special orders to survey the route of travel from the frontiers of Missouri to the tide-waters of the Columbia. This was accomplished by the first of November, after six months' labor, though often he diverged from the main route to make useful observations. He now resolved to return immediately, and when on the way to explore the vast territory which must lie between the route he had passed over and the Pacific. To pass through this region in midwinter was no easy matter. Soon deep snows appeared on the highlands, and the party descended into the valley, now known as the Great Basin, out of which flows no stream. On the west, the mountains loomed up with their snowy tops ; every thing was strange ; the Indians, terrified at the approach of white men, fled : a desert appeared, and with it the vision of starvation and death. No place could they find, as they had hoped, where they might winter and derive their sustenance from hunting the animals of the forest. They passed down to the latitude of San Francisco, as found by astronomical observations ; but between them and that place, the nearest point where they could obtain aid from civilized man, rose mountains, their snowy tops piercing the clouds ; their sides frowning precipices thousands of feet high. No Indian would act as a guide through their passes. The

whole party, by excessive toil and want of food, were reduced to skeletons, both men and horses. Finally they "crawled over the Sierra Nevada," and arrived at the head-waters of the Sacramento. "In this eventful exploration, all the great features of the western slope of our continent were brought to light—the Great Salt Lake, the Utah Lake, the Little Salt Lake—at all which places, then desert, the Mormons now are; the Sierra Nevada, then solitary in the snow, now crowded with Americans, digging gold from its banks; the beautiful valleys of the Sacramento and San Joaquin, then alive with wild horses, elk, deer, and wild fowls, now smiling with American cultivation. The Great Basin itself, and its contents; the Three Parks; the approximation of the great rivers which, rising together in the central region of the Rocky Mountains, go off east and west towards the rising and the setting sun,—all these, and other strange features of a new region, more Asiatic than American, were brought to light, and revealed to public view in the results of this exploration." ¹

CHAP.
LIII.
—
1843.

In May, Fremont set out on his third expedition to explore still further the Great West. There were now indications that war would soon result between Mexico and the United States. But to avoid exciting the suspicions of the Mexicans, he obtained permission from General De Castro, commandant at Monterey on the Pacific, to pass the following winter in the uninhabitable portion of the valley of the San Joaquin. But before long, De Castro professed to believe that his object was not scientific exploration, but to excite a rebellion among the American settlers, and he undertook to either drive him out of the country or capture the whole party. A messenger, secretly sent by the United States consul at

1845

CHAP. LIII. Monterey, Mr. Larkin, suddenly appeared in his camp and informed him of these unfriendly designs. Fremont im-

1845. diately chose a strong position on a mountain, raised the American flag, and he and his sixty determined followers resolved to sell their lives as dearly as possible. After waiting four days, as De Castro hesitated to attack his camp, he came down from the mountain and set out for Oregon through the region of the Tlamath lakes.

1846. During the former part of May he was overtaken by a United States officer, Lieutenant Gillespie, who brought a letter of introduction from James Buchanan, Secretary of State, and verbal instructions to the effect that he should counteract any foreign scheme on California, and conciliate the good will of the inhabitants toward the United States.

Fremont was now on the confines of Oregon, but at once he turned back to California. When he arrived in the valley of the Sacramento, he found the whole community in a state of great excitement. Among the Mexicans two projects were in contemplation: one to massacre the American settlers; the other to place California under British protection, and thus shield themselves against the arms of the United States in case of a war with Mexico.

A deputation from the American settlers hastened to lay before him a statement of these facts; and, in addition, that the Indians had been incited against them; that General De Castro was on his march to attack them, and also that a British fleet was daily expected upon the coast.

Though the countries were at peace when he left home, the approach of De Castro with a hostile army demanded decisive measures, and Fremont accepted the trust in self-defence. The American settlers flocked to his camp, brought their horses, their ammunition, their provisions

and submitted cheerfully to the strictness of military discipline.

CHAP
LIII.

In one month's time, after a few conflicts, Mexican rule was at an end in northern California. The flag of independence was raised, its device a grizzly bear—indicative of indomitable courage—while General De Castro was retreating, and all other schemes entirely prostrated.

1846.
June
1.
July
4.

Commodore Sloat, commanding on the Pacific, received directions from the Secretary of the Navy, George Bancroft. "If you ascertain with certainty," said the Secretary, "that Mexico has declared war against the United States, you will at once possess yourself of the port of San Francisco, and blockade or occupy such other ports as your force may permit."

The commodore was at Mazatlan, and a British squadron, under Admiral Seymour, was there also. The former, from certain indications, suspected he was watched; if so, he determined to foil the admiral. Accordingly, he weighed anchor and sailed west as if going to the Sandwich Islands, Seymour followed, but in the night Sloat tacked and ran up the coast to Monterey, while Seymour continued on to the islands. Sloat arrived at Monterey and offered the usual civilities to the town; they were declined on a frivolous excuse. It was evident that his presence was not agreeable. Five days later he heard of the movements of Fremont and the settlers, and he at once took possession of the town. Then he sent a courier to the latter, who hastened with his mounted men to join the commodore. They were mutually astonished on finding that neither of them had acted under direct orders from their own government. The flag of independent California was now supplanted by the colors of the United States.

July
7.

Commodore Stockton in a few days came into the harbor, to whom Sloat turned over the command, as he himself intended to return home. The next day came Admiral

July
15

CHAP.
LIII.

1846.

Aug
17.

Seymour in his flag-ship. He saw with surprise the American flag floating over the town, the American riflemen encamped near by, and an American fleet in the harbor. One month later Stockton and Fremont took possession of Los Angeles, the capital of Upper California.

California had been for some time in a half revolutionary state. The inhabitants were dissatisfied with Mexican rule. Some wished to join the United States, and some to seek the protection of Great Britain. The conciliatory course pursued by Fremont did much in winning the Californians to the American standard.

In the latter part of July the "Army of the West," under Colonel Kearney, consisting of eighteen hundred men, was concentrated near Bent's Fort on the Arkansas. The Secretary of War, William L. Marcy, had given him instructions to take possession of New Mexico and Upper California, to establish therein temporary civil governments, to make known to the inhabitants the designs of the United States to provide them with free government, and that they would be called upon to elect representatives to their own territorial Legislatures.

The expedition moved rapidly toward Santa Fé, the capital of New Mexico. The population of that province was miscellaneous in its character; Indians, New Mexicans, (a mixture of Spanish and Indian,) some American settlers, and a few of Spanish blood. The mass of the population was half-civilized, by whom honor and morality were reckoned of little worth. They were cowardly, treacherous and cruel; ignorant and superstitious. The Indians, for the most part, held the idolatrous notions of the ancient Aztecs, and were so debased that a slight reward would insure the committal of almost any crime.

The governor, Armigo, a bad man and a bad ruler, made an effort to meet the invaders. He assembled about four thousand men, of all grades, and, with six field-pieces,

took position in a mountain gorge some fifteen miles in advance of Santa Fé ; but for some reason, best known to himself, he abandoned his strong post and rapidly retreated southward, carrying off his own property, and leaving the people and the public interests to take care of themselves.

CHAP
LIII

1846.

Kearney entered Santa Fé and was courteously received by the lieutenant governor, Vigil. The following day the people assembled in the plaza and had made known to them the designs of the United States government. The majority professed themselves pleased with the change. In a few days the chiefs of the Pueblo Indians also gave in their adhesion to the new order of things.

Aug.
18.

Kearney erected and garrisoned a fort, and in the meanwhile made an excursion one hundred and fifty miles to the south to meet a force which a false rumor said was marching against him. On his return he established a government, at the head of which he placed Charles Bent, a worthy citizen of the territory, as governor. After pledging himself to protect the inhabitants against the inroads of the Eutaw and Navajoe Indians, he set out for California. His company consisted of only three hundred dragoons, but on the route, when near the river Gila, he met a messenger—the celebrated guide and pioneer Kit Carson—who brought intelligence of what had recently taken place in California under Stockton and Fremont. He now sent back two companies of dragoons under Major Sumner, and continued on himself with the remainder.

Thus, within three months after the orders had been issued at Washington, a force had been organized ; a march of a thousand miles accomplished ; and territory subdued, and a new government established on apparently a stable foundation. A half-civilized and vicious population are not fit subjects for self-government, and this in a short time proved a failure. Had Kearney remained to preserve discipline, that result might have

CHAP. been different, or at least delayed. The town was filled
LIII. with gambling-houses, and grog-shops, and haunts of
 1846. every vice, while the free manners of the volunteers excited against themselves the hatred of the inhabitants, who laid their plans for revenge, and only waited an opportunity to carry them into effect.

Nov. Colonel Kearney gave directions to Colonel Doniphan, whom he left at Santa Fé, to enter the country of the Navajoe Indians, living on the waters of the Gulf of California, and induce them to make peace. Doniphan, with a thousand Missouri volunteers, in three divisions and by as many routes, entered the territory of the hostile tribe, and obtained from them a treaty, by which they agreed to refrain from depredations upon the people of New Mexico. This march, so remarkable, was made in the winter, across mountains covered with snow, and through an unknown region inhabited by barbarous tribes. Doniphan delayed but a short time in negotiating with the Indians, then he passed on to the south-east to meet General Wool at Chihuahua.

1847. The absence of so many men with Doniphan afforded the looked-for opportunity to commence an insurrection in New Mexico. The plot was deep laid and kept a profound secret. Suddenly Governor Bent was murdered, with five other officers of the territory, some of whom were Mexicans, at Taos, fifty miles north of Santa Fé. The same day witnessed the murder of many others in the upper valley of the Rio Grande.

Jan. Colonel Price, of the Missouri mounted volunteers, was at Santa Fé with the main force, while detachments were scattered over the country grazing their horses on the plains. With only three hundred and fifty men, Price hastened to meet the insurgents, in the valley of Taos. They, numbering about fifteen hundred, took position in a

pass of the road through the highlands. Price routed them and continued his march up the valley ; but the insurgents made a stand at another pass, still stronger by nature, so narrow that three men could scarcely march abreast, while it was protected by rugged mountains covered with cedars growing in the crevices of the rocks. An advance party clambered up through the cedars, and the terrified Mexicans took to flight.

CHAP.
LIII

1847.

Their principal place of defence was taken in a few days, and the rebellion suppressed. Peace was promised only on the condition that the ringleaders should be given up ; this was complied with, and several of them were hanged at San Fernando : a hard fate for those who were fighting against the invaders of their country.

Colonel Doniphan, accompanied by a large number of merchant wagons, crossed without loss a region destitute of water or grass—a desert ninety miles in extent, known as the Jornada del Muerto, or Journey of Death—the road marked by the graves of former travellers and the bones of beasts of burden. In one instance his men and animals nearly gave out from thirst, when providentially a rain relieved them ; a remarkable occurrence in itself, as at that season of the year rain seldom falls in that region.

He learned that the Mexicans, under General Heredia, who commanded in the North-western Department, were awaiting his approach ; nothing daunted he dashed on. His force, including merchants, numbered but eight hundred and fifty-six effective men, nearly all backwoodsmen ; all mounted, armed with rifles, and good marksmen ; untrammelled by discipline, each one fought as he listed. Near Brazito, in the valley of the Rio Grande, they dismounted and were scattered seeking wood and water, when the scouts brought word that the Mexicans were approaching. The alarm was sounded ;

1848
Dec.
26.

CHAP. all flew to arms, and amid a din of shouts fell into ranks
LIII. as best they could. The Mexicans—more than twelve
1846. hundred strong, and with a piece of artillery—drew near ;
an officer bearing a black flag made his appearance, and
in a magniloquent speech, declaring that no quarter would
be given, summoned the Missourians to surrender. Doni-
phan's answer was characteristic and defiant.

The Mexican cavalry extended far to the right and left, while the infantry, firing volleys of musketry, advanced in front. Presently they came within rifle range, and the backwoodsmen threw away scarcely a shot. The whole body of the enemy broke and fled—they lost nearly two hundred men, killed and wounded, in a few minutes. Only seven Americans were wounded.

Two days later Doniphan entered the beautiful village of El Paso, “where a neat cultivation, a comfortable people, fields, orchards, and vineyards, and a hospitable reception, offered the rest and refreshment which toils, and dangers, and victory had won.” There he waited till artillery could join him from Santa Fé, and then commenced his march upon Chihuahua.

1847.
Feb.
8.

The Mexicans kept out of the way ; but after a march of nineteen days it was ascertained that they had taken position at a pass of the Sacramento, a small branch of the Rio Grande. Here General Herredia made a stand with a force of four thousand men, protected by intrenchments across the pass, and on the neighboring hills, but defences were of little avail against men who never hesitated to attack an enemy. Doniphan suddenly diverted his route from the main road, forced his way round to the flank of their advance, and before the Mexicans could bring their guns to bear, he was in full play upon them with his own artillery. Their cavalry as well as artillery, fell back and retired across the river. Now the intrenchments were to be forced ; this was done in true backwoods style. Each man rushed on and fought

on his own responsibility ; some rode along the entrenchments seeking a place to enter, while others dismounted and crept up to pick off their defenders. The Mexicans fled from the presence of their assailants, who leaped over the works and secured every place within reach. Meanwhile a party of mounted volunteers crossed the river to storm, on horseback, a battery which crowned the hill on the opposite side. This singular engagement cost the Mexicans three hundred killed and a greater number wounded, while the Missourians lost but one killed, one mortally wounded, and a few disabled. The enemy, completely routed, abandoned every thing ; the officers fled toward the south, and the common soldiers to the mountains.

CHAP
LIII.1847.
Feb
28.

The following day Doniphan, without opposition, entered Chihuahua—a city of nearly thirty thousand inhabitants—raised the American flag on its citadel, and, in the name of his government, took possession of the province. He was in a very perilous situation, with only a thousand men, from among whom almost every vestige of discipline had vanished. In this city were many American merchants, most of whom were wealthy. Doniphan's measures were prudent and just, and they conciliated the inhabitants.

Mar.
2.

On the 27th of April he set out for Saltillo, where he arrived in a month without opposition, except from a few Indians. From Saltillo he marched to Matamoras ; and as the term of his men was about to expire, they were taken to New Orleans and there discharged.

April

The most remarkable expedition on record. They had passed over nearly five thousand miles, three thousand of which was a march through an unknown and hostile country swarming with foes. They returned in one year ; no body of troops had ever in so short a time passed over so much space or surmounted so many obstacles.

Fremont was the military commandant of California,

**CHAP.
LIII.****1847.
Aug.**

under a commission from Commodore Stockton. Soon after the Commodore sailed from San Francisco to Monterey, and thence to San Diego. The recently established government was placed in peril ; a deep laid plot was in train, and only a favorable opportunity was wanting to commence the insurrection. Fremont, by a rapid and secret march of one hundred and fifty miles, surprised and captured the main leader of the insurgents, Don J. Pico, who had been a prisoner, and had violated his parole. A court martial sentenced him to death. Fremont remitted the sentence, and thus won Pico's influence and aid in tranquilizing the country. He also endeavored to conciliate the inhabitants, and made no attack upon the hostile parties, which hovered around his march. He came up with the main Mexican force, under Don Andreas Pico, brother of the one whom he had just pardoned. He sent them a summons to surrender, and they agreed to deliver up their artillery and promised to return to their homes. They were not required to take the oath of allegiance, until a treaty of peace should be concluded between the United States and Mexico.

Dec.

Commodore Stockton now learned of the approach of General Kearney. The latter had experienced great difficulties on his march ; attacked by the enemy, he was placed in desperate circumstances at San Pasqual ; his provisions gone, his horses dead, his mules disabled, and most of his men sick, while the enemy in great numbers completely surrounded his camp and held possession of all the roads. Three brave men—Kit Carson, Lieutenant Beales, of the Navy, and an Indian—volunteered to find their way to San Diego, thirty miles distant, and inform Commodore Stockton of Kearney's peril. The Commodore promptly sent assistance, at whose appearance the enemy retired and Kearney was enabled to reach San Diego.

**Jan
8.**

A month later took place the battle at the river San

Gabriel. Then General Flores, chief of the insurgents, sent a flag of truce, proposing a cessation of hostilities in California, and to let the sovereignty of the territory be determined by the result of the war between the United States and Mexico. Stockton refused to accede to the request, and continued his march. Another flag of truce came in. Now it was offered to surrender the town of Los Angeles, if the rights of the people and their property should be preserved. On these conditions the capital of Upper California was surrendered a second time, and the possession of the country more firmly established than before the insurrection.

CHAP.
LIII.

1848.

Difficulties now arose among the officers in relation to the question who should be governor. But recent orders from Washington relieved Stockton of his civil functions, which devolved upon General Kearney as he happened to be on the ground. In truth, the civil government was only in name beyond the range of the American cannon.

MAR

Fremont, however, refused to recognize the authority of Kearney, and was brought to trial charged with disobedience of orders and mutiny. The court found him guilty and sentenced him to be dismissed from the service. The President did not approve of all the findings of the court ; but, because of " the peculiar circumstances of the case and his previous meritorious and valuable services," remitted the sentence and restored him to his rank in the army. Fremont would not accept the clemency of the President, and thus admit that the proceedings of the court were just ; he at once resigned his commission. In a few weeks he set out at his own expense on his fourth tour of exploration in the Rocky Mountains.

CHAPTER LIV

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION—CONCLUDED.

Movement of Troops.—Vera Cruz invested.—Its Bombardment and **Capitulation.**—Santa Anna's Energy.—Battle of Cerro Gordo.—General Scott at Puebla.—His Misunderstandings with the Authorities at Washington.—Commissioner Trist.—Dissensions in Mexico.—Scott's Manifesto.—Reinforcements.—Advance upon the Capital.—El Penon turned.—Battle of Contreras; of Cherubusco.—Attempts to obtain Peace.—Conflict of Molino del Rey.—The Castle of Chapultepec captured.—The American Army enters the City.—Santa Anna again in the Field; dismissed from the Mexican Service.—Treaty of Peace.—Its Conditions.—Evacuation of Mexico.—Misunderstanding among the American Officers.—Discovery of Gold in California.—The Effects.—Death of John Quincy Adams.—The Wilmot Proviso.—The Presidential Election.

CHAP. WHILE these events were in progress, plans were formed
LIV. and partially executed to invade Mexico from the east ;
1846. to secure Vera Cruz, the best harbor on the coast, and
then, if peace could not be obtained, to march upon the
capital itself.

Numerous delays impeded operations, and it was near the end of November before General Scott left Washington for the seat of war. The quarter-master, General Jessup, was already at New Orleans preparing transports for the troops ; and communications were held with Commodore Connor in relation to the co-operation of the fleet. The troops, as already mentioned, drawn from Taylor's command, were speedily concentrated at convenient points on the coast, but the want of transports prevented their embarkation. The place of rendezvous was at the island

of Lobos, about one hundred and twenty-five miles north of Vera Cruz. At length the transports were ready, the troops, about twelve thousand strong, embarked, and, on the morning of the 9th of March, began to land near Vera Cruz. No enemy appeared to dispute the movement.

CHAP
LIV

1147.

That city contained about fifteen thousand inhabitants. It was protected on its land side by numerous defences, while on the side of the Gulf, upon a reef, stood the Castle of San Juan d'Ulloa, garrisoned by a thousand men, who manned one hundred and twenty-eight heavy guns; the strongest fortification on the continent, with the exception of Quebec.

The next morning General Worth was ordered to commence the line of investment, which extended nearly six miles. The Mexicans appeared to oppose, but a few shots from the cannon dispersed them. The weather was excessively hot and sultry, and the march through the deep sand laborious and tedious.

The Governor of the State of Vera Cruz now issued a proclamation, calling upon the inhabitants of the town to defend themselves, while he should retire to harass the invaders and cut off their supplies. He soon appeared among the sand hills, but after a short skirmish, he thought it prudent to keep out of sight. The cannonading from the town and castle was incessant, but without much execution, owing to the distance. The men kept close in their trenches and did not reply. The munitions which had recently arrived were now landed, and the Americans were ready to commence the bombardment. General Scott summoned the city to surrender, stipulating, in order to save the lives and property of the inhabitants, that no batteries should be placed in the town to attack the Castle, unless the latter fired upon the Americans. General Morales, the commander of both the city and castle refused to comply with the summons.

CHAP.
LIV.

1847.
Mar.
22.

At 4 o'clock in the afternoon the bombardment commenced. The Mexicans replied with every gun and mortar that could be brought to bear from the city and castle. Some of the smaller American vessels crept near and with their heavy guns added to the uproar; thus through the night the contest lasted. Other guns were brought, and other batteries erected within a thousand yards of the devoted city. They were hidden behind the chaparral; this was cleared away, and revealed to the besieged a new foe—the battery of Paixhan guns. Their astonishment was great; upon this new enemy who had dared to take position so near, they resolutely directed all their force for many hours. They fired rapidly and with precision, but failed to silence this battery.

How terrific was this storm! Twenty-one heavy guns pouring forth an incessant stream of balls and shells; the heavy shot broke through the solid walls and crashed through the houses, while the shells, still more terrible, scattered ruin and death in the streets, and burned every building that would burn. With scarcely any intermission, for four days this horrid work continued. The inhabitants, to be out of range, left their homes, and helplessly crowded upon the mole at the north part of the town, but ere long the balls began to come nearer and nearer. For twelve days the town had been invested, and its provisions were now nearly exhausted. The foreign residents implored their consuls to aid them. The latter obtained permission of Morales to send a flag of truce to General Scott. They asked a cessation of hostilities till the foreigners, with their families, and the Mexican women and children could leave the place. The request was properly refused, on the ground that permission had once been offered the foreign residents to leave the town, and that the petition to receive attention must come from the Mexican governor.

The American batteries re-opened as soon as the flag

entered the city, and continued during the night. At break of day another flag was seen approaching. The firing ceased. Negotiations commenced, and were terminated by the surrender of Vera Cruz, the Castle, the armaments and stores of each, and the soldiers as prisoners of war. These terms were agreed to by General Scott and Commodore Perry, who was in command of the squadron. The soldiers were to march out, with the honors of war, lay down their arms and be dismissed on their parole. The inhabitants were guaranteed in their civil and religious rights.

CHAP
LIV.

1847.

Mar.
29.

General Worth was appointed governor of Vera Cruz. The advance division, under General Twiggs, soon commenced the march for the city of Mexico by way of Jalapa. The whole army amounted to only eight thousand five hundred men, but there preceded them an influence, that threw a shadow of despondency over the minds of the Mexicans.

April
8

Santa Anna had been very active since his defeat at Buena Vista, (which he labored hard to prove to his countrymen was not a defeat at all ; he only retreated for want of provisions,) in collecting another army, and he had already arrived with twelve thousand men at Cerro Gordo, a mountain pass at the eastern edge of the Cordilleras. In the midst of revolutions and distractions, he marched to this, the first of the "Thermopylæ," which he promised his countrymen to defend. Within two months after a disastrous defeat, without money, without the prestige of success, he had quelled an insurrection and established his own power, raised an army, portions of which had marched from three hundred to six hundred miles ; had constructed the fortifications at Cerro Gordo, and made a ditch twelve miles long to supply the camp with water.

CHAP.
LIV.

1847.
April
18.

The positions of the Mexicans were reconnoitred, and the attack commenced by the division under General Twiggs, sent to turn their position. Presently the whole front was assailed. The Americans seized another hill, El Telegrapho, up the sides of which they dragged heavy cannon, and began to play upon the defences of Cerro Gordo. The Mexicans replied with great vigor. During this mutual cannonade, Colonel Harney led his men rapidly down into the valley between the hills, and began to ascend the slope toward the defences on the top. The declivity was steep and rugged, and soon the entire fire of the battery was directed against these new assailants, but fortunately the balls for the most part passed over their heads. But without wavering they pressed up, carried one breastwork after another, until they presented themselves at the last, the strongest on the summit. Santa Anna, a short hour before, had ordered General Vasquez to defend this post to the last extremity, and he bravely stood his ground, and fell while encouraging his men ; confusion ensued, and the struggle was soon ended. The Americans poured in a stream of balls, forced their way through the breastwork, and then charged with the bayonet. The garrison fled down the western slope in the direction of Jalapa. Twiggs had passed round the hill, their retreat was cut off and they made prisoners. At this moment Santa Anna returned. He was enraged beyond bounds at seeing the discomfiture of his troops in a position which he was certain could have been maintained. He ordered General Canalizo to charge up the hill and re-capture Cerro Gordo ; the latter absolutely refused to obey, but led off his cavalry. Then Santa Anna mounted a mule taken from his carriage, and fled, leaving as trophies to his enemies his travelling equipage and his private papers.

The Mexican army was annihilated and scattered in all directions ; they had lost more than a thousand men, killed and wounded, three thousand prisoners, five

generals, all their artillery and military stores. This was not obtained without a severe loss to the invaders, who, in their rash and headlong charges in the face of batteries, and well protected musketeers, had lost four hundred and thirty-one, killed and wounded, of whom thirty-three were officers.

CHAP.
LIV.

1847

Possession was taken of Jalapa, three days later of Perote, a stronghold on the summit of the Cordilleras, which was abandoned almost without a struggle, and then of the city of Puebla—containing eighty thousand inhabitants. At the latter city General Scott established his head-quarters.

April
19.May
15.

The volunteers' term of enlistments would expire in one month. They refused to re-enlist, but urged that they should be permitted to return to the United States, and there be disbanded, rather than on the soil of Mexico. They greatly dreaded the vomito, or yellow fever, as the season in which it was most severe was near at hand. Though they had no claims to be thus dismissed, General Scott indulged them, as it would be impossible to secure the capital, if the volunteers insisted on returning home at the end of their term of enlistments. Thus situated he was forced to remain inactive three months, till reinforcements arrived from the United States.

Aug
15

During this interval several circumstances occurred which embarrassed the General-in-Chief's movements as well as disturbed his equanimity. First was the effort made, as he thought, to degrade him from his position in the army. This was to be accomplished by appointing over him a Lieutenant-General, a rank never held in the service except by Washington. The measure failed to pass the Senate. The same end was apparently aimed at in another measure by which power was given the President to appoint officers to any position in the army, without regard to their previous rank.

CHAP.
LIV.

1847. Instead of money to buy provisions, came an order from the Secretary of War to authorize the collection of duties levied on merchandise entering the Mexican ports. In the same communication was another order to levy contributions upon the Mexican people. This Scott absolutely refused to obey, as General Taylor had also done, giving as a reason the poverty of that part of the country. Says Scott in a letter to the Secretary : " If it is expected at Washington, as is now apprehended, that this army is to support itself by forced contributions upon the country, we may ruin and exasperate the inhabitants and starve ourselves ; for it is certain they would sooner remove or destroy the products of their farms, than allow them to fall into our hands without compensation. Not a ration for man or horse would be brought in except by the bayonet, which would oblige the troops to spread themselves out many leagues to the right and left in search of subsistence, and stop all military operations." ¹ And he continued to buy provisions for the army at the regular prices of the country, and thus did much to allay a rising feeling of hatred toward the Americans.

The Secretary had given as a reason for this order, that the Mexican people thus laid under contribution, and compelled to bear the expenses of the war, would soon become willing to conclude a treaty of peace. This might apply to the public revenues, and that part of the order the General took measures to have complied with.

Other difficulties arose. After the capture of Vera Cruz General Scott suggested to the President the sending of commissioners to head-quarters to treat for peace, should an opportunity occur. For this important duty, the president appointed Mr. N. P. Trist, whose qualifications were that he had been Consul at Havana, could

¹ Gen. Scott's letter to the Sec. of War, as quoted by Ripley, Vol. ii., p. 95.

speak Spanish and professed to understand the Mexican character, his skill as a diplomatist could be inferred only from the fact that he was "Chief Clerk" in the State Department. Having in his possession the draft of a treaty fully drawn out at the department of State, he left Washington and arrived at Vera Cruz. He also bore a despatch from the Secretary of State, Mr. Buchanan, to the Mexican Minister of Foreign Relations. The plan of the treaty and his instructions he was directed to make known confidentially both to General Scott and Commodore Perry. The Secretary of War, Mr. Marcy, wrote to the General-in-Chief, informing him of the mission, but in general terms, and directed him to suspend active military operations till further orders, unless he was attacked.

CHAP.
LIV.

1847.

May

Instead of making known to General Scott the designs of his mission as directed, Mr. Trist sent a short note to head-quarters from Vera Cruz, and transmitted the sealed despatch to be forwarded to the Mexican Minister, and the letter from Secretary Marcy; the latter could not be understood without the explanations which Mr. Trist alone could give. The general could only see in this an underhand attempt to degrade him by making him in some way subordinate to the "Chief Clerk." However, in a few days he wrote to Mr. Trist, what he knew of the views of the Mexican people and government in relation to a treaty of peace, to which at present they were opposed. In conclusion, he remarked, that the suspension of hostilities belonged properly to the military commander on the field, and not to a Secretary of War a thousand miles distant.

In reply Trist gave full explanation of his mission, but in disrespectful and arrogant terms, assumed to be the aide-de-camp of the President, and in that capacity to order the General-in-Chief.¹ This correspondence led to

¹ Ripley's War with Mexico, Vol. ii., pp. 100, 147.

- CHAP.** much harsh feeling and retarded the advancement of the
LIV. cause. At length explanations in relation to the com-
1847. missioner of peace came to the general from the authori-
ties at Washington. The Secretary of State severely
censured Mr. Trist "for his presuming to command the
General-in-Chief."

Santa Anna fled from Cerro Gordo to Orizaba, where he remained some time to organize bands of guerillas to harass the American trains, which would be on their way from Vera Cruz. Afterward he returned to Mexico to find his popularity on the wane. For a time the Mexicans were paralyzed with consternation. Their army on which they had depended so much had been totally routed at Cerro Gordo. The invincible enemy was pressing on ; not a barrier intervened between them and the capital. The city was filled with factions ; the national councils were divided ; ambitious men forgot their patriotism in their desire for self-aggrandizement. The treasury was bankrupt, its only resource forced loans. Yet in the face of all these difficulties, Santa Anna did succeed in raising an army of twenty-five thousand men with sixty pieces of artillery, and in having the city fortified. After all he was the best commander the nation could afford, and the soldiers once more put themselves under his direction, to repel the invaders of their country and their sacred homes. They did not flock to his standard from a prestige of victory, for even when his boasts were still ringing in their ears, he had been ignominiously defeated ; nor were they induced by the confidence reposed in the integrity of a great and good man, to whom, as if to a superior being, the multitude turn in times of great peril ; but from sheer necessity.

Santa Anna understood the Mexican character. By intrigue and the exercise of a vigorous arm, he seized property, and imprisoned or banished his opponents ; by pre-

tending to be desirous of peace he gained time, and dishonestly entered upon negotiations ; offered himself to be bribed, and was accepted. His plans were cunningly devised : if they succeeded, the glory would all redound to his name ; if they failed, the censure could be thrown upon others.

CHAP.
LIV.
1847.

Thus he employed the three months that General Scott was forced to wait for the arrival of reinforcements. Had the volunteers consented to remain in the service six months longer, in all probability the capture of Mexico and a treaty of peace would have ended the campaign, and the blood spared which was shed in such profusion in the subsequent conflicts.

When at Jalapa General Scott issued a proclamation to the people of Mexico. This manifesto, in its tone and spirit, was well adapted to the state of affairs of the country, in showing that the true policy of the Mexican people was to conclude a treaty on the liberal terms offered by the government of the United States. The proclamation was issued at the instance of several Mexican gentlemen of influence, one of whom composed it in original Spanish, as it was dictated by the general. It was well received by the people in the country ; but Santa Anna captured a courier, who was bearing copies of it to the capital. He at once discovered by the style that it was not a translation, and he proclaimed with his usual virtuous indignation, that it was the production of some Mexican traitor, and thus neutralized its effects on the people of the city.

April
20.

At this time, he had by secret agents intimated to Mr. Trist that he was desirous of peace, and plainly that money would be still more acceptable : if a million of dollars were placed at his disposal something might be done. That this proposition might be considered, a reconciliation took place between the general and the com-

June
25.

CHAP. missionary ; as neither could well act without the **other**
LIV. General Pillow, who had just arrived at Puebla, was also
1847. admitted to these conferences. He was a particular
friend of the President, and, owing to the "informal and
confidential request " sent from Washington, this partici-
pation was granted. Communications were continued
with Santa Anna, but with no more important result
than that the latter received ten thousand dollars of the
secret service money at the disposal of General Scott.

As might have been anticipated, it was soon seen that
Santa Anna's only object was to obtain money and gain
time, and General Scott made preparations to advance
upon the city as soon as the reinforcements under Briga-
dier-General Franklin Pierce would arrive from Vera
Cruz. Meantime, the way to the city had been thoroughly
reconnoitred, and General Worth sent forward with the
first division. The whole army consisted of not more
than ten thousand men, as great numbers had been left in
the hospitals at Perote.

The region through which they marched was a high
table land beautiful in the extreme, well watered, inter-
sprersed with valleys and mountains, whose slopes were
covered with the richest verdure, while in the distance
their snow-capped summits glittered in the bright sun-
shine of August. Almost from the same spot where more
than three hundred years before Cortez and his followers
viewed the distant temples of the city of Montezuma, the
Americans hailed with cheers the city of Mexico.

The passes on the direct route had been well fortified,
and were well garrisoned in the confident expectation
that their positions could not be turned. The strongest
of these was El Penon, to capture which the American
engineers stated would require the loss of three thousand
lives. General Scott was proverbially careful of the **lives**
of his soldiers; the sacrifice must be avoided. The vicinity
of the city was reconnoitred in the most daring manner :

and it was discovered that the defences south and west were not so strongly fortified. CHAP
LIV.

The general diverted his course to the left and turned El Penon on the south side, and under the direction of skilful engineers crossed chasms and ravines deemed impassable, and therefore but imperfectly guarded. General Twiggs led the advance, and encamped at Chalco on the lake of the same name. Worth followed, took the lead, and with his division halted at the town of San Augustin, about eight miles from the city. In his front was the strong fortress of San Antonio, now the head-quarters of Santa Anna, who left El Penon, when he found that the Americans were on their march round to the south side of the city. North-west of San Antonio and four miles from the city was the village of Churubusco, rendered strong by a series of intrenchments. Not far to the west of the village of San Augustin was the fortified camp of Contreras, which contained six thousand men ; in the rear between the camp and the city were placed twelve thousand men in reserve. The whole number of Mexicans in these various defences was about thirty-five thousand, with nearly one hundred pieces of artillery of various sizes. 1847.

Aug
17.

General Persifer F. Smith proposed to attack the camp at Contreras, which was under the command of General Valencia. The night had been one of cold rain and storm and intense darkness, except when enlivened by the fitful glare of the lightning. At three o'clock in the morning, the expedition set out ; the soldiers, lest they should become separated on the march, were directed to take hold of each other—at sunrise the conflict commenced. The Mexicans were but partially surprised, still the impetuous attack effectually routed them ; three thousand of their number were made prisoners, eighty officers and thirty-five pieces of artillery. Among the latter were two pieces taken at Buena Vista, now recap- Aug
19.

CHAP. tured by a portion of the regiment to which they originally
 LIV. belonged. Thus commenced this eventful day—severe
 1847. conflicts were yet to come.

Generals Shields and Pierce had, during the night, thrown their divisions between Santa Anna and Contreras. The fugitives from the latter place had fled to Churubusco, and there fresh troops had also arrived from the city ; it seemed from the preparations, that here a desperate defence was to be made.

A convent, a very strong stone building, was well fortified and pierced for muskets and cannon, also the head of the bridge over the river was well defended.

In an hour or two General Scott arrived ; as he rode along through the army he was received with hearty cheers. The morning's success had filled the soldiers with enthusiasm, and they hoped on that day to end the war.

Santa Anna himself was busily engaged in arranging his men beyond the Churubusco River—whose banks were lined with the maguey plant, which shielded nearly all his force from view.

The rain of the previous night had flooded the lowlands in the vicinity ; the fortifications were masked by trees and fields of corn ; the latter flooded, and every part well known to the enemy, whose guns were so arranged as to sweep them perfectly. When the Americans commenced the attack, their officers, in the face of these batteries, would advance and reconnoitre the ground, then the men would march up to that point, the officers would again advance, and the same process be repeated. During this time the cannon balls from the unseen enemy came crashing through the corn, the men and officers fell rapidly, yet as if impelled by some all powerful influence, they moved steadily on until the works of Churubusco were in their hands.

General Scott sent round to the other side a division under General Pillow ; they waded through the mud and



Elias Howe

water, in some instances waist deep, before they could reach the enemy. Several companies were entirely broken up, Captain Taylor's artillery men were cut up, his horses killed, when suddenly the Mexicans rushed out of the convent to charge; but at this moment a company of American infantry came up and repulsed the assailants.

CHAP.
LIV.
—
1847.

The ground was intersected by causeways, and it was impossible to preserve military order; also owing to their ignorance of the position of the enemy, as well as their own, the Americans were constantly in danger of firing upon their own friends. The battle raged in every direction. General Worth carried San Antonio, and General Twiggs another fortress. The Mexicans fought bravely, they were more than three to one of their foes, and they made every effort to repel them.

For two hours the battle had raged. The smoke completely enshrouded the position of the Mexicans. The roar of their twenty thousand muskets seemed to drown the noise of the artillery, and to render the din of the conflict peculiarly terrific.

The Americans could but feel their way through the corn, and across causeways and ditches, ignorant at what moment they might come upon concealed batteries. At length a party were enabled to cross the river Churubusco, and presented themselves in the rear of the enemy, at the same moment Worth's division emerged from the corn-fields in their front; those in the rear rushed across ditches and over the parapets and carried the works, while the Mexicans at the head of the bridge abandoned it; their guns were immediately seized and turned upon them. Both divisions pressed forward with the bayonet, the Mexicans recoiled in confusion, and finally fled; the dragoons pursuing them to the very gates of the city.

The victory was won, but it had cost the Americans dear; a thousand had fallen or been disabled, among these were seventy-six officers. The coolness, the in-

CHAP. domitable courage and perseverance of both men and
 LIV. officers were never better displayed. The ground was
 1847. unknown, and they were thrown upon their own resources ;
 there was no wavering ; each one performed his part, and
 adapted himself to the emergency. In no battle did the
 Mexicans fight better ; they struggled hard, and the num-
 ber of their slain and wounded and missing—nearly seven
 thousand—testifies that they were brave.

Santa Anna fled to the city. The night after the
 battle several persons connected with the British embassy
 in Mexico appeared at the American head-quarters, and
 informed General Scott that the Mexican authorities were
 disposed to conclude a peace, and advised that the capital
 should not be assaulted, lest the members of the govern-
 ment should be dispersed, and leave no acknowledged
 authority to enter upon negotiations.

A flag of truce came the next day and presented the
 request for hostilities to cease preparatory to negotiating
 a treaty. In accordance with this request, and the repre-
 sentations made the previous evening, Mr. Trist went
 to the capital and presented his conditions of peace—the
 same drawn up at Washington. After protracted delays,
 evidently designed to gain time, the Mexican commis-
 sioners announced that they would not accede to these
 conditions, and in turn they proposed others, which they
 well knew would not be acceptable.

Sept. Mr. Trist returned with this intelligence, and also that
 5. contrary to the terms of the armistice, Santa Anna was
 fortifying the city, and in other respects had violated his
 pledges.

Indignant at the continued treachery, General Scott
 now ordered the army to march upon the capital.

On the way were two strong positions : the one Molino
 del Rey, (the King's Mill,) a foundry, where, it was said,
 the bells of the churches were being rapidly converted into
 cannon ; near by was the strong castle of Chapultepec.

which could not be turned, but must be taken, before the city could be reached. CHAP.
LIV.

It was resolved to capture Molino del Rey ; and at three in the morning General Worth sent forward the different corps of his division to commence the attack at dawn of day. While it was yet dark, the two twenty-four pounders opened and sent their balls through the walls of masonry. There was no reply, and it was thought the Mexicans had abandoned the building. Instead, they had changed their position during the night, and now had their guns in readiness to pour grape and round shot upon the flank of the advancing Americans. From the manifest preparations, it is thought, Santa Anna, who was on the ground, knew of the intended attack. His advantages in number and position were great, and when his guns opened, their effect was terrible. In a few minutes the front of the American advance was cut down ; of fourteen officers, eleven were either killed or wounded, and a like proportion of the men. The company was forced to fall back, and the Mexicans, as usual, with savage ferocity, rushed out and murdered all the wounded they could find. 1847.
Sept.
8.

Worth ordered forward other companies, and these were seconded by another brigade, who vigorously attacked the Mexican flank. Though exposed to a cross fire which did fearful execution, these all fought desperately ; it would seem that the idea of retreating from the face of such overwhelming odds, never occurred to them ; they held on and steadily advanced.

Presently General Leon himself headed a strong sortie from the Molino del Rey, but it was driven back ; Leon was mortally wounded, and several officers of high rank were slain. The attack was continued in a desultory manner, the assailants sought in various ways to gain access to the enemy ; they crept along the sides and fired into the apertures, climbed to the top of the building and tore down the walls with their hands or pried the stones

CHAP. loose with their bayonets. At length they broke through
LIV. the southern gate, and rushing in with loud shouts engaged
1847. in close combat. The Mexicans did not yield, but continued to fire upon them, from the building into the courtyards. The Americans burst open door after door, reached the roof, and with the bayonet met the enemy hand to hand. In a few minutes the north-west gate was in like manner forced. A portion of the Mexicans held out a white flag in token of surrender, while others made their way to Chapultepec.

This has been deemed the hardest contested conflict of the entire war. The enemy were in numbers three to one, and in a strong position. After the commencement of the attack, the Americans had scarcely any aid from their heavy cannon, but were forced to depend upon their rifles and muskets. Still they carried the place, and captured eight hundred prisoners, and lost themselves seven hundred and eighty-seven killed and wounded, of whom fifty-nine were officers—nearly one-fourth of the whole number engaged in the battle. The loss of so many brave men shed a gloom over the entire army.

The Castle of Chapultepec stood on a high and precipitous hill, very steep and rocky, on the south side toward the Americans ; on the west the slope was more gradual, but covered with dense woods and rough with rocks. Here, shielded by these, was a large force of Mexicans.

Sept. At the earliest dawn the full force of the American
18. cannon was concentrated upon the walls of the castle, and at the west side, storming parties were waiting anxiously for a breach to be made, by which they might carry it by assault. They groped their way from tree to tree and rock to rock, driving the Mexicans before them, when suddenly, on the crest of the hill, the whole force came out on the open space in the presence of ram parts frowning with cannon and musketry. They ap-

proached cautiously, returning only a few shots, but still drawing nearer and nearer. Presently an ensign bearing the standard of his regiment, rushed forward to the rampart, a shout arose, and a few followed with ladders, placed them against the wall and with a cheer bounded over. The Mexicans, taken by surprise, stood but a few minutes, then scrambled over the side and down the precipitous rocks out of danger. This was the only instance during the war where the Americans so far forgot themselves as not to cease their fire at the submission of the foe, and even now it continued only for a few minutes. Their provocations had been great. Only a few days before, as on every other occasion, they had seen their wounded companions, found on the field of battle, barbarously murdered by the Mexicans. The exulting shouts, the disregard of discipline, which continued for an hour, only manifested the deep emotions which prevailed.

CHAP
LIV.
—
1847.

The castle was a mass of ruins ; so effective had been the shots and shells, that it was battered to pieces. Here had been the national military school, and here the young students had bravely stood their ground. All of their number, who were not slain, were taken prisoners, with the aged General Bravo their commander.

While the conflict was in progress General Quitman was engaged in capturing the defences thrown over the causeways which led through a marsh—a lake in the days of Cortez—to the city. They were taken in succession ; each one gave more or less resistance. At nightfall the Mexicans were driven within the city, and the Americans held two of its gates.

At midnight commissioners came with propositions of peace, and to surrender the city ; they stated that Santa Anna was marching out with his army. General Scott refused to listen again to terms of accommodation ; when his kindness of feeling had prompted him to offer them peace, he had been grossly deceived. The following morn-

CHAP. ing, with six thousand men, he marched into the city,
LIV. drew up his army upon the great plaza, and hoisted the
stars and stripes over the National Palace.

1847.
Sept.
14.

For several days the troops were occasionally fired upon from windows and the tops of houses ; the work, it was said, of convicts, two thousand of whom had just been liberated ; but stringent measures were taken to insure safety.

Santa Anna, with three or four thousand troops, had gone toward Puebla. He devolved his authority upon Peña y Peña, the President of the Supreme Court of Justice. The other prominent Mexicans went in different directions.

Sept.
22.

Colonel Childs had been left in command at Puebla with a small garrison, only five hundred men, to protect eighteen hundred sick and disabled American soldiers. The Mexicans, encouraged by false reports of success at the capital, made frequent desultory attacks upon the garrison, but by great exertions Colonel Childs held them at bay for nine days, when Santa Anna, with a remnant—some four or five thousand—of his discomfited army, appeared, and in a pompous manner summoned Childs to surrender. The summons was disregarded. The Mexican chief blockaded the town for seven days and then marched to intercept a train, on its way from Vera Cruz. General Lane was in command of this convoy—troops from Taylor's army, composed of Indiana and Ohio volunteers.

Oct.
1

Santa Anna took position at Huamantla, a town some miles north of the main pass El Pinal, intending to attack the Americans when they should become entangled in the defile. But Lane was not thus to be entrapped. He at once set out, surprised Santa Anna himself, and compelled him, after some loss, to abandon the town. The train unmolested moved on the following day to Puebla, and the garrison, after a month's siege, was relieved.

Within ten days it was ascertained that Santa Anna was concentrating another force at Alixo. Lane, by a forced march, suddenly fell upon them, and dispersed them beyond recovery. Almost immediately after his failure to prevent the capture of the city of Mexico, Santa Anna resigned the presidency of the republic, but still retained his office as commander-in-chief of the Mexican armies. Now he was mortified to receive a note from Senor Rosa, the Minister of War, informing him that his services were no longer required by the government, which had just been inaugurated. He took the hint, and was soon on his way to the Gulf Coast, thence to the West Indies to be ere long again engaged in intrigues to disturb his unfortunate country.

CHAP.
LIV.

1847.

In a few weeks after the capture of the city of Mexico, the seat of government was removed to Queretaro. Soon after members for a new Congress were elected, and that body commenced its session. At the town of Guadalupe Hidalgo, commissioners and Mr. Trist were negotiating a treaty of peace. It was concluded on the 2d of February, and now it only remained to be ratified by the authorities at Washington to formally close the war, which, from the battle of Palo Alto to the capture of the city of Mexico, had lasted one year and five months.

1848.

May
9,

1846

Sept.

14,

1847.

In this brief period, armies, of their own free will, had flocked to the standard of their country ; had been organized, had marched into a foreign land, dissimilar to their own in climate and in feature, some across deserts and through districts infected with direful disease, others in mid-winter passed over untrodden mountains, covered with snow, and then in turn over arid plains, and met the enemy in conflict many hundreds of miles from their homes, while fleets were fitted out, which swept round Cape Horn, and were in time to perform their part. The rapidity with which cannon were manufactured and mu-

CHAP. LV. nitions of war prepared and transported to the scene of
 action, was astonishing.

1847.

During the time of the occupation of the city of Mexico, difficulties arose between some of the officers of the army. From misunderstandings hasty charges were made, and recriminations followed. Two of the officers, Pillow and Worth, made charges against the General-in-Chief, and he ordered them under arrest for insubordination. They appealed to the War Department, and made representations, in consequence of which the venerable commander, who had been a worthy leader from Lundy's Lane to Mexico, was superseded by an order from Washington, and the temporary command given to another. Subsequently the charges were virtually withdrawn, and they resumed their respective ranks. It is not expedient to go into detail ; let the matter sink into oblivion. But never before—and may it never be again—in the history of the country, when its interests were so deeply involved, did the terms of “ party,” democrat or whig, of “ friends ” or “ opponents ” of the “ administration,” have so much influence.

Certainly, in truth it has been said, that those who served their country well in this war fared badly. Taylor, who was victorious from Palo Alto to Buena Vista, was quarrelled with ; Scott, who marched triumphant from Vera Cruz to Mexico, was superseded ; Fremont, who secured California, was court-martialled, and Trist, who made the treaty, which secured the objects of the war, was recalled and dismissed.

The war had been an unceasing source of disappointment to those whose measures brought it on. Santa Anna, who was to have been a harbinger of peace, had to be beaten from point to point, and not until he was finally driven from power did those of his countrymen, who were in favor of an amicable arrangement, dare to act

When the commissioners, appointed by the President to supersede Trist, arrived at Mexico, they found the treaty negotiated and signed by the parties. In substance it was the same that had been prepared by the Cabinet. When brought to Washington it was at once laid before the Senate, and after a short discussion ratified. The President by proclamation, on the 4th of July, 1848, made known to the nation that the war was at an end, and a satisfactory treaty had been concluded.

CHAP
LIV.

1848.

New Mexico and Upper California were ceded to the United States, and the lower Rio Grande, from its mouth to El Paso, was taken as the boundary of Texas. Mexico was to receive fifteen millions of dollars; the claims of American citizens against her—amounting to three and a quarter millions of dollars—were assumed by the United States. In a few months not an American soldier was on Mexican soil.

On the 4th of July, 1845, the annexation of Texas was consummated; and thus within three years a territory four times as large as France, had been added to the United States—regions hitherto imperfectly known, but having in store the elements of great wealth.

At the very time that the commissioners were negotiating the treaty, a laborer engaged at work upon a mill-race belonging to Captain Sutter, on one of the tributaries of the Sacramento river, noticed in the sand some shining particles. They proved to be gold. By the time the treaty was ratified rumors of the discovery reached the United States. The excitement produced was unprecedented. In a short time thousands were on their way to the land of gold. Every means of conveyance was called into requisition, from the emigrant's pack-horse and wagon, to the sailing-vessel and the steam-ship. Some went in caravans over the plains and the Rocky Mountains; some crossed the Isthmus of Panama, and found their way up the Pacific coast; others took ship and passed

CHAP.
LIV.
1848. round Cape Horn. The sufferings of the great majority of these adventurers were intense ; hundreds of them met untimely deaths on the way, or by disease, privations, and improvidence, when they reached their journey's end. The ferment extended throughout the civilized world. Multitudes of gold-seekers were soon on their way from the different countries of Europe and South America, and even distant China sent her thousands. The tide of immigration was directed to SAN FRANCISCO, which, from a miserable village of a few huts, soon became a city of fifteen thousand inhabitants, now to have about sixteen times that number, and to be the great entrepôt of the Pacific.

1882.

The influence of this discovery of gold mines, has been incalculable in its effects, not merely upon the United States, but has extended to other nations. "It touched the nerves of industry throughout the world," infused new life into commerce, and awakened a spirit of adventure and individual exertion never before known.

Feb.
21. On the 21st of February, the venerable John Quincy Adams, when in his seat in the House of Representatives, was struck by paralysis. Two days later he expired. His last words were, "This is the last of earth :—I am content." Born in revolutionary times : "The cradle hymns of the child were the songs of liberty." He had associated with the fathers of the republic, and was the representative of the memories of that heroic age. For more than sixty years he had been constantly engaged in public affairs. At the age of fourteen, private secretary to Francis Dana, American minister to Russia ; at twenty-seven appointed minister to Holland by Washington, who styled him "the ablest of all our diplomatic corps." Afterward successively, United States Senator ; professor in Harvard College ; minister to Russia ; one of the negotiators of the treaty of Ghent ; Secretary of State under Monroe ; President, and then member of the House till his death, at the age of fourscore. Old in years but

buoyant in spirit, he never lagged behind his age ; but with careful eye watched the progress of his country, and sympathized with its youthful energies.

CHAP
LIV.

1848.

The administration of Mr. Polk was drawing to a close. Its great event had been the Mexican war, the train for which was laid under his predecessor. The tariff of 1842, under which the industry of the country had rapidly recovered from its prostration, after an existence of four years was so modified, as to afford less protection to American manufactures.

1846.

David Wilmot, a member of the House from Pennsylvania, introduced a proposition into Congress, since known as the "Wilmot Proviso," by which slavery should be prohibited in all territory obtained by treaty. The "Proviso" did not become a law, but the subject of slavery was once more brought up for discussion.

May
1.

The Democratic convention met at Baltimore to nominate a candidate for the office of President. Two sets of delegates appeared from New York, both claiming to be the true representatives of the Democracy of that State.

No compromise could reconcile the parties, and the convention solved the difficulty by excluding both from its deliberations. It then proceeded to nominate Senator Lewis Cass, of Michigan, for President, and General William O. Butler, of Kentucky, for Vice-President.

The delegates representing the Whig party, and those opposed to the measures of the administration, met at Philadelphia, and nominated General Zachary Taylor for President, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, for Vice-President.

June
1.

One portion of the Democracy of New York accepted the nominations of the Baltimore convention ; another portion rejected them. The latter called a convention, at Buffalo of those who were opposed to the extension of slavery into free territory. They adopted a platform in

CHAP. favor of "Free Soil," and nominated ex-president Van
LIV. Buren for the Presidency and Charles Francis Adams
1848. (son of John Quincy Adams) for the Vice-Presidency.

Aug. A spirited canvass followed, and the candidates of the Whig party were elected.

During the last year of this administration, Wisconsin was admitted into the Union as a State, and Minnesota organized as a Territory.

A new Department, that of the Interior, was created by Congress, to relieve the Secretary of the Treasury of part of his duties.

On the fifth of March, the fourth occurring on the Sabbath, the new President was inducted into office.

Mr. Polk, broken down in health, retired to his home in Nashville, Tennessee, where in a few months he was numbered with the dead. A man of exemplary character ; he was lamented by the people.

113

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

This book is under no circumstances to be
taken from the Building

[illegible]

